

M42 Junction 6 Development Consent Order

Scheme Number TR010027

8.10 Statement of Common Ground with Natural England

Planning Act 2008

Rule 8 (1)(e)

The Infrastructure Planning (Examination Procedure) Rules 2010

Volume 8

June 2019

Infrastructure Planning

Planning Act 2008

The Infrastructure Planning (Examination Procedure) Rules 2010

M42 Junction 6 Development Consent Order
Development Consent Order 202[]

**STATEMENT OF COMMON GROUND
NATURAL ENGLAND**

Regulation Number	Rule 8(1)(e)
Planning Inspectorate Scheme Reference	TR010027
Document Reference	8.10
Author	Highways England and Natural England

Version	Date	Status of Version
1	June 2019	Draft

STATEMENT OF COMMON GROUND

This Statement of Common Ground has been prepared and agreed by (1) Highways England Company Limited and (2) Natural England.

Signed.....
Chris Harris
Project Manager
on behalf of Highways England
Date:

Signed.....
Susie Murray
Regional Lead and Case Manager
on behalf of Natural England
Date:

Table of contents

1	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	Purpose of this document	1
1.2	Parties to this Statement of Common Ground	1
1.3	Terminology	2
2	RECORD OF ENGAGEMENT	3
2.2	Methods of environmental assessment and baseline information	4
3	ISSUES	5
3.1	Issues Raised	5

Table of Tables

Table 2-1 - Record of Engagement	3
Table 3-1 – Record of Issues Raised	5

Appendices:

- A. M42 Junction 6 Woodland Translocation - Technical Note V.1.
- B. M42 Junction 6 Species Licence - Technical Note V.1.
- C. Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Preliminary Hydrological Investigation Technical Note V3.
- D. Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Preliminary Hydrological Investigation Technical Note V4.
- E. Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Preliminary Hydrological Investigation Technical Note V6.
- F. Natural England and Warwickshire Wildlife Trust Presentation (14.03.19).

1 Introduction

1.1 Purpose of this document

- 1.1.1 This Statement of Common Ground ("SoCG") has been prepared in respect of the proposed M42 Junction 6 Development Consent Order ("the Application") made by Highways England Company Limited ("Highways England") to the Secretary of State for Transport ("Secretary of State") for a Development Consent Order ("the Order") under section 37 of the Planning Act 2008 ("PA 2008").
- 1.1.2 The order, if granted, would authorise Highways England to carry out the following works:
- a. a new dumbbell junction approximately 1.8km south of the existing Junction 6 on the M42;
 - b. construction of a new 2.4km dual carriageway link road between the new junction and Clock Interchange (an existing junction on the A45);
 - c. modifications to the existing Clock Interchange junction;
 - d. upgrades to the existing Junction 6; and
 - e. realignments and improvements to local roads to the west of the existing M42 in proximity to the proposed bypass.
- 1.1.3 This SoCG does not seek to replicate information which is available elsewhere within the Application documents. All documents are available in the deposit locations and/or the Planning Inspectorate website.
- 1.1.4 This SoCG has been produced to confirm to the Examining Authority where agreement has been reached between the parties to it, and where agreement has not (yet) been reached. SoCGs are an established means in the planning process of allowing all parties to identify and so focus on specific issues that may need to be addressed during the examination.

1.2 Parties to this Statement of Common Ground

- 1.2.1 This SoCG has been prepared by (1) Highways England as the Applicant and (2) Natural England.
- 1.2.2 Highways England became the Government-owned Strategic Highways Company on 1 April 2015. It is the highway authority in England for the strategic road network and has the necessary powers and duties to operate, manage, maintain and enhance the network. Regulatory powers remain with the Secretary of State. The legislation establishing Highways England made provision for all legal rights and obligations of the Highways Agency, including in respect of the Application, to be conferred upon or assumed by Highways England.
- 1.2.3 Natural England are the government's adviser in relation to the natural environment in England, overseeing and managing the designation status of nationally designated sites, including Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs). Natural England were consulted in relation to the Application under section 42(1)(d) of the PA 2008 as a prescribed body and have made a Relevant Representation.

1.2.4 Collectively Highways England and Natural England are referred to as ‘the parties’.

1.3 Terminology

1.3.1 In the table in the Issues chapter of this SoCG:

- a. “Agreed” indicates where the issue has been resolved.
- b. “Not Agreed” indicates a final position, and
- c. “Under discussion” where these points will be the subject of on-going discussion wherever possible to resolve, or refine, the extent of disagreement between the parties.

1.3.2 It can be taken that any matters not specifically referred to in the Issues chapter of this SoCG are not of material interest or relevance to Natural England’s representation and therefore have not been considered in this document. It is recognised however that engagement between both parties will need to continue due to their joint vested interest in the area of the Scheme.

2 Record of engagement

2.1.1 The parties have been engaged in consultation since the beginning of the proposed development. A summary of the meetings and correspondence that has taken place between Highways England and Natural England in relation to the Application is outlined in **Table 2-1**.

Table 2-1 - Record of Engagement

Date	Form of correspondence	Key topics discussed and key outcomes (the topics should align with the Issues tables)
16.08.17	Meeting between Natural England, AECOM and WSP	Introduction to the Scheme, Development Consent Order (DCO) process, project timescales.
14.09.17	Email from Natural England to AECOM	Advice and confirmation received from Natural England on conducting application range of ecological surveys.
06.12.18	Email from Natural England to AECOM	<u>Statutory Consultation response to Scoping</u> Agreed the proposed methodology for the environmental impact assessment of the Scheme.
16.04.18	Meeting between Natural England and AECOM	Introduction the Scheme following Public Route Announcement (PRA) and key dates to submission. Discussions relating to the assessment (including mitigation) of environmental effects.
26.07.18	Telephone conference between AECOM and NE ancient woodland specialist and subsequent written summary provided by NE	<u>Ancient woodland Discussion</u> General project update and a discussion on the parcel of ancient woodland which would potentially be affected by the Scheme.
29.08.18	Email from Natural England to AECOM	Natural England gave Discretionary Advice Service (DAS) advice on Aspbury's Copse, outlining their position on the Scheme's potential impacts.
14.09.18	Email from AECOM to Natural England	Prior to the meeting with Natural England the following documents were issued for discussion. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>M42 Junction 6 Woodland Translocation - Technical Note V.1. (Appendix A)</i> • <i>M42 Junction 6 Species Licence - Technical Note V.1. (Appendix B)</i> • <i>Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Preliminary Hydrological Investigation Technical Note V3. (Appendix C)</i>

Date	Form of correspondence	Key topics discussed and key outcomes (the topics should align with the Issues tables)
17.09.18	Email from AECOM to Natural England	AECOM issued to Natural England the Scheme's Habitats Regulation Assessment No Significant Effects Report.
17.09.18	Email from AECOM to Natural England	AECOM issued to Natural England Version 4 of the <i>Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Preliminary Hydrological Investigation Technical Note V4</i> . (Appendix D)
19.09.18	Email from Natural England to AECOM	Natural England issued to AECOM the revised Aspbury's Copse ancient woodland polygon which defined the new extents of the ancient woodland boundary.
18.09.18	Meeting between AECOM and Natural England	Natural England agreed with findings and conclusions with the Habitat Regulations Assessment: No Significant Effects Report, and discussed a range of topics such as ancient woodland compensation and Bickenhill Meadows Site of Special Scientific Interest.
10/10/18	Email from Natural England to Highways England	Section 42 Correspondence in relation to the Scheme consultation in late 2018.
26.10.18	Email from AECOM to Natural England	AECOM issued to Natural England Version 6 of the <i>Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Preliminary Hydrological Investigation Technical Note V6</i> . (Appendix E)
14.03.19	Meeting between AECOM, Natural England and Warwickshire Wildlife Trust	A meeting to present the current dataset and further knowledge associated with Bickenhill Meadows SSSI solution and to discuss the current solution. The meeting also covered DCO related issues relating to the loss of Aspbury's Copse ancient woodland.
28.03.19	Relevant Representation	Natural England Issued to the Planning Inspectorate on the 28.03.19.

2.1.2 It is agreed that this is an accurate record of the key meetings and consultation undertaken between (1) Highways England and (2) Natural England in relation to the issues addressed in this SoCG.

2.1.3 The Applicant and Natural England have worked collaboratively throughout the DCO application process utilising Discretionary Advice Service (DAS) to engage with the relevant experts within Natural England.

2.2 Methods of environmental assessment and baseline information

2.2.1 Matters relating to the relevant methods of assessment, the collection of and quantum of data required to inform the applicable baselines have been agreed with Natural England and presented within the Environmental Statement for the Scheme.

3 Issues

3.1 Issues Raised

Table 3-1 – Record of Issues Raised

Sub-topic	Natural England Comment	Highways England Response/Actions	Status/Agreement
<p>Aspbury's Copse Ancient Woodland</p>	<p>Natural England has no objection to the approach to soil translocation at Aspbury's Copse, or the location of the compensation planting. However, Natural England have urged use of methods which translocate intact soil profiles as far as practicable.</p> <p>Natural England encourage exploration of further woodland creation to the west of the M42 (see point on compensation ratio).</p>	<p>Highways England are committed to undertaking soil translocation as part of the overall compensation solution for the area ancient woodland lost to the Scheme. The same parcel of land identified for compensation planting will also be the receptors site for soil translocation.</p>	<p>Under Discussion</p>
	<p>Further woodland creation north of Aspbury's Copse would buffer the woodland from potential impacts of the new motorway junction.</p>	<p>Notwithstanding the airport safeguarding constraints in the immediate area, the mitigation design [APP-095] for the Scheme has sought to maximize the planting around the proposed Junction 5A to mitigate tree loss, to provide compensation planting and for the purpose of screening and integration the Scheme into the wider landscape.</p>	<p>Under Discussion</p>

Sub-topic	Natural England Comment	Highways England Response/Actions	Status/Agreement
	<p>Natural England would encourage further opportunities to be sought during detailed study of the area, to further enhance Aspbury's Copse and ecological networks in the wider area.</p>	<p>The mitigation design [APP-095] for the Scheme will implement a range of ecological measures (such as planting hedgerows, installation of mammal tunnels, linear and clustered tree planting and reed bed features) to maximize the ecological networks around Aspbury's Copse and the wider Scheme.</p>	<p>Under Discussion</p>
	<p>The current compensation ratio is 3:1; This compensation ratio is deemed low for an irreplaceable habitat.</p> <p>Natural England encourage exploration of further woodland creation to the west of the M42.</p>	<p>Highways England have committed to an approximate 1.9 ha parcel of land to the immediate south of the eastern parcel of the existing ancient woodland for the compensation planting associated with the loss of Aspbury's Copse ancient woodland.</p> <p>Within this 1.9 ha planting would be at a ratio of no less than 3:1, with the area being maximized to its fullest potential for compensation planting. Highways England consider that this ratio is proportionate for the impact identified.</p>	<p>Under Discussion</p>
	<p>Natural England question the rationale of the 'tapering of the replanting woodland area' which forms part of the wider compensation planting area of 1.9 ha.</p>	<p>Highway England's rationale has sought to maximise and enhance ecological networks in the immediate area of the Scheme, which includes the measures as outlined above.</p>	<p>Under Discussion</p>

Sub-topic	Natural England Comment	Highways England Response/Actions	Status/Agreement
Bickenhill Meadows Site of Special Scientific Interest (Shadowbrook Meadow)	<p>Natural England confirmed with Highways England that the provisional pumping solution (as presented within the DCO application) would operate as intended, but that this would be an expensive engineered solution which would require more maintenance to ensure it operated properly.</p>	<p>Highways England sought clarification from Natural England that if a pumped solution were to form part of the mitigation approach and be submitted as part of the Development Consent Order application, assuming the necessary assurances were in place, would this be acceptable from a planning perspective.</p>	<p>Agreed</p>
	<p>In the meeting between Highways England, AECOM, Natural England and Warwickshire Wildlife Trust on the 14th March 2019, five (5) solutions were presented continuing on from the work within the DCO application of January 2019. In discussing the options presented at the meeting, Natural England and WWT agreed with the design rationale for discounting options D and E.</p>	<p>AECOM on behalf of Highways England have been refining the mitigation solution for the impact to Shadowbrook Meadows unit of Bickenhill Meadows SSSI. AECOM agreed with Natural England that the Option solutions D and E (See Appendix F) can be discounted from further consideration, as it is agreed with all parties that better solutions are achievable.</p>	<p>Agreed</p>
	<p>Natural England ask that further evidence is provided to facilitate a good understanding of how the SSSI grassland is supplied with water sufficient to sustain the rare grassland assemblage and that a sustainable solution is found to retain this water supply to the SSSI. We are aware that site monitoring is ongoing.</p>	<p>Highways England have continued to collect and interpret data from the SE SSSI unit and have shared conceptual models, micro-drainage models and further appraisal rationale with Natural England. This information was shared with Natural England on the 14.04.19.</p>	<p>Agreed</p>

Sub-topic	Natural England Comment	Highways England Response/Actions	Status/Agreement
	<p>Natural England would and are aware the applicants are working towards system (which Natural England welcome) a more innovative passive system which could be investigated as an alternative solution.</p> <p>Although acknowledged that new infrastructure (i.e. pumps) was probably unavoidable. Natural England raised a number of issues in relation to monitoring the system and who would be responsible for this indefinitely.</p>	<p>Highways England has acknowledged the queries raised by Natural England over a preference towards a passive solution (i.e. non-pumped). The technical work undertaken by Highways England to date indicates that a passive solution would replenish the lost water catchment area that is believed to contribute towards to the overall hydrology of the Shadowbrook Meadows SSSI unit.</p> <p>Based on the continual data collection from the SSSI unit, the mitigation is currently a passive solution. This current solution (and the eventual operational management and maintenance protocol) will continue to be refined as more data is collected and interpreted.</p>	<p>Agreed</p>

APPENDICES

Appendix A - M42 Junction 6 Woodland Translocation - Technical Note V.1.

M42 Junction 6: Technical Note for Translocation of Ancient Woodland

Prepared by:	Paul Benyon	03/09/18
Checked by:	Marcus Wainwright-Hicks	11/09/18
Approved by:	Paul Benyon	11/09/18
Verified by:	Graeme Cowling	14/09/18

1. Introduction

Aspbury's Copse is a woodland totalling 2.62 hectares (ha) and is recognised as a plantation ancient woodland site (PAWS) by Natural England. The woodland is located approximately 2 km east of Solihull in the West Midlands and is divided () into two separate parcels due to the construction of the M42 motorway in the 1960's. Aspbury's Copse is also listed as a potential Local Wildlife Site (pLWS). At the time of writing it is understood that the designated ancient woodland boundary of Aspbury's Copse is under review. As such this technical note uses the currently available Natural England datasets (accessed July 2018) through Natural England's online mapping tool MAGIC.

A Development Consent Order (DCO) is being sought by Highways England for a scheme to improve Junction 6 of the M42 motorway. The scheme involves construction of a new carriageway to the west of Bickenhill village and a new Junction 5a to the immediate north of Solihull Road B4102 in addition to improvements to the existing M42 and the Junction 6 and Clock Interchange.

The proposed Junction 5a would require the inclusion of south facing, on-slip and off-slips from the M42 mainline. These slip roads are likely to impact upon Aspbury's Copse which would result in loss of approximately 875m² of the eastern parcel and 4,730m² to the western parcel (see Figure 1).

Ancient woodland, whether identified as ancient semi-natural or ancient replanted, is recognised under national and local planning policy as being an irreplaceable habitat. However, where a development demonstrates that there is no alternative to loss of the woodland and the benefits of the development outweigh retention of the woodland, appropriate compensation has to be provided with the understanding that the woodland is irreplaceable. Compensation can include stripping and re-laying of the woodland soils followed by tree planting and tree planting to join up fragmented woodland parcels and to increase the size of remaining woodland. Where PAWS are present, an appropriate management plan can also be included as part of the package of measures.

2. Woodland Surveys

A Phase 2 survey was undertaken of the woodland in May 2017¹, whereby the ancient woodland was defined as two 'areas' for the purpose of the survey.

Area 1 (located to the west of the M42) - Approximately 1.50 ha of re-planted woodland with a field layer that included bluebell, dog's mercury, lesser celandine, wood anemone, enchanter's nightshade, wood melick and Lords and Ladies; all typical woodland ground flora species with several also being indicators of ancient woodland. The NVC survey indicates that the woodland has affinities with W8: ash - field maple - dog's mercury or W10; oak - bracken - bramble. In both cases the best fit was to the wood anemone sub community type

Area 2 (located to the east of the M42) - Approximately 1.12 ha of re-planted woodland with a field layer that included bluebell, lesser celandine, dog's mercury, Lords and Ladies, male fern and wood sorrel; again typical woodland ground flora species with several also being indicators of ancient woodland. As with Area 1, the woodland in Area 2 had affinities with W8 and W10.

The Phase 2 survey employed the National Vegetation Classification (NVC) methodology; whereby homogenous areas of vegetation are identified and mapped and then sampled using appropriately sized quadrats for the vegetation type being surveyed. All species within each quadrat are recorded and assigned a 'by-eye' percentage cover. The data from replicate quadrats is then analysed and using tables of published NVC types matched to the most appropriate.

¹ Completed by WSP Group, who were the incumbent consultancy for the M42 Junction Improvement Scheme at that time.

For woodland surveys, different levels within woodlands are recorded with different sized quadrats; thus the canopy is recorded using 50m x 50m quadrat; 10m x 10m for tall woodland field layers and 4m x 4m for lower woodland field layers. Details of the surveys and analysis undertaken in Aspbury's Copse can be found in WSP 2017² (Appendix 2).

The two areas were surveyed using the NVC methodology; the field maple stands were single species plantation and the road verges are obviously not ancient woodland having been created when the M42 was built.

The results from the survey found that the woodland to the west (Area 1) of the M42 supported three distinct stands;

- An area of mature replanted woodland west of the motorway (Area 1), comprising mature/ semi-mature pedunculate oak with localised area dominated by hybrid black poplar;
- Plantation woodland dominated by field maple; and
- The verge of the M42 supporting scrub with hawthorn, elder, semi-mature oaks trees and bramble and a range of grasses and herbs.

The woodland to the east (Area 2) of the M42 had again three distinct stands:

- An area of pedunculate oak/ Scot's pine / hybrid black poplar (Area 2);
- A stand of field maple plantation; and
- The M42 verge.

Wardell Armstrong (2015) surveyed Aspbury's Copse to support a separate planning application (PL/2015/51409/PPOL)³ for a motorway service station and road junction between Junctions 5 & 6.

In addition to the species recorded in the quadrats in 2017, a walkover of the woodlands in 2015 recorded other ground flora species that have been identified as ancient woodland indicators. The species included west of the M42; moschatel, wood millet, remote sedge, wood speedwell, pendulous sedge, broad-leaved helleborine and yellow pimpernel. When the list is compared to those in the Warwickshire Local Wildlife Site designation criteria, only four are listed; moschatel, pendulous sedge, wood anemone and wood millet. Two woody species are also listed in the LWS criteria; hazel and crab apple.

A similar list was also recorded in the east and included in addition to the ones in the west; small-leaved lime, greater stitchwort wood sorrel and wych elm.

The nature and extent of these habitats have also been confirmed by AECOM in May 2018.

Lichen, Fungi & Invertebrates

In 2015 surveys were undertaken for specific features within Aspbury's Coppice; lichens, fungi and invertebrates. The surveys recorded several species of each group within the woodland that are notable:

- The woodland was considered to be County importance for terrestrial invertebrate assemblage and particularly the saproxylic fauna;
- Five notable lichens were recorded in the west area of woodland, and these were focused along the track that runs through the woodland and further to the west; and
- Several hot spots for fungi were identified; two in the north west of the western section; one in the eastern section adjacent to the M42 and two further areas on the eastern boundary of the eastern section.

3. Assessment

Currently it is anticipated that a total of 0.56 ha of Aspbury's Copse would be impacted upon by the Scheme, which is equivalent to 21.4% of the current coverage of ancient woodland habitat. It is proposed that the potential impact upon the ancient woodland will be mitigated through the use of a translocation strategy in addition to compensation planting for soils to be translocated to.

Although the likely areas impacted upon fall within the designated boundary of the ancient woodland, botanical surveys have demonstrated that the affected habitats are largely dominated by a poor ground flora and canopy, with the majority of ancient woodland ground-flora located outside the affected area and further into each of the parcels of ancient woodland. In addition, the fungi and lichen surveys highlighted that hotspots relating to these species were outside these areas. AECOM are proposing to undertake fungi and

² WSP (2017) M42 Junction 6 Improvement: Woodland National Vegetation Classification Survey. Unpublished report by WSP Leeds for Highways England

³ <https://publicaccess.solihull.gov.uk/online-applications/applicationDetails.do?activeTab=documents&keyVal=NQRLYUOEHP00>

lichen surveys in 2018 to re-validate the surveys undertaken in 2015 by Wardell Armstrong. Both of which are considered reflective of the soil quality and broader ancient woodland indicators.

Given the limited extent of habitat affected (noting the poor ground flora it supports), with the implementation of a translocation strategy, it is considered unlikely that the unavoidable losses would undermine the conservation status of the ancient woodland. Therefore, despite the uncertainty associated with the translocation of ancient woodland habitats, it is considered that at most the habitat loss would result in no more than a long-term adverse impact of Local significance upon Asbury's Copse pLWS.

4. Translocation Methodology

Where the decision is taken that it is feasible/ practical to translocate the soils from the areas to be lost, the following methodology should be followed. This is based on published best practice (Anderson 2003⁴) and case studies from other translocation strategies.

The following information is required to inform the soil translocation:

- A clear and detailed understanding of the site characteristics (physical and chemical characteristics), of the donor and receptor areas to ensure comparability;
- the inclusion of coppice stools, veteran trees and standing and fallen dead wood suitable for transfer in the transfer process to encourage lichen and fungi habitat;
- Presence and abundance of species of woodland plant with bulbs and rhizomes to inform soil depths to be moved;
- Restrictions to undertaking the works; and
- Presence of protected species and associated constraints.

All soil-handling operations shall be carried out in accordance with best practice guidelines (DEFRA 2000).⁵ Prior to all woodland soil handling operations, a soil scientist should ensure the soils are in an appropriate condition to be handled without risk of damage. The following details the measures to be undertaken during translocation, which will be refined based upon the results on the soil survey.

General Measures

These general measures shall apply during all soil stripping operations:

- Translocation should be undertaken in late autumn/ early winter, avoiding frost/ snow and heavy rain;
- Low ground pressure vehicles should be used for these works;
- Haul and access routes must not run on topsoil, but may run on exposed subsoil; and
- Any vegetation clearance and removal should account for any other legal restrictions e.g. nesting birds and other protected species.

Receptor site Preparation

The below assumes that only topsoil would be required for translocated. Where donor and receptor are close, as is the case here, the soils are likely to be similar but not necessarily and there may have to be a contingency to also move sub-soils. Also, the areas to be moved however are small and there may not be much scope for moving other than the topsoil.

- The topsoil shall be stripped and removed (to the depth defined by soil surveys), using a non-toothed bucket.
- Sequential stripping is to be undertaken as material from the donor site becomes available, to limit the extent of bare ground present at any time and no more than can be translocated and laid in the day should be stripped;
- Prior to spreading the translocated soils, the subsoil is to be loosened using a toothed bucket
- Topographical and micro-topographical features at the donor site (including the slopes, depressions and raised areas (if considered necessary)), should be recreated if possible in the exposed subsoil surface prior to placement of translocated soils;

⁴ Anderson, P (2003) *CIRCA C600: Habitat Translocation – a best practice guide* CIRCA

⁵ Defra's CCoP. The MAFF Good Practice Guide, 2000

Donor site Preparation

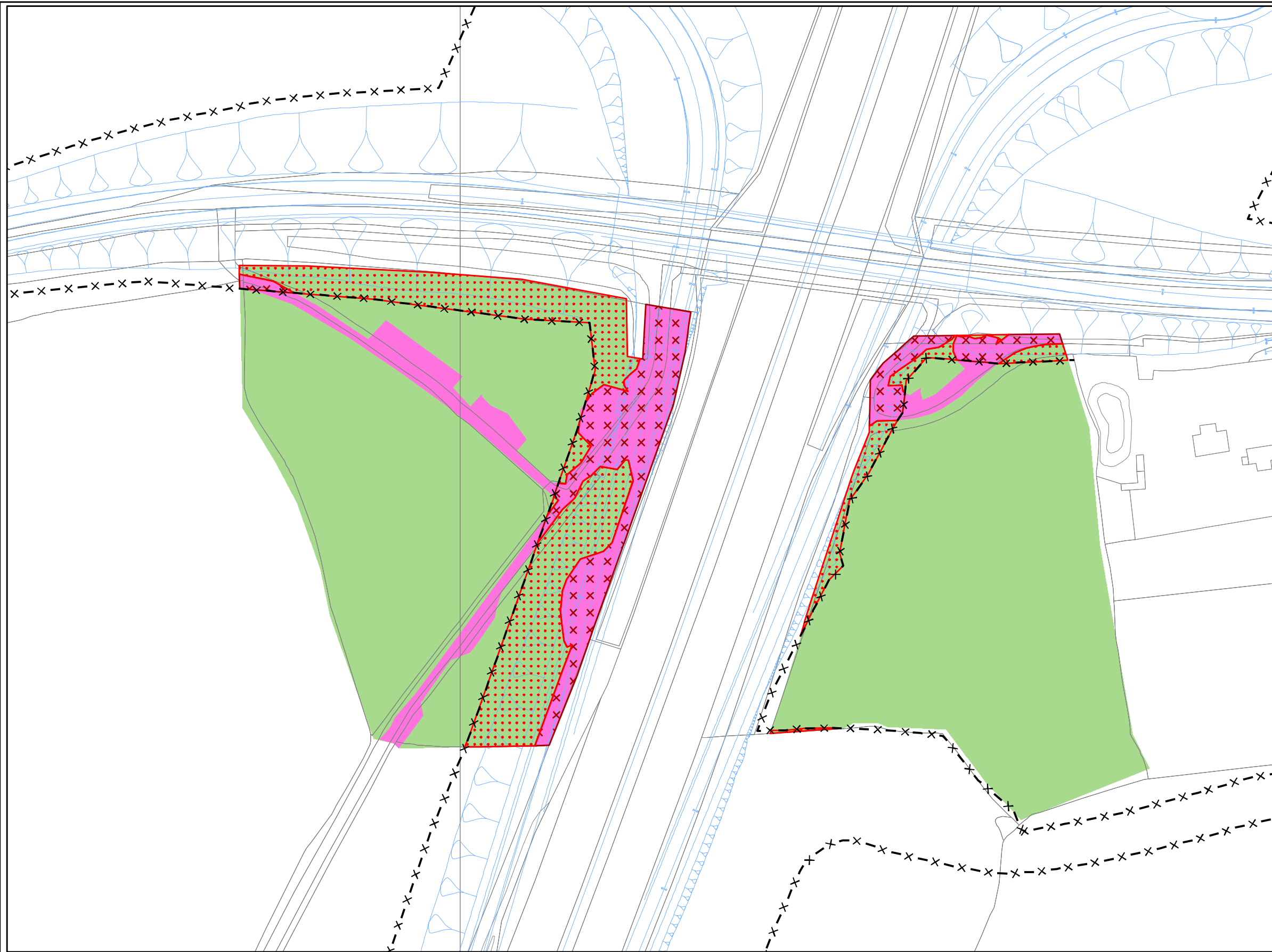
- Vegetation clearance should be undertaken within one month prior to soil translocation;
- Areas where the woodland soils are not suitable for translocation shall be identified and clearly demarcated;
- Prior to vegetation clearance, any coppice stools, saplings and dead wood should be identified and clearly marked; and
- Mature trees can be used to provide standing dead wood by removing all branches and “planting” the main trunk at the receptor site to a depth so that the tree is stable once installed.

Translocation of Soils

The following procedures will be implemented (where applicable) in the translocation process:

- Topsoil (to a depth defined through soil surveys but can be between 100mm and 300mm) at the donor site to be stripped using a non-toothed excavator bucket to avoid mixing of topsoil and subsoil. The soil survey undertaken previously will inform whether the topsoil is to be stripped as a single layer or as two layers.
- The width of each topsoil strip will be the working width of the excavator.
- The topsoil from the first strip should be placed to one side and then the next area stripped and taken directly to the receptor site. The contractors should restrict the storage of topsoil beyond the day of stripping, i.e. stripping, transport and restoration operations shall occur within one day.
- Where there is also a requirement for subsoil to be translocated, this shall be stripped and transported separately from the topsoil.
- Where coppice stools are to be translocated, they shall be lifted with as large a root ball as possible; using an appropriate bucket excavator or tree spade capable of a root ball up to three metres diameter. These should be lifted sequentially, moved to the receptor site and re-planted the same day. If this is not possible coppice stools can be stored during the dormant season for up to 3 days by placing in a trench and backfilled.
- The donor site topsoil is to be loose tipped onto the prepared receptor sub-soil surface and spread using a non-toothed bucket. The topsoil should spread to a depth as defined by the soil survey, with any additional depth included to allow for settlement of the soil. The soil is to be laid in strips as wide as the working width of the excavator.
- At the end of each day, the topsoil put to one side at the start of the day at the donor site, is the final material moved to the receptor site.
- Provided ground conditions allow, the re-laid soil should be rolled with a Cambridge (ribbed) roller.
- Tree planting should be undertaken in the next available planting season following translocation. Native trees shall be selected to match the existing composition of the canopy at Asbury’s Coppice.

APPENDIX 1 – FIGURE 1



SAFETY, HEALTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION BOX

IT IS ASSUMED THAT ALL WORKS ON THIS DRAWING WILL BE CARRIED OUT BY A COMPETENT CONTRACTOR WORKING, WHERE APPROPRIATE, TO AN APPROPRIATE METHOD STATEMENT.

HAZARDS DETERMINED TO BE SIGNIFICANT RISKS RELATING TO THE WORKS ASSOCIATED WITH THIS DRAWING ARE IDENTIFIED BELOW. SIGNIFICANT RISKS ARE THOSE WHICH ARE NOT LIKELY TO BE OBVIOUS, ARE UNUSUAL, OR LIKELY TO BE DIFFICULT TO MANAGE.

CONSTRUCTION

FOR MAINTENANCE / OPERATION / DECOMMISSIONING AND DEMOLITION RISKS SEE PROJECT HEALTH AND SAFETY FILE.

THIS DRAWING IS TO BE USED ONLY FOR THE PURPOSE OF ISSUE THAT IT WAS ISSUED FOR AND IS SUBJECT TO AMENDMENT.

- Legend**
- Proposed Scheme
 - x— Proposed Fence
 - Aspbury's Copse Ancient Woodland
 - Areas of Heavily Engineered and or very disturbed ground
- Areas of Anticipated**
- Anticipated Loss of Ancient Woodland (0.364ha)
 - Anticipated Loss of Ancient Woodland in areas of Heavily Engineered and or very disturbed ground (0.214ha)

FIRST ISSUE	DM	04/09/18	
Revision Details	By	Check	Check Date
	CB		

Purpose of Issue

Client
Highways England
Major Projects
The Cube
199 Wharfside Street
Birmingham
B1 1RN



Project Title

M42 JUNCTION 6 IMPROVEMENT WORKS

Drawing Title

ANTICIPATED LOSS OF ANCIENT WOODLAND

Designed CB	Drawn GB/DM	Checked CB	Approved KW	Date 04/09/18
Internal Project No 60543032		Suitability		
Scale @ A3 1:1,250		Zone		

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN PREPARED PURSUANT TO AND SUBJECT TO THE TERMS OF AECOM'S APPOINTMENT BY ITS CLIENT. AECOM ACCEPTS NO LIABILITY FOR ANY USE OF THIS DOCUMENT OTHER THAN BY ITS ORIGINAL CLIENT OR FOLLOWING AECOM'S EXPRESS AGREEMENT TO SUCH USE, AND ONLY FOR THE PURPOSES FOR WHICH IT WAS PREPARED AND PROVIDED.

Project Office
Royal Court
Basil Close, Chesterfield
Derbyshire S41 7SL
Tel(01246) 209221
Fax(01246) 209229
www.aecom.com

AECOM
AECOM Infrastructure & Environment UK Limited
Registered in England Registered number: 880328
Registered office: Midpoint, Alencon Link,
Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 7PP

Drawing Number Highways England Pin	Originator	Volume	Rev
-	-	-	-
Location	Type	Role	Number

APPENDIX 2 – REPORT

Woodland NVC survey

HIGHWAYS ENGLAND

M42 JUNCTION 6 IMPROVEMENT
WOODLAND NATIONAL VEGETATION
CLASSIFICATION SURVEY

MAY 19, 2017

CONFIDENTIAL





M42 JUNCTION 6
IMPROVEMENT
WOODLAND NATIONAL
VEGETATION
CLASSIFICATION SURVEY
REPORT

FINAL
CONFIDENTIAL

PROJECT NO.: 62241010
DATE: MAY 2017

WSP
THREE WHITE ROSE OFFICE PARK
MILLSHAW PARK LANE
LEEDS
LS11 0DL

PHONE: +44 (0)113 305 6623
WSP.COM

QUALITY MANAGEMENT

ISSUE/REVISION	FIRST ISSUE	REVISION 1	REVISION 2	REVISION 3
Remarks				
Date	19.05.17			
Prepared by	David Kirby			
Signature				
Checked by	Lucy Elliott			
Signature				
Authorised by	Paul Joyce			
Signature				
Project number	62241010			
Report number				
File reference				

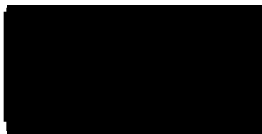
SIGNATURES

PREPARED BY



David Kirby MCIEEM CEnv
Principal Ecologist

REVIEWED BY



Lucy Elliott, BSc (Hons) MSc MCIEEM
Senior Ecologist

This report was prepared by WSP for the account of Highways England, in accordance with the professional services agreement. The disclosure of any information contained in this report is the sole responsibility of the intended recipient. The material in it reflects WSP's best judgement in light of the information available to it at the time of preparation. Any use which a third party makes of this report, or any reliance on or decisions to be made based on it, are the responsibility of such third parties. WSP accepts no responsibility for damages, if any, suffered by any third party as a result of decisions made or actions based on this report. This limitations statement is considered part of this report.

The original of the technology-based document sent herewith has been authenticated and will be retained by WSP for a minimum of ten years. Since the file transmitted is now out of WSP's control and its integrity can no longer be ensured, no guarantee may be given to by any modifications to be made to this document.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	Background.....	1
1.2	Scheme Location.....	1
1.3	Study Area.....	1
1.4	Study Aims and Objectives.....	1
2	METHODOLOGY	2
2.1	Overview.....	2
2.2	Sampling Compartments.....	2
2.3	Quadrat Size.....	2
2.4	Limitations.....	3
3	RESULTS AND DISCUSSION	4
3.1	Overview.....	4
3.2	Area 1 - West of the M42.....	4
3.3	Area 2 - East of the M42.....	6
4	CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS	8
5	FIGURES	9
5.1	Figure 1: NVC Survey Plan.....	9

TABLES

TABLE 3.1	QUADRAT DATA FOR AREA 1.....	5
TABLE 3.2	QUADRAT DATA FOR AREA 2.....	6

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 BACKGROUND

WSP (formerly Mouchel) was commissioned by Highways England to undertake a National Vegetation Classification (NVC) survey at Aspbury's Coppice. This area of ancient woodland, also designated as an Ecosite, is likely to be directly affected by Options 1 and 2 of the proposed M42 Junction 6 Improvement Scheme. Further botanical survey was therefore recommended to characterise the ecological baseline and to determine the likely effects of the scheme on the woodland.

This report presents the results of the NVC survey at Aspbury's Coppice undertaken in May 2017.

1.2 SCHEME LOCATION

At the time of writing, three possible route options (Options 1, 2 and 3) are being considered. All three options are predominantly located to the south-west of Junction 6 close to the village of Bickenhill, although all route options also include improvements to the junction itself. The land within the proposed scheme is predominantly used for agriculture and pasture grazing, although the scheme is also close to the National Exhibition Centre (NEC), Birmingham International Railway Station and Birmingham Airport as well as proposed developments including High Speed 2 (HS2) route and terminal, a Motorway Service Area (MSA) and UK Central development.

1.3 STUDY AREA

Aspbury's Coppice is located south of Junction 6 of the M42, where the B4102 crosses the motorway (centred at Ordnance Survey (OS) Grid Reference SP190805). The site is bisected by the M42 which runs through its centre, and is surrounded arable farmland to the east, south, and west. It is bordered by the B4102 to the north (see Figure 1 in Appendix 1).

1.4 STUDY AIMS AND OBJECTIVES

The aim of the study was to assess the quality of Aspbury's Coppice with respect to its ancient woodland designation. To achieve this, the following objectives were set:

- Undertake an NVC survey to classify and map habitats within the site in accordance with the standard NVC method; and,
- To record the presence of ancient woodland indicator species where present within the site.

2 METHODOLOGY

2.1 OVERVIEW

The field survey was undertaken on the 4th May 2017 by two Mouchel surveyors.

The methodology employed for the NVC surveys followed the methods outlined in British Plant Communities (Rodwell et al. 1991a, 1991b, 1992, 1995 & 2000). The extent of areas of homogeneous vegetation was mapped and sample quadrats (relevés) were located within these areas to record the abundance and frequency of vascular plants within each compartment. The field data was then analysed and each compartment was assigned, where possible, to a particular plant community. The extent of these community types is represented within mapping of the survey area in Annex 1; Figure 1. Additional information in the form of Target Notes (TN) is provided in Annex 2 and photographs of the site are presented in Annex 3.

2.2 SAMPLING COMPARTMENTS

Prior to undertaking vegetation sampling, boundaries of all homogeneous plant communities were mapped, as accurately as possible, on large-scale field maps. An attempt was made to determine the most typical habitats for sampling.

For each homogenous stand identified, samples were taken using appropriate quadrat size (see 2.3 below). Within each stand selected for analysis an appropriate number of quadrats were positioned in areas supporting representative vegetation. This inevitably involved some surveyor bias, but avoided problems of the arrangement of random samples and incorporating obvious vegetation boundaries or unrepresentative floristic features.

2.3 QUADRAT SIZE

Throughout the NVC surveys, the size of the sampling quadrats reflected the scale of the vegetation being sampled. Thus the following quadrat dimensions were employed:

- 4 m x 4 m for taller or more open herb communities, and low woodland field layers;
- 10 m x 10 m for species-poor or very tall herbaceous vegetation or tall woodland field layers/low understorey and dense scrub;
- 50 m x 50 m for sparse scrub, woodland canopy and tall understorey.

Mosaics were treated as a single vegetation type where they were repeatedly encountered in the same form or where it is was impossible to sample their elements separately due to their small scale.

2.3.1 MEASURING SPECIES ABUNDANCE

Within each quadrat, a quantitative measure of the relative abundance of every vascular plant, bryophyte and lichen species was undertaken using the ten point Domin scale. Cover was assessed by eye as a vertical projection on to the ground of all live, above-ground parts of the plants within the quadrat. The Domin scale categories are presented below:

- Cover of 91-100% is recorded as Domin 10
- Cover of 76-90% is recorded as Domin 9

- Cover of 51-75% is recorded as Domin 8
- Cover of 34-50% is recorded as Domin 7
- Cover of 26-33% is recorded as Domin 6
- Cover of 11-25% is recorded as Domin 5
- Cover of 4-10% is recorded as Domin 4
- Cover of <4% with many individuals is recorded as Domin 3
- Cover of <4% with several individuals is recorded as Domin 2
- Cover of <4% with few individuals is recorded as Domin 1

2.4 LIMITATIONS

There were no limitations to the survey due to land access, allowing an appraisal of all the accessible habitat features present within the survey area.

The survey was undertaken at an appropriate time of year for identifying woodland ground-flora.

3 RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

3.1 OVERVIEW

Aspbury's Coppice ancient woodland can be split into two geographically distinct units: the area of woodland to the west of the M42 (Area 1) and the woodland to the east of the M42 (Area 2).

Area 1 supports three relatively distinct stands of vegetation:

1. An area of mature replanted woodland (TN1) which predominantly comprises semi-mature to mature pedunculate oak *Quercus robur* in the canopy, with localised areas dominated by hybrid black poplar *Populus X Canadensis* (TN2).
2. A stand of plantation woodland, dominated by field maple *Acer campestre* which is adjacent to the B4102 (TN3); and
3. The M42 verge habitats (TN4), which support scrub and grassland habitats comprising species such as hawthorn *Crataegus monogyna*, elder *Sambucus nigra*, bramble *Rubus fruticosus* agg., semi-mature pedunculate oak, and various grasses and herbs such as false oat grass *Arrhenatherum elatius*, cock's foot *Dactylis glomerata*, red campion *Silene dioica*, and curled leaf dock *Rumex crispus*.

Area 2 is similar in character to Area 1, although the composition of species in the canopy is more mixed in terms of the distribution of broad-leaved species, predominantly pedunculate oak and hybrid black poplar, and conifers, Scot's pine *Pinus sylvestris*. As with Area 1 above, three distinct vegetation stands were recorded:

1. The area of pedunculate oak/Scot's pine/hybrid black poplar woodland (TN5);
2. A stand of field maple dominated plantation woodland adjacent to the B4102 (TN6); and,
3. The M42 verge habitat (TN7).

The stands of mature woodland within Areas 1 and 2 (TNs 1 and 5) were subject to an NVC survey in line with the methods described in Section 2. The areas of field maple plantation woodland were not subject to NVC survey as these are planted, single species stands which do not equate to any of the NVC archetypes. The M42 verge habitats were also not subject to NVC survey as they are highly mosaic in nature and fall outside of the areas designated.

The results of the NVC survey within Areas 1 and 2 are presented below and on Figure 1 in Annex 1.

3.2 AREA 1 – WEST OF THE M42

Area 1 comprises approximately 1.4ha of replanted woodland dominated by pedunculate oak with localised areas dominated by hybrid black poplar. A single 50m x 50m quadrat of the canopy layer was recorded within the stand, given the size of the block. Within the understorey and field layers, five 4m x 4m quadrats were undertaken. Constants recorded within the understorey included hawthorn *Crataegus monogyna*, elder *Sambucus nigra*, with hazel *Corylus avellana* and honeysuckle *Lonicera periclymenum* occurring occasionally. Within the field layer, bluebell *Hyacinthoides non-scripta*, lesser celandine *Ficaria verna*, and wood anemone *Anemone nemorosa*, were recorded as constants, while lords and ladies *Arum maculatum*, and dog's mercury *Mercurialis perennis* occurred occasionally. Table 3.1 presents the quadrat data for Area 1.

Table 3.1 Quadrat data for Area 1.

COMMON NAME	LATIN NAME	1	2	3	4	5	FREQUENCY
Pedunculate oak	<i>Quercus robur</i>	10	10	10	10	10	V
Common hawthorn	<i>Crataegus monogyna</i>	6	6	4	6	5	V
Elder	<i>Sambucus nigra</i>	5	6	4	6	5	V
Bluebell	<i>Hyacinthoides non-scripta</i>	9	10	7	6	5	V
Lesser celandine	<i>Ficaria verna</i>	4	7	4		4	IV
Wood anemone	<i>Anemone nemorosa</i>		4	8	6	4	IV
Common nettle	<i>Urtica dioica</i>	1			1	2	III
Lords and ladies	<i>Arum maculatum</i>			1	5	2	III
Cleavers	<i>Galium aparine</i>	5			4		II
Honeysuckle	<i>Lonicera periclymenum</i>			1		1	II
Common hazel	<i>Corylus avellana</i>			1		5	II
Bramble	<i>Rubus fruticosus agg.</i>	4					I
Dog's mercury	<i>Mercurialis perennis</i>					9	I
Wood melick	<i>Melica uniflora</i>					1	I
Enchanter's-nightshade	<i>Circaea lutetiana</i>	1					I

The canopy layer is generally semi-mature to mature, and it is evident that the pedunculate oak have been planted relatively recently (the majority are approximately 25 – 50 years old). The ground flora within the stand is a good example of a well-developed broad-leaved woodland ground flora, with many ancient woodland indicator species present, including bluebell, lesser celandine, wood anemone, dog's mercury, and lords and ladies. Generally, the woodland nearest the M42 verge exhibits lower diversity and abundance of ancient woodland indicator species and a greater degree of scrub encroachment. However, these areas are still likely to contain a seed bank which supports species typical of ancient broad-leaved woodland.

In terms of NVC community, analysis of the quadrat data using MAVIS has returned the following top five fit for the woodland communities:

W8b – *Fraxinus excelsior-Acer campestre-Mercurialis perennis* woodland - *Anemone nemorosa* sub-community - 44.4% fit;

W21 – *Crataegus monogyna – Hedera helix* scrub - 42.7% fit;

W21b - *Crataegus monogyna – Hedera helix* scrub - *Mercurialis perennis* sub-community - 42.3% fit;

W21a - *Crataegus monogyna – Hedera helix* scrub – *Hedera helix – Urtica dioica* sub-community - 40.6% fit; and,

W10b – *Quercus robur – Pteridium aquilinum – Rubus fruticosus* woodland – *Anemone nemorosa* sub-community - 40.15% fit.

The community does not exhibit features which accord with communities W21. Although there is a relative abundance of hawthorn with the quadrats, W21 is indicative of a scrub community, and the vegetation within the stand is a well-developed woodland.

The woodland within Area 1 therefore most closely conforms to communities W8 or W10 – oak or ash woods that are generally found in lowland Britain on calcareous (W8) to acidic soils (W10). Both W8 and W10 woodlands are relatively variable in the composition of the canopy, with the species composition within the field layer defining the two communities and their respective sub-communities. Where soils are intermediate between calcareous and acidic, the separation between W8 and W10 can be problematic.

In the case of Area 1, the dominance of pedunculate oak in the canopy is indicative of W10 as is the abundance of bluebell and wood anemone in the field layer. The relative scarcity of dog's mercury, an indicator of base-rich soils, is also more characteristic of the W10 woodland. However, other species that are generally constants in W10 woodland, including bramble, honeysuckle, and bracken, were absent or relatively scarce, although this may be due to the survey being undertaken relatively early in the flowering season for these species. In terms of W8 woodland, the W8b community can support abundant pedunculate oak and supports a ground flora with abundant wood anemone, bluebell, and lesser celandine.

Area 1 exhibits features of characteristics of both W8 and W10 woodland; likely a result of soils which are intermediate in terms of acidity / alkalinity. However, given the abundance of oak in the canopy and bluebell and wood anemone in the field layer, and relative paucity of dog's mercury, it is likely that the woodland most closely conforms to W10b – *Quercus robur*-*Pteridium aquilinum*-*Rubus fruticosus* woodland – *Anemone nemorosa* sub-community.

3.3 AREA 2 – EAST OF THE M42

Area 2 comprises approximately 1.1ha of replanted woodland, which supports predominantly pedunculate oak, Scots pine, and areas of hybrid black poplar. As with Area 1, a single 50m x 50m quadrat was recorded for the canopy layer, with five 4m x 4m quadrats recorded for the field layer. The understorey comprised hazel, hawthorn and elder as constants, with bluebell, dog's mercury, ivy, and cleavers *Galium aparine* frequent to abundant within the field layer.

Table 3.2 **Quadrat data for Area 2.**

COMMON NAME	LATIN NAME	1	2	3	4	5	FREQUENCY
Bluebell	<i>Hyacinthoides non-scripta</i>	4	9	7	9	9	V
Hazel	<i>Corylus avellana</i>	5	5	7	5	5	V
Pedunculate oak	<i>Quercus robur</i>		9	4	5	8	IV
Common hawthorn	<i>Crataegus monogyna</i>		5		5	5	III
Elder	<i>Sambucus nigra</i>	5		4		5	III
Cleavers	<i>Galium aparine</i>	5	7		3		III
Dog's mercury	<i>Mercurialis perennis</i>	9		8	5		III
Common ivy	<i>Hedera helix</i>	2		4	2		III
White poplar	<i>Populus alba</i>	10	5	7			III
Lesser celandine	<i>Ficaria verna</i>	4			7		II
Lords and ladies	<i>Arum maculatum</i>				3	3	II
Bramble	<i>Rubus fruticosus</i>		4			2	II
Common nettle	<i>Urtica dioica</i>	5					I
Red campion	<i>Silene dioica</i>	4					I
Common ash	<i>Fraxinus excelsior</i>				9		I

Scots pine	<i>Pinus sylvestris</i>					6	I
Male fern	<i>Dryopteris felix-mas</i>	1					I
Cow parsley	<i>Anthriscus sylvestris</i>					2	I
Wood sorrel	<i>Oxalis acetosella</i>					7	I

The canopy layer is of a similar age to Area 1, with the oak species approximately 50 years of age. There is a greater abundance of Scots pine and hybrid black poplar within this stand when compared to Area 1. The ground flora is generally well developed, with an abundance of species which are indicative of ancient broad-leaved woodland, including bluebell, dog's mercury, lesser celandine, lords and ladies, wood anemone, and wood avens *Geum urbanum*. Notably, wood avens was absent from within the quadrats within this stand.

Analysis of the quadrat data using MAVIS has returned the following top five fit for the woodland communities:

W8b - *Fraxinus excelsior-Acer campestre-Mercurialis perennis* woodland - *Anemone nemorosa* sub-community - 46.4% fit

W8d - *Fraxinus excelsior-Acer campestre-Mercurialis perennis* woodland *Hedera helix* sub-community - 41.9% fit

W8f - *Fraxinus excelsior-Acer campestre-Mercurialis perennis* woodland - *Allium ursinum* sub-community - 41.2% fit;

W10c - *Quercus robur-Pteridium aquilinum-Rubus fruticosus* woodland - *Hedera helix* sub-community - 41.2% fit; and,

W21b - *Crataegus monogyna* – *Hedera helix* scrub - *Mercurialis perennis* sub-community - 40.7% fit.

The woodland within Area 2 is generally of a similar character to Area 1, in that it supports similar species within the canopy, understorey, and field layers. Analysis with MAVIS has shown that Area 2 most closely fits with woodland community W8b *Fraxinus excelsior-Acer campestre-Mercurialis perennis* woodland - *Anemone nemorosa* sub-community. A notable difference between Area 1 and 2, is the relative abundance of dog's mercury within Area 2, which is indicative of more basic soil conditions. This woodland community is, as with Area 1, an intermediary between W8 and W10 woodland, although it is likely to be a closer fit to W8b - *Fraxinus excelsior-Acer campestre-Mercurialis perennis* woodland - *Anemone nemorosa* sub-community, given the abundance of dog's mercury.

4 CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The woodland blocks within Area 1 and Area 2 are relatively good examples of lowland semi-natural broad-leaved woodland. Both stands support an abundance of ancient woodland indicator species, including bluebell, wood anemone, dog's mercury, wood sorrel, lords and ladies, and lesser celandine (amongst others). Despite being replanted, and supporting species which are uncharacteristic of this woodland type (hybrid black poplar and Scots pine), both woodland retain ancient woodland features, including a well-developed and diverse ground flora.

The impacts arising from the proposed scheme will be assessed in the forthcoming Environmental Appraisal Report, which will include a detailed mitigation strategy for ancient woodland. This should aim to reduce habitat loss to ancient woodland wherever possible. Where loss is unavoidable, the ancient woodland seedbank should be retained through appropriate topsoil management. This soil should be reused in areas of woodland planting.

5 FIGURES

5.1 FIGURE 1: NVC SURVEY PLAN

APPENDIX

A TARGET NOTES



TARGET NOTE

TN1	Area of semi-natural broad-leaved woodland (replanted)
TN2	Stands of hybrid black poplar within Area 1
TN3	Plantation woodland dominated by field maple adjacent to area designated as ancient woodland
TN4	M42 verge habitats
TN5	Area of pedunculated oak/Scots pine
TN6	Field maple dominated plantations woodland
TN7	M42 verge habitats

APPENDIX

B PHOTOGRAPHS





Photograph 1 - Typical canopy and field layer community within Area 1



Photograph 2 - Woodland canopy and field layer within Area 2



Photograph 3 - Typical woodland habitat within near vicinity of M42 verge in Area 1



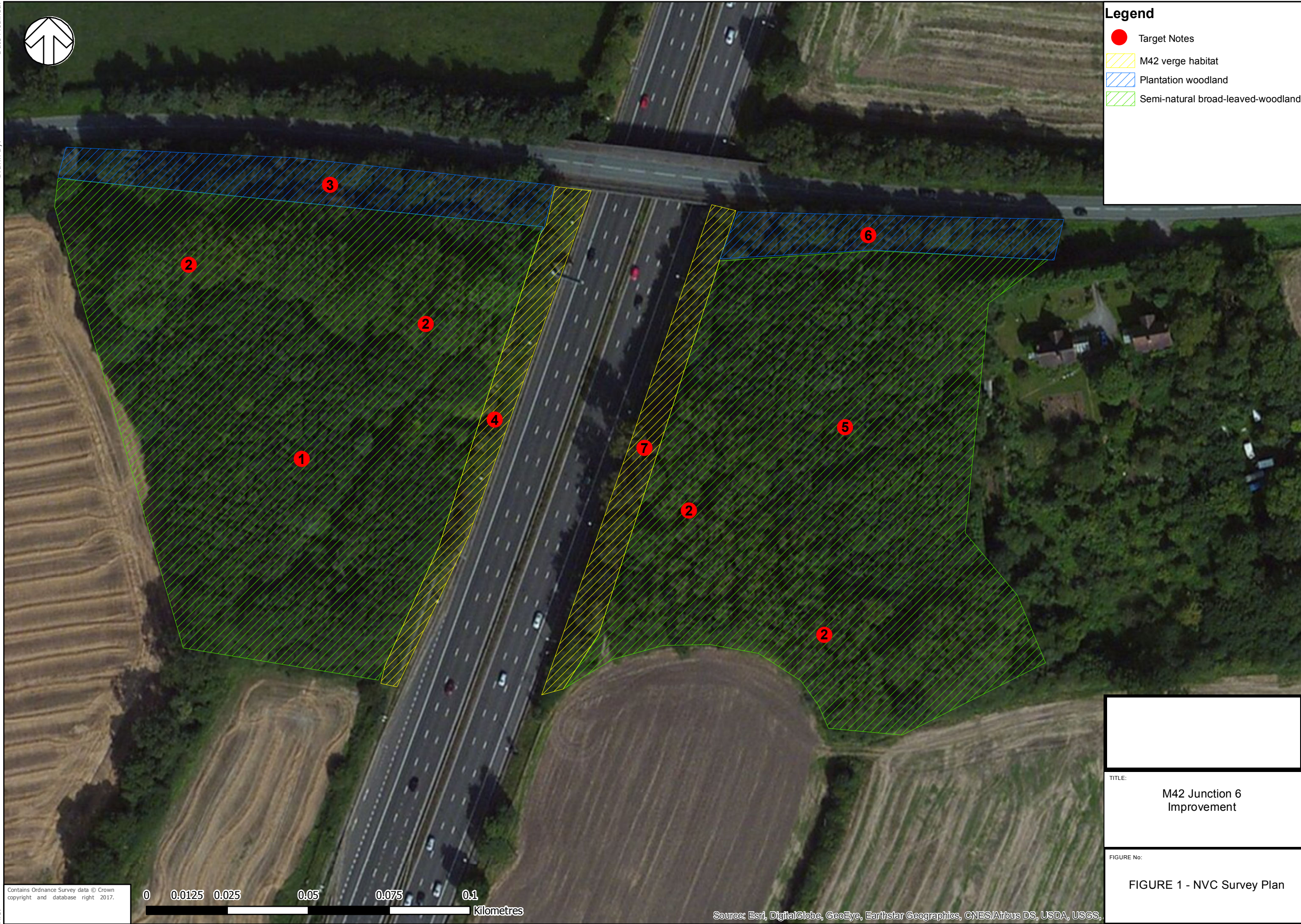
Photograph 4 - Woodland habitat adjacent to M42 verge within Area 2

Date Modified:
Drawn By:

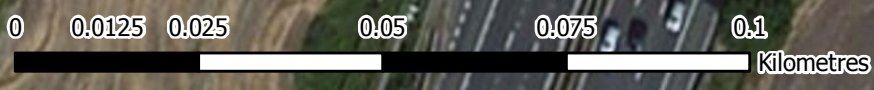


Legend

- Target Notes
- ▨ M42 verge habitat
- ▨ Plantation woodland
- ▨ Semi-natural broad-leaved-woodland



Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2017.



Source: Esri, DigitalGlobe, GeoEye, Earthstar Geographics, CNES/Airbus DS, USDA, USGS,

TITLE:
M42 Junction 6 Improvement

FIGURE No:
FIGURE 1 - NVC Survey Plan

Appendix B - M42 Junction 6 Species Licence - Technical Note V.1.

M42 Junction 6 Improvement Scheme: Technical Note for Licencing of Protected Species

Prepared by:	Marcus Wainwright-Hicks	14/09/18
Checked by:	Jeremy Truscott	14/09/18
Approved by:	Oliver Barnett	14/09/18
Verified by:	Jamie Gleave	14/09/18

1. Introduction

A Development Consent Order (DCO) application is being made for the M42 Junction 6 Improvement Scheme (the Scheme).

The Scheme involves works to construct and improve roads and junctions within an area broadly defined by M42 Junction 7 to the north, Birmingham Airport and Catherine-de-Barnes to the west, Middle Bickenhill and Hampton-in-Arden to the east, and M42 Junction 5 to the south.

Work undertaken as part of the formal Environmental Impact Assessment of the Scheme to establish a comprehensive ecological baseline has been progressing since 2017. This has established that the Scheme will affect the habitat of species protected by the Conservation of Habitats and Species Regulations 2017 and the Protection of Badgers Act 1992.

In relation to legally protected species and the need for protected species derogation licences, Paragraph 5.38 of the National Policy Statement for National Networks states:

'The Secretary of State will need to take account of what mitigation measures may have been agreed between the applicant and Natural England and/or the MMO, and whether Natural England and/or the MMO has granted or refused, or intends to grant or refuse, any relevant licences, including protected species mitigation licences.'

Guidance on the process required to establish if a protected species licence is required, and if it is likely to be granted, is provided in The Planning Inspectorate (2012) *Advice Note 11, Annex C – Natural England and the Planning Inspectorate, version 2* (see Appendix A), the key stages of which are:

1. Establish if a licence is required;
2. Submit a draft licence via Natural England's pre-submission service;
3. 'Letter of No Impediment' (LONI) or 'Further Information Request' issued by Natural England.
4. Submission of DCO application; and
5. The granting of protected species mitigation licence following consent DCO.

2. Purpose of this Technical Note

The purpose of this technical note is to provide a basis by which it can be agreed with Natural England that protected species licences are (or are not) required, and that the approach to mitigation is valid and satisfactory (prior to submission of a draft licence). This technical note accordingly:

1. outlines key ecological baseline data for relevant protected species;
2. outlines the anticipated effects that have identified the requirement for protected species licences for each species / group; and
3. provides an outline of the proposed approach to licensable mitigation.

The species that are relevant to this technical note are badger *Meles meles*, bats and great crested newts *Triturus cristatus* (GCN), and each are considered separately below. The location of key features and findings for each species/group that are referred to in the text are presented together in Appendix B – Figure 1.

At the time of writing this technical note, the design of the Scheme remains under development and may be subject to further development and refinement. Notwithstanding this, its design is sufficiently advanced to a point where it is considered unlikely that any further change will materially affect the assessment presented in this technical note.

Reference is made in the technical note to the Scheme's Development Consent Order Limits (referred to in this technical note as the red line boundary) and the construction boundary (i.e. the anticipated limits of construction works within the red line boundary).

As this technical note contains information and material concerning badgers, its content should be treated as **strictly confidential** and only released to individuals and parties with a bona fide interest in the precise detail of the Scheme.

3. Badger

Methodology

Existing badger records within at least 1 km of the Scheme's red line boundary were obtained from Warwickshire Badger Group as part of an initial desk study.

Badger field signs from all accessible areas of the Scheme's red line boundary and surrounding area (the badger survey area) were recorded over December 2017 and February 2018 in accordance with best practice methodology (Highways Agency 1997¹). The status of identified badger setts was initially classified according to the method described by Harris *et al* (1989²).

In order to evaluate the extent of territories and to confirm the status of setts present, bait marking surveys were completed between 27th March and 18th April 2018 in accordance with best practice (Delahay *et al* 2000³).

Land access for surveys was permitted across most of the Scheme; however some areas within 1 km of the Scheme were not accessible, notably areas south-east of Bickenhill village between the M42 motorway and the Scheme. Given the coverage of the desk study data and field survey results, which extends well beyond the Scheme's red line boundary, it is unlikely that any significant field signs were missed.

Baseline

A total of 19 badger setts were identified within the accessible locations of the badger survey area; S1 – S19. The provisional classification of these setts included 3 potential main setts (S5, S15 & S17), as well as 6 subsidiary setts, 9 outlier setts and 1 annexe sett (disused).

Latrines were scattered across the area of survey, with the strongest territorial markers associated with a hedgerow east of B4438 Catherine-de-Barnes Lane, the east margins of the woodland of Barber's Coppice and the western boundary of Aspbury's Copse.

The bait marking study data suggests that sett 17 and sett 5 are likely occupied by the same badger clan, as pellets from these setts were recorded together. Due to their individual size and the distribution of associated setts, it is considered that sett 5 is the main sett and sett 17 is a subsidiary to this.

Impacts

Based on current survey data, 4 setts are likely to be directly impacted by the Scheme: S2 (outlier); S6 (subsidiary); S17 (subsidiary); and S19 (outlier). The most significant of these setts are S6 and S17 which have four and five active holes respectively.

It is considered that a badger licence will be required for the permanent closure of setts S2, S17 and S19, and the temporary closure of sett S6.

¹ Highways Agency (1997) DMRB Volume 10 Part 2 HA 59/92 Mitigating Against Effects on Badgers

² Harris S., Cresswell P. & Jefferies, D. (1989) Surveying Badgers. An Occasional Publication of the Mammal Society No. 9.

³ Delahay RJ, Brown JA, Mallinson PJ, Spyvee PD, Handoll D, Rogers LM and Cheeseman C L (2000) The use of marked bait in studies of the territorial organisation of the European badger (*Meles meles*). Mammal Review 30: 73-87

Mitigation

Pre-construction surveys will be completed to confirm the status of setts and to ensure that no new setts have established. Any active setts will only be closed during the period July – November inclusive, and only following receipt of a licence from Natural England.

No development or associated works will be undertaken within 30m of any sett prior to successful exclusion (standard 21 day period) and destruction of each sett. If necessary, prior to sett destruction any vegetation in and around the sett will be removed by hand tools. If necessary, the ground around the sett will have appropriate gauge wire laid around the setts to prevent badgers from digging back in. If badgers re-enter the sett during this exclusion period, the three week exclusion will commence again from day one.

Sett excavation / destruction will be concluded within one working day, as badgers may re-enter exposed tunnels and entrances. Subsequent site works will not begin until the sett has been successfully closed.

Since no main setts will be lost, there is considered to be no requirement to provide replacement setts.

These measures are considered to be sufficient to ensure legal compliance with regard to badgers.

4. Bats

Methodology

A preliminary appraisal of trees, buildings and other man-made structures was undertaken based on standard guidance provided by the Collins⁴, English Nature⁵ and Joint Nature Conservation Committee⁶.

Daytime roost inspections of accessible built structures (bridges and buildings) were undertaken between December 2017 and September 2018. All built structures that are anticipated to be directly affected by the Scheme were accessible to survey. Ground Level Tree Assessments (GLTA) were undertaken between July 2017 and July 2018 to identify Potential Roosting Features (PRFs). Where safe to do so, an at-height PRF inspection (via tree climbing survey) was undertaken of all trees with moderate and high roosting suitability within the Scheme's red line boundary.

Where the preliminary PRF assessment concluded that the structure or tree had low (structures only) moderate or high potential, further roost surveys were undertaken between May and September 2018⁷. For trees, the scope of roost surveys included all those offering high bat potential within the Scheme's red line boundary; and only those trees offering moderate roosting potential that fall within 50m of the construction boundary.

Access was limited to other buildings, structures and trees within the Scheme's red line boundary due to landowner permission not being obtained, or due to health and safety concerns (major road and railway bridges); however, none of these features will be affected by the Scheme.

Baseline - Buildings

Access was available to the single building (B1 Heath End House) and all other structures that are likely to be affected by the Scheme. Building B1 Heath End House was recorded as supporting a small roost of brown long-eared bats *Plecotus auritus* (1 individual) and a small roost of common pipistrelle bats *Pipistrellus pipistrellus* (4 individuals). These roosts were assessed as small day roosts of low conservation significance.

No evidence of bats or potential roosts has been recorded from any of the other accessible structures.

Baseline - Trees

Following the GLTAs and tree climbing assessment:

- 26 trees were rated as offering high potential for bats;
- 33 trees rated as offering moderate potential for bats;
- 31 rated as offering low potential for bats; and
- No confirmed roosts were identified.

⁴ Collins, J. (ed) (2016), Bat Surveys for Professional Ecologists: Good Practice Guidelines (3rd edn). The Bat Conservation Trust, London.

⁵ Mitchell-Jones, A.J. (2004) Bat Mitigation Guidelines. English Nature, Peterborough.

⁶ Mitchell-Jones, A.J. & McLeish, A.P. (eds) (2004) Bat Workers' Manual (3rd edn). JNCC, Peterborough.

⁷ Where it was considered that sufficient, recent data collected by third parties (e.g. as part of Planning or European Protected Species Mitigation Licence applications undertaken to inform unrelated developments) was available for a tree assessed as offering Moderate or High potential or a confirmed roost one updated survey was undertaken

Nocturnal roost surveys of trees have confirmed bat roosts at six trees:

- One common pipistrelle bat was recorded roosting at tree T17;
- One common pipistrelle bat at tree T21;
- Two soprano pipistrelle *Pipistrellus pygmaeus* bats at tree T80;
- Two common pipistrelle bats at tree T83;
- Four soprano pipistrelle bats at tree T85.2; and
- .One soprano pipistrelle bat at tree T242.

These roosts were assessed as small day roosts of low conservation significance.

Impacts

The Scheme will result in the loss of roosts associated with building B1 and trees T17 & T21. None of the remaining roosts will be directly affected by the Scheme.

It is considered that a protected species derogation licence will be required for the loss of roosts in B1, T17 & T21.

Outline Mitigation

A mitigation strategy will be put in place to ensure legal compliance with regard to roosting bats. This will minimise any risk of harm to bats during demolition works and provide suitable alternative sites for roosting bats.

The strategy will be delivered through an appropriate Natural England European Protected Species (EPS) derogation licence that will be in place prior to demolition or tree felling where applicable.

Given the low status of the roosts present the mitigation will specify that a check for bats prior to demolition / felling, followed by soft stripping of suitable roosting features or soft felling of trees under the supervision of an appropriately licenced bat worker. Prior to demolition bat boxes will be sited on retained features to provide alternative roosting opportunities for the local bat population. If any bats are encountered during supervised roost destruction these will be moved to the nearest replacement bat box or other suitable release location under the discretion of the licensed bat worker and following methods proscribed in the licence. If any injured bats are encountered they will be suitably cared for and/or placed in the care of recognised bat carers following methods proscribed in the licence. Although the location for mitigation is yet to be established, the bat boxes will be sited as close as possible to the existing roosts.

These measures are considered sufficient to ensure that the Favourable Conservation Status of local bat populations is maintained.

5. Great Crested Newts

Methodology

Habitats Suitability Index (HSI) assessments of ponds and aquatic presence / absence and population size class assessments were completed according to best practice in spring 2017 (Oldham *et al* 2000⁸, English Nature 2001⁹).

Updated HSI surveys of all accessible ponds were completed in 2018. The scope of these surveys was expanded to include ponds that were previously inaccessible. Targeted eDNA surveys to confirm the presence / absence of GCN in a selection of the ponds and in accordance with best practice methodology (Biggs *et al* 2014¹⁰). These surveys were targeted on ponds 1. that had previously been inaccessible and were now accessible, 2. where GCN were previously absent and the HSI had altered significantly or 3. that were previously dry but were now demonstrated to hold water in 2018.

⁸ Oldham R.S., Keeble J., Swan M.J.S. & Jeffcote M. (2000) Evaluating the suitability of habitat for the Great Crested Newt (*Triturus cristatus*). Herpetological Journal 10(4), 143-155

⁹ English Nature (2001) *Great Crested Newt Mitigation Guidelines*

¹⁰ Biggs J., Ewald N., Valentini A., Gaboriaud C., Griffiths R.A., Foster J., Wilkinson J., Arnett A., Williams P. & Dunn F. (2014a) Analytical and methodological development for improved surveillance of the Great Crested Newt. Appendix 5. Technical advice note for field and laboratory sampling of great crested newt (*Triturus cristatus*) environmental DNA. Freshwater Habitats Trust, Oxford.

Baseline

A total of 35 ponds have been identified within 500m of the Scheme's red line boundary. Aquatic survey in 2017 confirmed the presence of GCN in 6 ponds, which are considered to form 4 separate meta-populations:

- Ponds 6 (peak count 1) and 7 (peak count 5);
- Ponds 11 (peak count 8) and 12 (peak count 1);
- Pond 13 (peak count 8); and
- Pond 36 (peak count 2).

The data is consistent with each separate meta-population having a low population size class. Updated eDNA survey of ponds in 2018 confirmed the absence of GCN from all ponds surveyed (refer methods section above). The nature and extent of available terrestrial habitat was also confirmed to be unchanged.

On this basis it is considered that the available baseline information is sufficient to support a licence application.

Impacts

No GCN ponds will be lost to the Scheme.

Each of ponds 6, 7 and 13 contain low populations located over 250m from the Scheme's red line boundary, which exceeds the typical dispersal distance of GCN (Cresswell & Whitworth 2004¹¹). Furthermore, each of these ponds is surrounded by GCN-suitable terrestrial habitat that is separated from the Scheme by areas of comparatively inhospitable habitat, i.e. arable fields or short, grazed pasture, and which GCN are unlikely to traverse. Given these factors it is considered reasonable to conclude that these GCN meta-populations do not make use of habitats within the Scheme's red line boundary. Therefore, there will be no impacts upon the small GCN populations supported by ponds 6, 7 and 13.

The low GCN populations from ponds 11, 12 and 36 falls within 250m of the Scheme's red line boundary, and are connected (via largely linear habitat linkages) to GCN-suitable terrestrial habitat that may be directly affected during construction. There is therefore a risk that the some of the affected habitats may be used by the GCN populations from these ponds.

There are considered to be no fragmentation impacts to any of the GCN populations as a result of the Scheme.

A protected species derogation licence is considered to be required in order to mitigate the potential for harm to GCN and the loss of terrestrial habitat.

Outline Mitigation

The following provides detail of mitigation according to a traditional licencing approach; however, is acknowledged that the Scheme would be progressed within an area that may be included as part of the emerging district licencing scheme. Therefore, advice would be welcomed from Natural England on the potential relevance and application of district licencing for the Scheme.

A Natural England EPS derogation licence will be put in place to legitimise the clearance of GCN terrestrial habitat. This licence will include a mitigation strategy detailing the appropriate timing of works and use of best practice measures to safely translocate GCN to a pre-prepared receptor in advance of clearance.

The affected area of terrestrial habitat will be surrounded by Temporary Amphibian Fencing (TAF) and GCN will be trapped for a minimum period of 30 days. Trapping will only take place during suitable weather conditions (ambient temperature >5oC) in the period c. March – mid-October, inclusive. Captured GCN and other amphibians will be translocated to a receptor area, the location of which is yet to be established but would comprise an area of habitat in close proximity to the known GCN ponds that will be enhanced with the addition of purpose-built hibernacula to provide sufficient additional opportunities for GCN to shelter.

The EPS licence will include prescriptions for the further enhancement and management of GCN terrestrial habitat used by the population supported by nearby ponds, for example, through the provision of log pile refugia.

¹¹ Cresswell W & Whitworth R (2004) *English Nature Research Report – Number 576 - An assessment of the efficiency of capture techniques and the value of different habitats for the great crested newt Triturus cristatus*. English Nature

**APPENDIX A – ADVICE NOTE 11, ANNEX C – NATURAL ENGLAND AND
THE PLANNING INSPECTORATE**



Advice Note 11, Annex C – Natural England and the Planning Inspectorate Version 2

Introduction

Part 1 of the Planning Inspectorate Advice Note 11: “Working with Public Bodies” covers many of the generic points of interaction relevant to the Planning Inspectorate and Public Bodies. This Annex C to Advice Note 11 helps applicants understand Natural England’s particular role in infrastructure planning. It explains:

- What is Natural England?
- What does Natural England do?
- Natural England’s role in NSIPs
 - Pre-application
 - Examination
 - Environmental Impact Assessments (EIA)
 - Habitats Regulations Assessments (HRA)
 - Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs)
 - Licensing
- How to contact Natural England

This Annex will be kept under review and was updated in September 2015. The Planning Inspectorate and Natural England welcome feedback on the content of this Annex.

What is Natural England?

Natural England is a statutory nature conservation body (SNCB) established by the Natural Environment and Rural Communities (NERC) Act 2006. Natural England’s general purpose is to ensure that the natural environment is conserved, enhanced, and managed for the benefit of present and future generations, thereby contributing to sustainable development. Natural England is financed by the Department for the Environment Food and Rural Affairs (Defra) but is a Non-Departmental Public Body, which forms its own views based on the best scientific evidence available.

What does Natural England do?

Natural England works for people, places and nature, to enhance biodiversity, landscapes and wildlife in rural, urban, coastal and marine areas; promoting access, recreation and public well-being, and contributing to the way natural resources are managed so that they can be enjoyed now and by future generations.

Section 2 of the NERC Act provides that Natural England’s general statutory purpose is: ‘... to ensure that the natural environment is conserved, enhanced and managed for the benefit of present and future generations, thereby contributing to sustainable development.’ This includes:

- promoting nature conservation and protecting biodiversity;
- conserving and enhancing the landscape;
- securing the provision and improvement of facilities for the study, understanding and enjoyment of the natural environment;
- promoting access to the countryside and open spaces and encouraging open-air recreation; and
- contributing, in other ways, to social and economic well-being through management of the natural environment.

Natural England is required to keep under review all matters relating to its general purpose, and to provide public authorities with advice where they request this.

The geographical extent of Natural England's remit and responsibilities covers

- Impacts on protected sites and landscapes within England and out to 12 nautical miles of the English coastline.
- Protected species licensing in the terrestrial environment in England (this applies to all activities undertaken landward of the mean low water mark). [The Marine Management Organisation \(MMO\)](#) is responsible for licensing seaward of the mean low water mark.
- There may also be cross border situations where, dependent on the nature and location of the proposal, Natural England will have a joint duty with Natural Resources Wales (NRW) or Scottish Natural Heritage (SNH).
- As of the 9th of December 2013, the Joint Nature Conservation Committee (JNCC) has delegated its role as the SNCB for **offshore renewable energy projects** (wave, wind and tide) in English offshore waters, outside 12nm, to Natural England. The delegation means that all provision of advice on renewable energy projects in inshore and offshore waters, adjacent to England (0-200nm), is provided by Natural England rather than being split between JNCC and Natural England at the 12nm boundary.
- For NSIPs that are not renewable energy projects beyond 12 nautical miles of the English coastline, Natural England will support JNCC in the exercise of its duties under the Habitats Regulations, particularly when there are impacts on protected sites inside 12 nautical miles.

Natural England's role in NSIPs

In the context of the Planning Act 2008 Act (the PA 2008), Natural England's main responsibilities relate to EIA, the Habitats Regulations, the regulation of SSSIs under the Wildlife and Countryside Act (WCA) 1981 and the licensing body in respect of protected species. Natural England will input into all phases of the 2008 Act process as required including pre-application and examination. The main roles and responsibilities of Natural England fall into the following categories:

- as one of the prescribed consultees under section 42 of the 2008 Act that applicants

are required to consult before submitting a NSIP application¹

- as one of the consultation bodies that the Planning Inspectorate must consult before a scoping opinion is adopted in relation to any EIA² and as a prescribed consultee for the environmental information submitted pursuant to the Infrastructure Planning (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 2009
- as a statutory party in the examination of DCO applications³
- as a statutory nature conservation body under the Conservation of Habitats and Species Regulations 2010 (Habitats Regulations) or the Offshore Marine Conservation (Natural Habitats etc.) Regulations 2007 (Offshore Regulations) in respect of the HRA.
- as a consenting and licensing body/authority in respect of protected species and operations likely to damage the protected features of SSSIs pursuant to the Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981 (as amended) (WCA 1981)⁴ and in relation to European protected species under the Habitats Regulations.
- as a prescribed consultee under the Marine and Coastal Access Act (2009) for proposals within the area of the English territorial sea capable of affecting, other than insignificantly, any of the protected features of a Marine Conservation Zone (MCZ) or any ecological or geomorphological process on which the conservation of any protected feature of an MCZ is (wholly or in part) dependent.

Pre-application

Natural England is a prescribed consultee under the 2008 Act and secondary legislation. Its input is vital in the pre-application process in cases where there are likely to be impacts on matters of nature conservation importance. Natural England encourages applicants to begin pre-application consultations at the earliest possible time and with as much detail as possible.

Early consultation with Natural England is very important because Natural England's advice (including on appropriate surveys and investigations) will enable applicants to give appropriate consideration to the environmental effects of an NSIP as the application is developing. The applicant has a duty to have regard to any consultation responses it receives⁵ under sections 42, 47 and 48 of the 2008 Act. Matters concerning EIA, HRA, SSSIs and licensing should all be addressed during pre-application and are set out in more detail below.

¹ Under s. 42(a) Planning Act 2008 and Schedule 1 of the Infrastructure Planning (Applications: Prescribed Forms and Procedure) Regulations 2009 (as amended), at: http://infrastructure.planninginspectorate.gov.uk/wp-content/uploads/2009/08/uksi_20092263_en.pdf.

² Under Regulation 8 of the Infrastructure Planning (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 2009(as amended)

³ Under s. 88(3) (c) and s.102(ca) Planning Act 2008 and the Infrastructure Planning (Interested Parties and Miscellaneous Prescribed Provisions) Regulations 2015.

⁴ Natural England's advice should be sought by developers prior to them carrying out works on or affecting a SSSI and in the case of owners and occupiers there is a requirement to notify and gain consent, prior to carrying out, or allowing to be carried out, works on or affecting a SSSI.

⁵ Section 49 of the Planning Act 2008.

There is nothing in the 2008 Act or related secondary legislation that would prevent applicants informally consulting Natural England outside of the section 42 consultation process at the pre-application stage. Natural England's **Discretionary Advice Service** is offered to provide non-statutory advice related to development proposals. In doing so, its aim is to offer improved customer service, support sustainable development and achieve better environmental outcomes through the planning system. If using this service, applicants will be assigned a named adviser for their project and agreed timescales for responding. To use Natural England's Discretionary Advice Service visit its website for more information and a downloadable request form [here](#).

Natural England encourages applicants to discuss and agree reasonable timescales which will allow us to allocate resources efficiently. Natural England considers that carrying out pre-application consultation in this way will mean that an applicant's consultations can be more effective as they will be based on a more comprehensive understanding of the environmental implications of a project.

To assist the applicant during the pre-application stage Natural England will continue to work closely with fellow Defra statutory environmental protection bodies (e.g. the Environment Agency or the MMO) when considering issues which cut across our various statutory responsibilities. Natural England has agreed a [Joint Action Plan](#) with the Environment Agency, which will help to guide how the two bodies work together on NSIP projects. Our [Improvement Plan](#) also sets out recent achievements and future goals in these areas. See also the section on Habitats Regulations below for information relating to agreeing Evidence Plans with Natural England during the pre-application stage.

Natural England also encourage the utilisation of Evidence Plans, more information about this is set out in the section on Habitats Regulations below.

Examination

If an application is accepted for examination and there are outstanding issues of nature conservation importance, Natural England is likely to notify the Examining authority (ExA) that it wishes to be an interested party⁶ and provide representations during the examination.

Following submission of an application and during Pre-examination, Natural England's Discretionary Advice Service can still be used by the applicant in order to get advice on outstanding issues and to seek resolution of those issues. Once examination begins, the Discretionary Advice Service will no longer be available. Natural England will continue to work with Applicants to resolve issues whilst advising the ExA.

EIA

Natural England has a statutory role as a consultation body under the Infrastructure Planning (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 2009. Where an applicant has requested a scoping opinion from the Planning Inspectorate in relation to a proposed EIA development, Natural England will have the opportunity to make representations to the Planning Inspectorate in relation to the information they consider should be included in the

⁶ Under section 89(2A)(b) of the Planning Act 2008

environmental statement.⁷

Part 1 of Advice Note 11, and Planning Inspectorate Advice Notes 3, 7 and 9, set out detailed advice on the implications of environmental impact assessment under the 2008 Act and emphasise the importance of early consultation with Natural England.

Habitats Regulations

The Habitats Regulations place a responsibility on competent authorities (including the relevant Secretary of State where they are a 'decision maker') to consult the appropriate nature conservation bodies when carrying out an 'appropriate assessment' of the implications of an application for European sites. For European sites in England this means Natural England must be consulted and provide advice to the relevant competent authority if an NSIP is likely to have a significant effect on them. The ExA will ask Natural England to provide its comments on the evidence that arises during the examination; the comments will be incorporated in or referred to in a Report on the Implications for European Sites (RIES) that will be submitted to the Secretary of State with the ExA's Report and Recommendation.

The Planning Inspectorate strongly encourages the earliest possible liaison between applicants and Natural England, particularly where a European and/or Ramsar site or European Protected Species, or other protected species, may be affected by a proposed development. This will allow any relevant issues to be identified and if possible resolved at the pre-application stage. The Planning Inspectorate has issued their own advice on Habitats Regulations Assessments [here](#).

From September 2012, applicants for NSIPs located in England, or both England and Wales, are able to request the agreement of Evidence Plans with Natural England for projects which may affect a European Site. The aim is to detail the evidence needed and how it will be collected and assessed, ensuring there is sufficient information to enable the relevant Secretary of State to undertake a Habitats Regulations Assessment, including any appropriate assessment, and saving time and reducing uncertainty for the developer. Natural England's experience is that this is a very valuable process, especially when started at an early stage in project design, and will engage with developers in this way via our Discretionary Advice Service. More information can be found [here](#) and applicants should approach Natural England if they are interested in an Evidence Plan.

SSSIs

In relation to applications where there may be potential impacts on SSSIs both the Secretary of State and Natural England have duties under the WCA 1981.

Under s.28(1), the Secretary of State or minister must notify Natural England before authorising the carrying out of operations likely to damage the special interest features of a SSSI. Under these circumstances 28 days must elapse before deciding whether to grant consent and the Secretary of State must take into account any advice received from Natural England, including advice on attaching conditions to the consent.

⁷ Regulation 8 of the Infrastructure Planning (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 2009 (as amended).

Natural England will give specific advice to applicants on the effects of the proposal on the special interest of any affected SSSIs when all the information is provided by applicants. It can also provide generic guidance and help on survey requirements. Applicants should seek to agree DCO requirements with Natural England, which may include measures for the protection of the SSSI, before the application is submitted to the Planning Inspectorate. Natural England can provide advice to the decision-maker on any effects on the special interest of SSSIs.

Licensing of Protected Species

For all licensing matters applicants should consult Natural England's [published guidance for the relevant species](#) and decide whether a mitigation licence is required. Applicants are also able to use Natural England's charged [Pre-submission Screening Service \(PSS\)](#). This service can be used to receive early advice and opinion on protected species proposals and, in relation to European Protected Species (EPS), on all 3 licensing tests⁸, before a Development Consent Order is granted. This service extends to European Protected Species and other protected species (such as badger, water vole), protected by wildlife legislation.

This early assessment is undertaken so that the decision-maker under the 2008 Act can have confidence that Natural England, as the statutory licensing authority, has considered the appropriate issues relating to protected species. In order to do this, Natural England will conduct a review, based on a **full draft licence application, in advance of** the formal submission of the NSIP application to the Planning Inspectorate. The steps to be followed when submitting a draft licence application to Natural England, or for early engagement on protected species licensing matters are set out in Appendix I of this note.

Following the review of the draft licence application, Natural England will either: provide a Letter of No Impediment (LONI), explaining that based on the information reviewed to date that it sees no impediment to a licence being granted in the future should the DCO be issued; or if there are licensing issues to address, these will be set out in writing for the applicant to resolve. Only when all matters are resolved, following review of a subsequent draft licence application, can a LONI be issued. Any LONI will be sent to the applicant to provide within the application for examination. Natural England will copy any correspondence to the Planning Inspectorate.

The ExA will wish to be in a position by the end of the examination to report to the Secretary of State on the likelihood of any necessary protected species licence being obtained

How to contact Natural England

Natural England will provide a dedicated case officer for every NSIP project. The casework officer will be the point of contact for the applicants throughout the project although the casework officer will call in specialist staff as needed and applicants may have direct contact with these specialist staff from time to time, including wildlife licensing staff if the project will result in the need for a 'wildlife' licence(s) should the DCO be granted.

⁸ These tests are that there is "no satisfactory alternative" (Regulation 53 (9) (a) of the Habitats Regulations), that the activity authorised will not be "detrimental to the maintenance of the population of the species concerned at a favourable conservation status in their natural range" (Regulation 53 (9) (b) and that the licence is for a purpose specified in Regulation 53(1) which includes for "imperative reasons of overriding public interest including those of a social or economic nature and beneficial consequences of primary importance for the environment."

All NSIP consultations for Natural England should be addressed to Natural England's casework hubs at consultations@naturalengland.org.uk. If you do not have a nominated case officer at Natural England for your project then for licensing purposes please use the following email contact eps.mitigation@naturalengland.org.uk. If for any reason it is not possible to consult electronically, consultations should be sent to the postal address below:

Natural England Consultation Service
Hornbeam House
Electra Way
Crewe Business Park
Crewe Cheshire CW1 6GJ

Appendix I: Notice to all developers and developers' consultant ecologists with regard to Nationally Significant Infrastructure Projects (NSIPs) involving European Protected Species (EPS) and applications to the Planning Inspectorate.

This advice has been prepared to help developers and developers' consultant ecologists understand the process for engaging with Natural England about Nationally Significant Infrastructure Projects (NSIPs) and issues relating to European Protected Species (EPS). Please note that this advice will be kept under review and may from time to time be amended. We will keep our customers updated on any changes via the [EPS Newsletter](#).

Whilst this note is primarily aimed at developments where EPS are affected (ie those species listed under the Conservation of Habitats and Species Regulations (2010) as amended), the procedure as set out below also applies to NSIPs involving protected species not covered by European legislation (eg badgers, water voles, native white-clawed crayfish, Romans snails etc.).

Please also note that any reference to the '3 licensing tests' below is not applicable to those species.

References to 'you' below should be taken to refer to 'developer and/or developer's consultant ecologist' as appropriate.

Introduction

For NSIPs which involve EPS, Natural England offers services, some of which are chargeable (see Annex A), to provide you with early advice and opinion on your protected species proposals in relation to all three licensing tests without a planning consent needing to be in place. This is undertaken so that the Planning Inspectorate (PINs), who are responsible for examining planning applications for NSIPs, can have confidence that Natural England, as the relevant licensing authority, has considered the issues relating to protected species and can then make a recommendation to the relevant Secretary of State, who will make the decision on whether to grant or refuse the Development Consent Order (DCO).

In order to do this, Natural England needs to conduct an assessment, based on a **full draft mitigation licence application**, in advance of the formal submission to PINs. The steps to be followed when submitting the appropriate information, in respect of an NSIP project which has the potential to affect EPS, are set out below and in the Flow Chart on page 7.

Key message for NSIP developers and their ecological consultants:

Natural England strongly advises that developers engage at the earliest possible opportunity with Natural England should protected species licences be required.

We recommend that a draft licence application is generally* submitted at the pre-Development Consent Order (DCO) application stage, in accordance with the process as outlined below, to assist the examination process. You should be aware that if you choose to submit your DCO application to PINs without having resolved matters relating to licensing first then there is a significant risk that these issues may prevent your application proceeding past the application or examination stage. Please note that, in cases where a licence is required and the licensing team has not been appropriately consulted, in accordance with the process outlined below, Natural England cannot be held responsible for any delays experienced with regards to the progress of your DCO application or if the application is unsuccessful as a result of outstanding licensing issues.

**Note for large linear schemes (pipelines, cables, etc) from our experience it is preferable for the route to have been agreed before submitting a draft great crested newt licence application so the draft information, particularly in relation to survey and impacts, are clear and understood. Submission should still be at the earliest opportunity to ensure that any issues which require resolution are dealt with in a timely fashion well in advance of the examination stage.*

Step 1 Is a licence required? Informal engagement with Natural England

You should consult Natural England's [published guidance for the relevant species](#) and decide whether a mitigation licence is required. If you decide that a mitigation licence is required you should start to develop the mitigation scheme which again should follow Natural England's published guidance for the relevant species. Although optional, to avoid any unforeseen problems arising further along in the process, you are encouraged to engage as early as possible with Natural England. If you do not have a nominated case officer at Natural England for your project then for licensing purposes please use the following email contact:

- eps.mitigation@naturalengland.org.uk: mark your email 'NSIP – informal engagement' -*with the name of the NSIP project, and the species concerned, in the email subject header*. This will enable Natural England to coordinate, advise and oversee NSIP licensing issues through the correct channels. Once an application is accepted it will be overseen by a Senior Adviser, working with the relevant Natural England Area Team.

In terms of informal advice about licensing issues, arrangements will be put in place for a general discussion as soon as possible and advice given regarding what further outline information is needed to facilitate this informal pre-application discussion further.

Natural England aims to provide this general or initial advice on licensing requirements over the telephone within five working days. If, however, the request seeks detailed pre-licence application advice (eg a request for a teleconference, meeting) on specific questions relating to the protected species, Natural England will require a written note from you on the proposed scheme to enable a full consideration of the request. Ideally your request will be in the relevant species Method Statement format. Providing this will help ensure that, when the request is made, it is clear to Natural England

staff what the issues are. This will enable us to consider and advise upon it more quickly. Should written advice be required, Natural England aims to provide a response within 15 to 20 working days. However, please note that this may not be possible for cases which are particularly complex, when the team is experiencing high workloads or where a site visit is considered necessary in order for advice to be given. In these situations, Natural England will contact you to discuss when it will be possible for them to provide a view on the case.

Please note that, at this stage in the process, no full assessment of the Method Statement will take place. Depending on the level of risk or opportunities presented through the mitigation, a teleconference or face to face meeting may be appropriate to discuss matters in detail.

Step 2 – Draft licence application submitted to Natural England

In order for Natural England's officer to provide pre-submission screening advice on the acceptability of the proposed licence application and mitigation, as soon as you are confident that the proposals are sufficiently advanced and that the mitigation proposals take account of the final design you should:

- Prepare a full draft licence application including :
 - An application form,
 - Method Statement and maps/figures together with a proposed Work Schedule (which should be Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Realistic and Time-limited (“SMART”), and
 - Reasoned Statement⁹.
- Email it to eps.mitigation@naturalengland.org.uk, marked 'NSIP – Draft licence application' with the NSIP name and species concerned included in the email header.

When preparing the application form documents for submission, the guidance on naming files and using folder structures as set out in the 'Key message' in section 16 of the 'How to get a licence' document should be followed (a link to this document is provided at end of this note).

When submitting draft application documents by paper or electronically, the guidance within the application form and the 'How to get a licence' document (section 16) should be followed (eg documents over 5MB in size should be submitted to Natural England on CD rather than by email). A link to Natural England's file compression guidance is provided below. Applicants are advised to reduce the size of their application pack when submitting by email as far as possible.

Please note that, in terms of the three licensing tests set out under Part 5 of the Conservation of Habitats and Species Regulations (2010) as amended (“Habitats Regulations”), it will not be possible for Natural England to consider that these tests have been fully met, in respect of any NSIP, until the Secretary of State has granted the DCO. However, a full assessment of your draft application,

⁹ This document is used by our EPS Advisers to assess whether the Purpose and No Satisfactory Alternative tests have been met. It requires you to set out your views and provide evidence to demonstrate that the proposed activity meets one of the prescribed purposes. In addition, evidence is required to demonstrate that there is no satisfactory alternative to undertaking the activity, with lesser impacts on the species, as proposed in the licence application.

including the Reasoned Statement and supporting evidence, will be undertaken in advance of the DCO being granted, in accordance with the terms of Natural England's pre-submission screening advice, so as to determine whether the appropriate level of detail has otherwise been provided (please see Flow Chart at the end of this document).

Please ensure that the necessary documentary evidence, which supports the statements made within the Reasoned Statement in respect of the Purpose and No Satisfactory Alternative Tests, has been included. For projects of this scale, even though the required consents will not yet have been obtained, Natural England still expects there to be a sufficient amount of supporting evidence available (e.g. reports, studies etc.) which demonstrate the need for the development and other alternatives which have been considered and subsequently discounted as being less satisfactory. Please note that we will be unable to issue the 'letter of no impediment' until the appropriate level of information has been provided in respect of all three tests.

Step 3 – 'Letter of no impediment' or 'further information request' issued from Natural England

Within 30 working days, Natural England will either issue:

- 'a letter of no impediment' stating that it is satisfied in principle, in so far as it can make a judgement on the information reviewed, that the proposals presented comply with the 3 licensing tests, or
- a letter outlining why we believe the proposals currently do not meet licensing requirements and what further information is required. If further information is required, this is likely to result in the need for further advisory services under the pre-submission screening agreement of the revised draft licence application. It should be noted that time taken by you to provide any amended/enhanced/new information does not count towards the 30 working day cc target.

Correspondence on the draft applications and advice given will be copied to PINs.

The '**letter of no impediment**' will detail our advice against the three statutory licensing tests under Part 5 of the Habitats Regulations. You can use this letter to support your application to the PINs; it will also be sent by Natural England to PINs. The letter will make clear that, on the basis of the species information and proposals presented to date, Natural England is satisfied in principle that the licensing tests are likely to be met when a formal application is submitted (on the basis that the information/evidence provided within the application remains the same), subject to the DCO being granted by the Secretary of State and subject to the caveats listed under clause 4 of the PSS terms and conditions (see link below). The letter will also draw attention to the fact that ecological conditions on the site may change over time. It is your (the developer's) responsibility to maintain sufficiently up to date survey information which is then made available to Natural England (along with any resulting amendments to the draft licence application) and PINs so that there is no delay in issuing the licence once the Secretary of State has granted the DCO.

Step 4 – Submission of the NSIP application to PINs for a Development Consent Order

After you have submitted the DCO application to PINs, along with the 'letter of no impediment' and associated mitigation proposals you should keep Natural England informed of progress to ensure that we remain aware of the likely timeframes so that we know when to expect the official application and can undertake a timely final mitigation licence decision. It is possible that the timetable of activities (which forms a legally enforceable part of the European Protected Species licence – see regulation 53(8)(c)(ii) of the Habitats Regulations) will require a final update if there has been any slippage in the agreed timings (see Step 5).

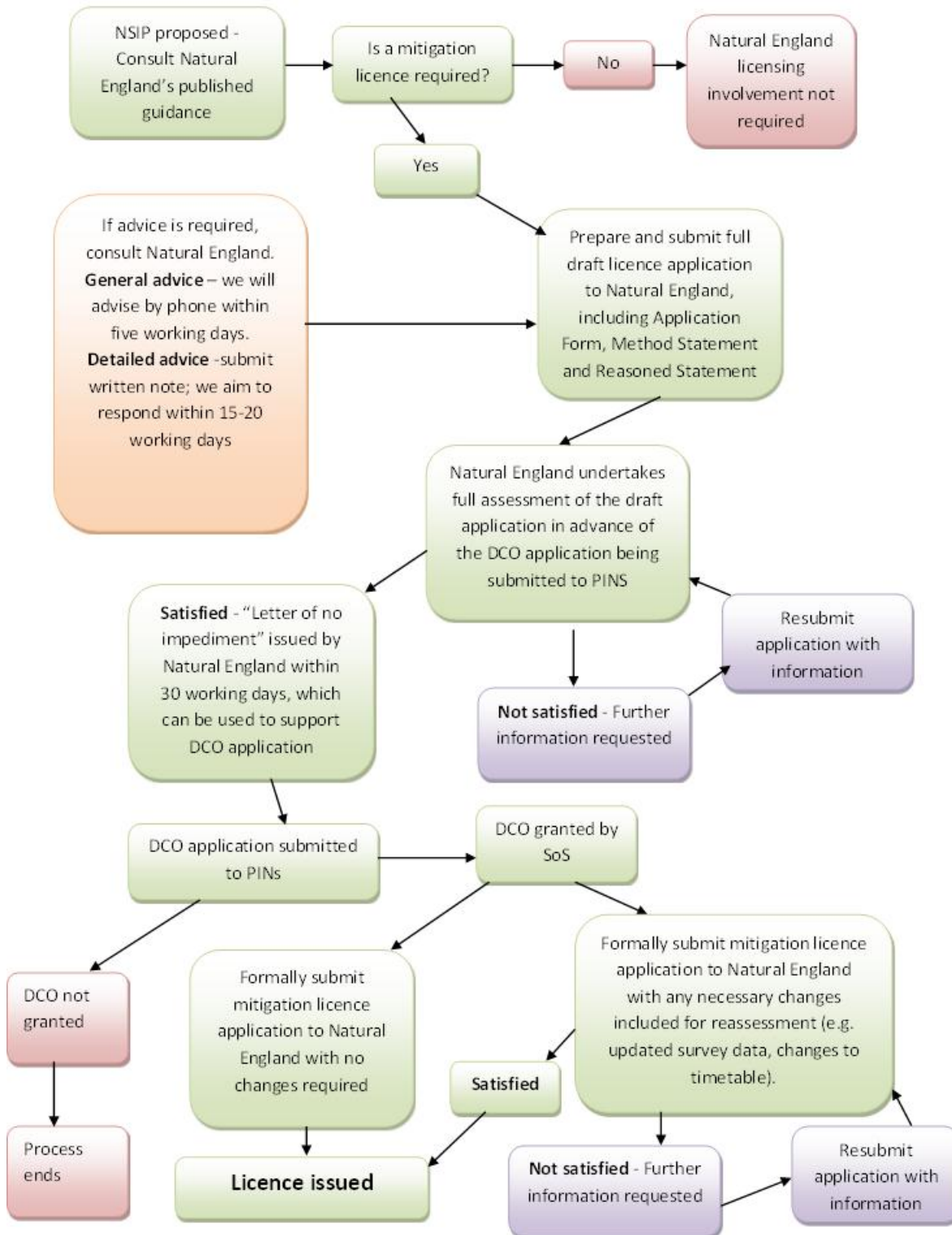
Step 5 - Natural England granting a mitigation licence following the Development Consent Order being issued (note this step is not chargeable).

Once the DCO has been granted, you should formally submit the mitigation licence application to Natural England (following the submission process outlined in Step 2 – marking it 'NSIP – formal licence application' and including the draft licensing reference number provided on the letter of no impediment, the name of the NSIP and the species concerned). Natural England will grant a licence, provided the proposals and the situation on site either:

- Remain the same and the work schedule is still SMART (Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Realistic and Time-limited), or
- Have been suitably adjusted to enable Natural England to confirm that the mitigation proposals remain adequate (eg timings in the work schedule may change), or
- Take account of any further survey requirements, and reassessment of impacts etc, resulting from a significant delay between the issue of the 'letter of no impediment' and the DCO decision.

Please be aware that if changes are made to proposals or timings which do not enable us to meet the three tests we will issue a letter outlining why the proposals are not acceptable and what further information is required. These issues would need addressed before a licence can be granted. This will also be sent to PINs to keep them informed of any advice given by Licensing to you (the developer). Natural England does not expect any significant changes to be made to proposals agreed in principle at this stage.

Nationally Significant Infrastructure (NSIP) Licensing Guidance Process for NSIP developers



Summary points:

- You are advised to engage as early as possible with Natural England.
- When EPS mitigation licences will be required, we strongly encourage you to follow Natural England's published guidance for the relevant species when preparing draft Method

Statements and Reasoned Statements either to facilitate early discussions or as part of your draft licence application package.

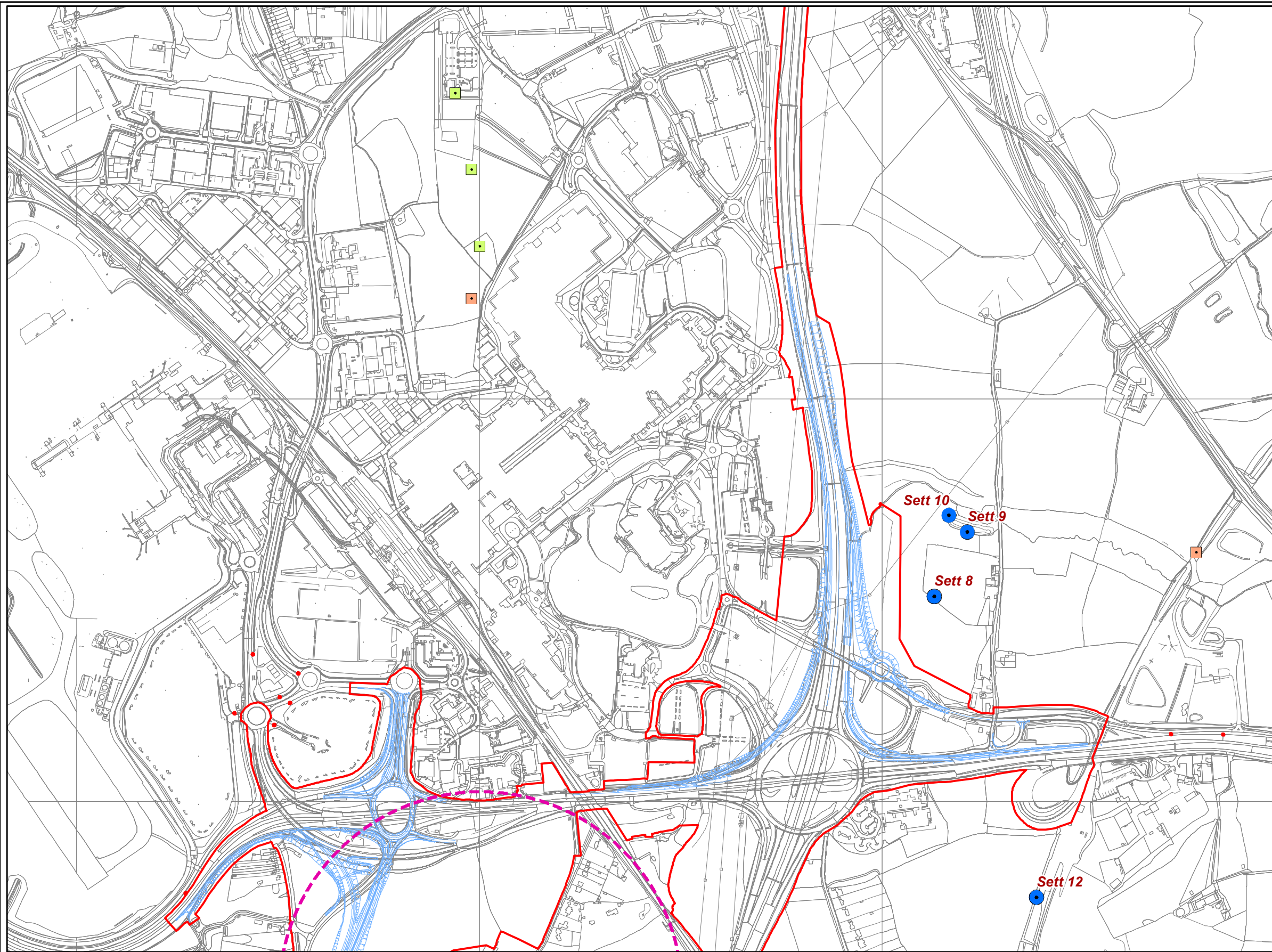
- It is helpful to have the route of large linear schemes finalised before submitting the draft application, particularly if there are likely to be significant changes to the survey and/or impact sections resulting from changes.
- If you intend to deviate from Natural England's standard mitigation guidelines, you must fully justify and explain this within the Method Statement itself.
- Please note that Natural England will provide clear advice when consulted and provide a detailed response where it is considered that a draft application does not currently meet licensing requirements. However, it is your responsibility to design the mitigation proposals based on survey information, impacts and specialist knowledge of the species concerned. It is not Natural England's role to do this.
- Printed copies of maps and figures should be provided for large schemes, e.g. great crested newt draft applications.

Useful links for preparing a draft application:

Please note that our advice is regularly updated, leading to small changes in some documents. It is therefore advisable to always work from the latest versions available on Wildlife Management and Licensing .GOV.UK web-pages. The following links will help facilitate this.

- Important reading to understand the licensing process: '[How to Get a Licence](#)'. This document also details the submission process as outlined in the above steps.
- General .GOV.UK Wildlife Management web-link: <https://www.gov.uk/environmental-management/wildlife-habitat-conservation>
- Application forms web link: <https://www.gov.uk/wildlife-licences>
- [Pre-submission screening service](#)

APPENDIX B – FIGURE 1



SAFETY, HEALTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION BOX

IT IS ASSUMED THAT ALL WORKS ON THIS DRAWING WILL BE CARRIED OUT BY A COMPETENT CONTRACTOR WORKING, WHERE APPROPRIATE, TO AN APPROPRIATE METHOD STATEMENT.

HAZARDS DETERMINED TO BE SIGNIFICANT RISKS RELATING TO THE WORKS ASSOCIATED WITH THIS DRAWING ARE IDENTIFIED BELOW. SIGNIFICANT RISKS ARE THOSE WHICH ARE NOT LIKELY TO BE OBVIOUS, ARE UNUSUAL, OR LIKELY TO BE DIFFICULT TO MANAGE.

CONSTRUCTION

FOR MAINTENANCE / OPERATION / DECOMMISSIONING AND DEMOLITION RISKS SEE PROJECT HEALTH AND SAFETY FILE.

THIS DRAWING IS TO BE USED ONLY FOR THE PURPOSE OF ISSUE THAT IT WAS ISSUED FOR AND IS SUBJECT TO AMENDMENT.

- Legend**
- Proposed Scheme
 - Red Line Boundary
 - Building With Confirmed Roost
 - Tree With Confirmed Roost
 - Other confirmed roosts ref: Wardell Armstrong 2018b*
 - Great Crested Newt Survey**
 - Surveyed: GCN Found
 - Badger Sett Locations**
 - AECOM Survey - Main Sett
 - AECOM Survey - Other Sett
 - Desk Study Record - Main Sett
 - Desk Study Record - Other Sett
 - Ponds with GCN Present 100m Buffer
 - Ponds with GCN Present 500m Buffer

**(bat surveys in support of a planning application for: Motorway Service Area (MSA) and New Junction between Junctions 5 & 6 of the M42, Solihull. Bat Roost Survey Report – 2018 Update, Wardell Armstrong 2018.)*

FIRST ISSUE	GB	JT	13/09/18	P01
Revision Details	By	Check	Check	Suffix

Purpose of Issue

FOR INFORMATION

Client
Highways England
Major Projects
The Cube
199 Wharfside Street
Birmingham
B1 1RN



Project Title

M42 JUNCTION 6 IMPROVEMENT WORKS

Drawing Title

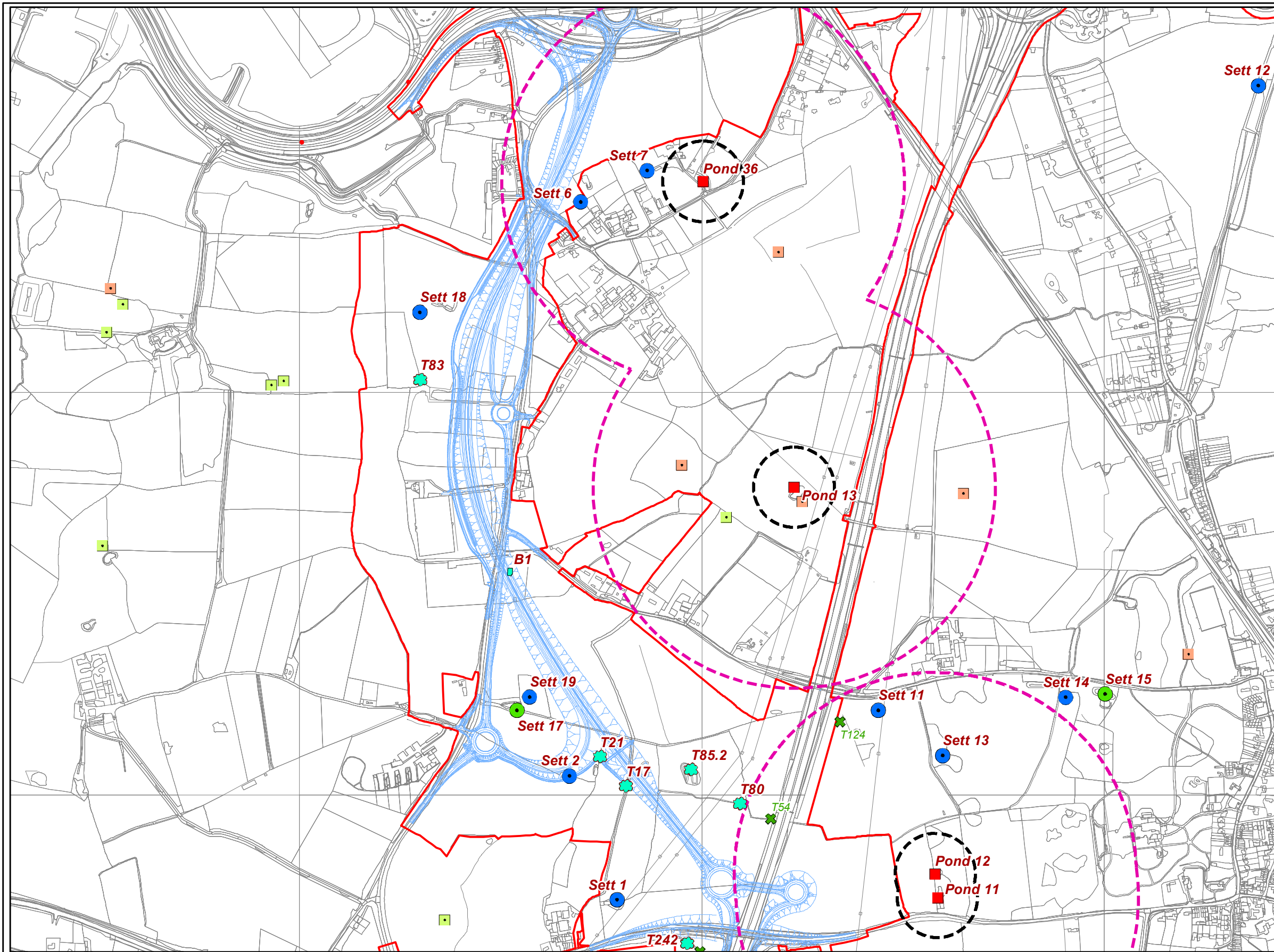
ECOLOGY CONSTRAINTS (BATS, GCN & BADGER)

Designed JT	Drawn GB	Checked JT	Approved MW	Date 13/09/18
Internal Project No 60543032		Suitability S2		
Scale @ A3 1:10,000		Zone M42		
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN PREPARED PURSUANT TO AND SUBJECT TO THE TERMS OF AECOM'S APPOINTMENT BY ITS CLIENT. AECOM ACCEPTS NO LIABILITY FOR ANY USE OF THIS DOCUMENT OTHER THAN BY ITS ORIGINAL CLIENT OR FOLLOWING AECOM'S EXPRESS AGREEMENT TO SUCH USE, AND ONLY FOR THE PURPOSES FOR WHICH IT WAS PREPARED AND PROVIDED.				

Project Office
Royal Court
Basil Close, Chesterfield
Derbyshire S41 7SL
Tel(01246) 209221
Fax(01246) 209229
www.aecom.com

AECOM
AECOM Infrastructure & Environment UK Limited
Registered in England Registered number: 880328
Registered office: Midpoint, Alencon Link,
Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 7PP

Drawing Number Highways England Pin	Originator	Volume	Rev
HE551485 -ACM	-VES	-VES	P01
-ZZ_GEN_ZZ_ZZ	-DR-EG-0036		
Location	Type	Role	Number



SAFETY, HEALTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION BOX

IT IS ASSUMED THAT ALL WORKS ON THIS DRAWING WILL BE CARRIED OUT BY A COMPETENT CONTRACTOR WORKING, WHERE APPROPRIATE, TO AN APPROPRIATE METHOD STATEMENT.

HAZARDS DETERMINED TO BE SIGNIFICANT RISKS RELATING TO THE WORKS ASSOCIATED WITH THIS DRAWING ARE IDENTIFIED BELOW. SIGNIFICANT RISKS ARE THOSE WHICH ARE NOT LIKELY TO BE OBVIOUS, ARE UNUSUAL, OR LIKELY TO BE DIFFICULT TO MANAGE.

CONSTRUCTION

FOR MAINTENANCE / OPERATION / DECOMMISSIONING AND DEMOLITION RISKS SEE PROJECT HEALTH AND SAFETY FILE.

THIS DRAWING IS TO BE USED ONLY FOR THE PURPOSE OF ISSUE THAT IT WAS ISSUED FOR AND IS SUBJECT TO AMENDMENT.

- Legend**
- Proposed Scheme
 - Red Line Boundary
 - Building With Confirmed Roost
 - Tree With Confirmed Roost
 - Other confirmed roosts ref: Wardell Armstrong 2018b*
- Great Crested Newt Survey**
- Surveyed: GCN Found
- Badger Sett Locations**
- AECOM Survey - Main Sett
 - AECOM Survey - Other Sett
 - Desk Study Record - Main Sett
 - Desk Study Record - Other Sett
 - Ponds with GCN Present 100m Buffer
 - Ponds with GCN Present 500m Buffer

**(bat surveys in support of a planning application for: Motorway Service Area (MSA) and New Junction between Junctions 5 & 6 of the M42, Solihull. Bat Roost Survey Report – 2018 Update, Wardell Armstrong 2018.)*

FIRST ISSUE	GB	JT	13/09/18	P01
Revision Details	By	Check	Date	Suffix

FOR INFORMATION

Purpose of Issue

Client
Highways England
Major Projects
The Cube
199 Wharfedale Street
Birmingham
B1 1RN

Working on behalf of
highways england

Project Title

M42 JUNCTION 6 IMPROVEMENT WORKS

Drawing Title

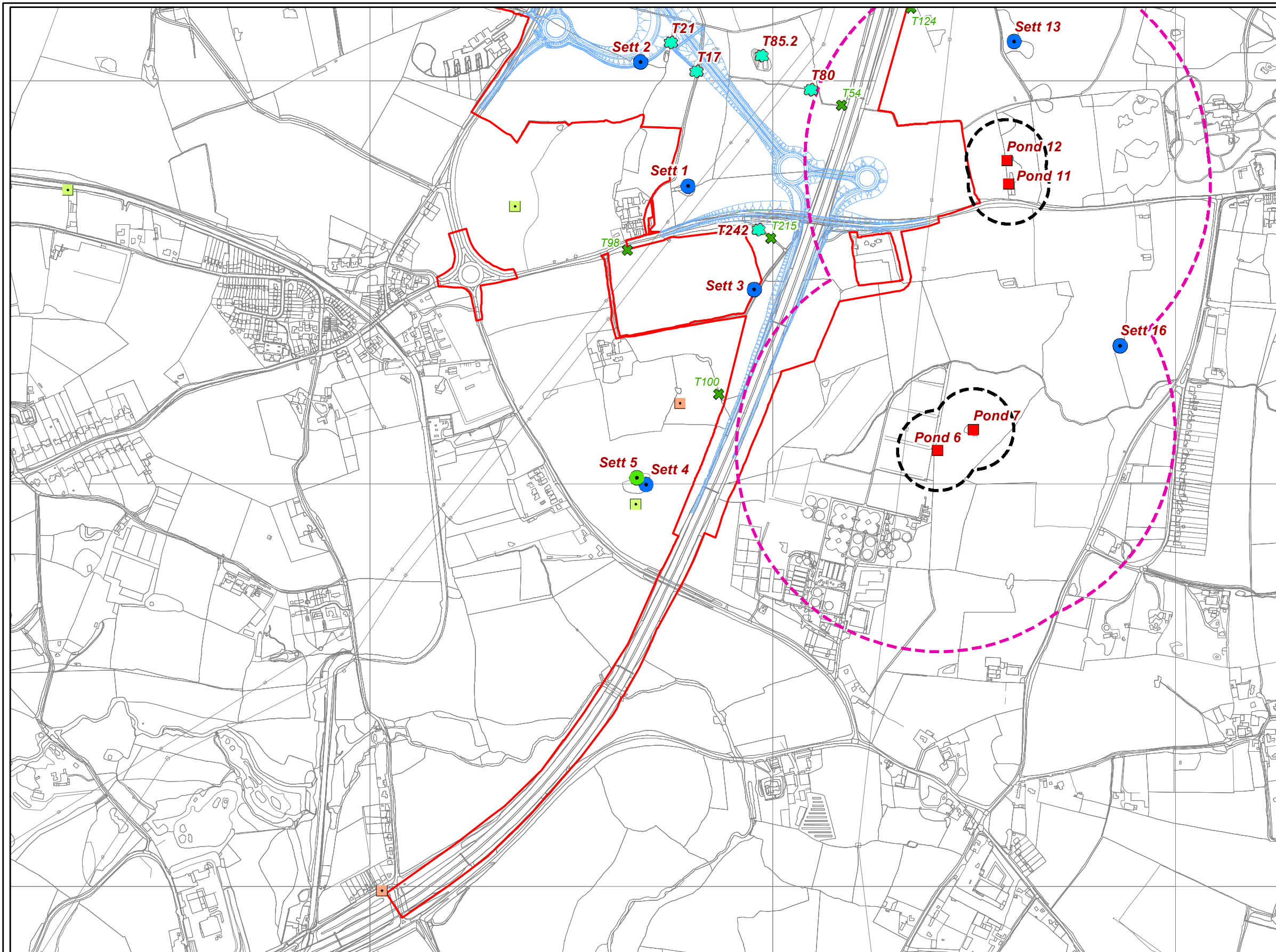
ECOLOGY CONSTRAINTS (BATS, GCN & BADGER)

Designed JT	Drawn GB	Checked JT	Approved MW	Date 13/09/18
Internal Project No 60543032	Suitability S2	Scale @ A3 1:10,000	Zone M42	
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN PREPARED PURSUANT TO AND SUBJECT TO THE TERMS OF AECOM'S APPOINTMENT BY ITS CLIENT. AECOM ACCEPTS NO LIABILITY FOR ANY USE OF THIS DOCUMENT OTHER THAN BY ITS ORIGINAL CLIENT OR FOLLOWING AECOM'S EXPRESS AGREEMENT TO SUCH USE, AND ONLY FOR THE PURPOSES FOR WHICH IT WAS PREPARED AND PROVIDED.				

Project Office
Royal Court
Basil Close, Chesterfield
Derbyshire S41 7SL
Tel(01246) 209221
Fax(01246) 209229
www.aecom.com

AECOM
AECOM Infrastructure & Environment UK Limited
Registered in England Registered number: 880328
Registered office: Midpoint, Alencon Link,
Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 7PP

Drawing Number Highways England Pin	Originator	Volume	Rev
HE551485 -ACM	-VES	-VES	P01
-ZZ_GEN_ZZ_ZZ	-DR-EG-0037		
Location	Type Role Number		



SAFETY, HEALTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION BOX

IT IS ASSUMED THAT ALL WORKS ON THIS DRAWING WILL BE CARRIED OUT BY A COMPETENT CONTRACTOR WORKING, WHERE APPROPRIATE, TO AN APPROPRIATE METHOD STATEMENT.

HAZARDS DETERMINED TO BE SIGNIFICANT RISKS RELATING TO THE WORKS ASSOCIATED WITH THIS DRAWING ARE IDENTIFIED BELOW. SIGNIFICANT RISKS ARE THOSE WHICH ARE NOT LIKELY TO BE OBVIOUS, ARE UNUSUAL, OR LIKELY TO BE DIFFICULT TO MANAGE.

CONSTRUCTION

FOR MAINTENANCE / OPERATION / DECOMMISSIONING AND DEMOLITION RISKS SEE PROJECT HEALTH AND SAFETY FILE.

THIS DRAWING IS TO BE USED ONLY FOR THE PURPOSE OF ISSUE THAT IT WAS ISSUED FOR AND IS SUBJECT TO AMENDMENT.

- Legend**
- Proposed Scheme
 - Red Line Boundary
 - Building With Confirmed Roost
 - Tree With Confirmed Roost
 - Other confirmed roosts ref: Wardell Armstrong 2018b*
- Great Crested Newt Survey**
- Surveyed: GCN Found
- Badger Sett Locations**
- AECOM Survey - Main Sett
 - AECOM Survey - Other Sett
 - Desk Study Record - Main Sett
 - Desk Study Record - Other Sett
 - Ponds with GCN Present 100m Buffer
 - Ponds with GCN Present 500m Buffer

**(bat surveys in support of a planning application for: Motorway Service Area (MSA) and New Junction between Junctions 5 & 6 of the M42, Solihull. Bat Roost Survey Report – 2018 Update, Wardell Armstrong 2018.)*

FIRST ISSUE	GB	JT	13/09/18	P01
Revision Details	By	Check	Check	Suffix

FOR INFORMATION

Purpose of Issue

Client
Highways England
Major Projects
The Cube
199 Wharfedale Street
Birmingham
B1 1RN

Working on behalf of
highways england

Project Title

M42 JUNCTION 6 IMPROVEMENT WORKS

Drawing Title

ECOLOGY CONSTRAINTS (BATS, GCN & BADGER)

Designed JT	Drawn GB	Checked JT	Approved MW	Date 13/09/18
Internal Project No 60543032		Suitability S2		
Scale @ A3 1:10,000		Zone M42		
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN PREPARED PURSUANT TO AND SUBJECT TO THE TERMS OF AECOM'S APPOINTMENT BY ITS CLIENT. AECOM ACCEPTS NO LIABILITY FOR ANY USE OF THIS DOCUMENT OTHER THAN BY ITS ORIGINAL CLIENT OR FOLLOWING AECOM'S EXPRESS AGREEMENT TO SUCH USE, AND ONLY FOR THE PURPOSES FOR WHICH IT WAS PREPARED AND PROVIDED.				

Project Office
Royal Court
Basil Close, Chesterfield
Derbyshire S41 7SL
Tel(01246) 209221
Fax(01246) 209229
www.aecom.com

AECOM
AECOM Infrastructure & Environment UK Limited
Registered in England Registered number: 880328
Registered office: Midpoint, Alencon Link,
Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 7PP

Drawing Number Highways England Pin	Originator	Volume	Rev
HE551485 -ACM	-VES	-VES	P01
-ZZ_GEN_ZZ_ZZ	-DR-EG-0038		
Location	Type	Role	Number

Appendix C - Bickenhill Meadows SSSI *Preliminary Hydrological Investigation Technical Note V3.*

M42 JUNCTION 6 IMPROVEMENT SCHEME

***BICKENHILL MEADOWS SITE OF SPECIAL SCIENTIFIC
INTEREST – PRELIMINARY HYDROLOGICAL INVESTIGATION
TECHNICAL NOTE (V3)***

Prepared for: HIGHWAYS ENGLAND

Prepared by: AECOM

Project number: 60543032

Quality information

Prepared by

Tim Jones BSc (Hon) PhD
Water Scientist

Checked by

Owen Tucker BSc (Hon) MSc CEnv
MCIWEM Principal Environmental
Scientist
Philip Smart BSc MSc C Geol FGS
Technical Director, Hydrogeology

Approved by

Jamie Gleave MLPM (Hons) CEnv
CSci MIEMA MIEEnvSc
Associate Director
Graeme Cowling CEnv
Principal Environmental Consultant

Revision History

Revision	Revision date	Details	Authorized	Name	Position
Version 0	13.02.2018	Original Version	Jamie Gleave		Associate Director
Version 1	09.08.2018	Update	Jamie Gleave		Associate Director
Version 2	15.08.2018	Update	Jamie Gleave		Associate Director
Version 3	20.08.2018	Update	Jamie Gleave		Associate Director
	21.08.2018	Update	Graeme Cowling		Principal Consultant

Distribution List

# Hard Copies	PDF Required	Association / Company Name

Prepared by AECOM, AECOM House, 179 Moss Lane, Altrincham, WA15 8FH, UK (www.aecom.com)

Project Number: **60543032**

AECOM Limited (hereafter referred to as "AECOM") has prepared this Report for the sole use of Highways England, in accordance with the Agreement under which our services were performed. No other warranty, expressed or implied, is made as to the professional advice included in this Report or any other services provided by AECOM. This Report is confidential and may not be disclosed by the Client or relied upon by any other party without the prior and express written agreement of AECOM.

The information contained in this Report is based upon information provided by others and upon the assumption that all relevant information has been provided by those parties from whom it has been requested and that such information is accurate. Information obtained by AECOM has not been independently verified by AECOM, unless otherwise stated in the Report.

The methodology adopted and the sources of information used by AECOM in providing its services are outlined in this Report. The work described in this Report is based on the conditions encountered and the information available during the said period of time. The scope of this Report and the services are accordingly factually limited by these circumstances.

AECOM disclaim any undertaking or obligation to advise any person of any change in any matter affecting the Report, which may come or be brought to AECOM's attention after the date of the Report.

Certain statements made in the Report that are not historical facts may constitute estimates, projections or other forward-looking statements and even though they are based on reasonable assumptions as of the date of the Report, such forward-looking statements by their nature involve risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from the results predicted.

AECOM specifically does not guarantee or warrant any estimate or projections contained in this Report. Unless otherwise stated in this Report, the assessments made assume that the sites and facilities will continue to be used for their current purpose without significant changes.

Copyright © This Report is the copyright of AECOM and its wholly owned subsidiary, AECOM Limited. Any unauthorised reproduction or usage by any person other than the addressee is strictly prohibited.

FOIA Disclaimer AECOM Limited considers that the following constitutes exempt information on grounds of confidentiality and commercially sensitive information under the terms of the Freedom of Information Act 2000, which shall not be disclosed to third parties. The enclosed information is not to be made available to the public for at least six years from the end of the project, unless specifically agreed otherwise.

Any specific enquiries about what may be commercially sensitive or queries about disclosure should be directed to ian.bamforth@aecom.com. We would be grateful to be informed of all requests by third parties for information contained in this document.

M42 Junction 6 Improvement Scheme – Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Preliminary Hydrological Investigation

Introduction

M42 Junction 6 provides connections between the national motorway network and the A45 Coventry Road, which provides strategic access to Birmingham to the west and Coventry to the east. Current congestion and journey reliability issues on the M42 and at Junction 6 are causing severe delays on parts of the strategic road network, as the junction does not have sufficient capacity to accommodate the predicted growth in traffic associated with future planned development in the area.

The M42 Junction 6 Improvement Scheme (the proposed scheme) has been developed by Highways England (HE) to provide a solution to improve junction capacity, support economic growth, improve access, and ensure the safe and reliable operation of the network.

The proposed scheme is currently being subject to a process of Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA), the design of which includes the following key components and works.

- A new junction approximately 1.8 km south of the existing Junction 6 off the M42 (referred to as M42 Junction 5A).
- A new 2.4 km long dual carriageway link road between M42 Junction 5A and Clock Interchange, with a free flow slip road to the A45 Coventry Road.
- Capacity and junction improvements at Clock Interchange.
- New free flow links between the A45 and M42 motorway at M42 Junction 6.
- The realignment and modification of the B4438 Catherine de Barnes Lane, Clock Lane and St. Peters Lane west of the M42 motorway, and of Eastway and the Middle Bickenhill Loop north east of M42 Junction 6.
- Modifications to the location and spacing of emergency refuge areas, overhead gantries and message signing along the M42 motorway.
- Modifications to the Gaelic Athletic Association (Páirc na hÉireann) sports facility.

A Ground Investigation is currently being undertaken to establish the existing ground conditions that would underlie key areas of the proposed scheme, and to obtain data for use in the EIA.

The proposed link road has been designed to be positioned below the flight path control zones of Birmingham International Airport, and to place much of the dual carriageway in cutting (up to 10m depth) in order to lower the road and thereby provide visual screening and noise attenuation benefits; however, construction of these earthworks has the potential to disrupt groundwater flows in the area.

The EIA process has so far identified that the proposed link road may also have an adverse impact on Bickenhill Meadows Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI), which consists of two separate units located either side of the proposed link road. The SSSI includes areas of wet woodland and wet meadows that support a range of plants and other species. The cutting and associated works are also in close proximity (within 300 m) of streams that flow through each SSSI unit, which may be impacted during the construction and operation phases.

Accordingly, the processes for maintaining the hydrology of the two SSSI units needs to be established in order to identify and understand the potential impacts of the proposed scheme on the SSSI, such that appropriate mitigation measures for any likely significant effects can be identified and, where possible, incorporated into its design. In particular, the importance of rainfall, groundwater, nearby streams and localised flooding needs to be investigated.

This Technical Note reports the outcomes of a preliminary investigation of the hydrology of the two SSSI units. It considers the soil and geological ground conditions from available data sources, the topography around the SSSI by reviewing LiDAR and contour data, and reports on the observations made during site visits (including one attended by Natural England). Based on preliminary findings, the note also considers the potential effects of the cutting and loss of surface water catchment, and sets out the scope of additional ground and field investigations that should be undertaken, as requested by Natural England. The preliminary findings of the investigation are reported, and potential mitigation and compensation measures are also discussed, and will where appropriate, be revised and updated as monitoring to understand the likely effects on the SSSI units are continued throughout 2018-2019.

Proposed Link Road

The current general arrangement for the proposed link road is shown in Figure 1, set within its local context.

From M42 Junction 5A, the link road would initially travel north westwards through open fields to the north of Hampton Lane Farm, where it would cross a number of public rights of way. A roundabout would be constructed (Barber’s Coppice Roundabout) south of the SSSI which would provide a tie-in from the existing Catherine De Barnes Lane (both in a north and southbound direction) to the link road.

As the proposed link road continues north, it would cross Catherine De Barnes Lane approximately 70 m south of the T-junction of Shadowbrook Lane. Approximately 500m north of the crossing point with Catherine De Barnes Lane, a second local roundabout (Bickenhill Roundabout) would be constructed to provide a north and south tie-in with Catherine De Barnes Lane and St Peters Lane. Between these two local roundabouts, Catherine De Barnes Lane would be realigned at its furthest point approximately 20 m west of its current alignment.

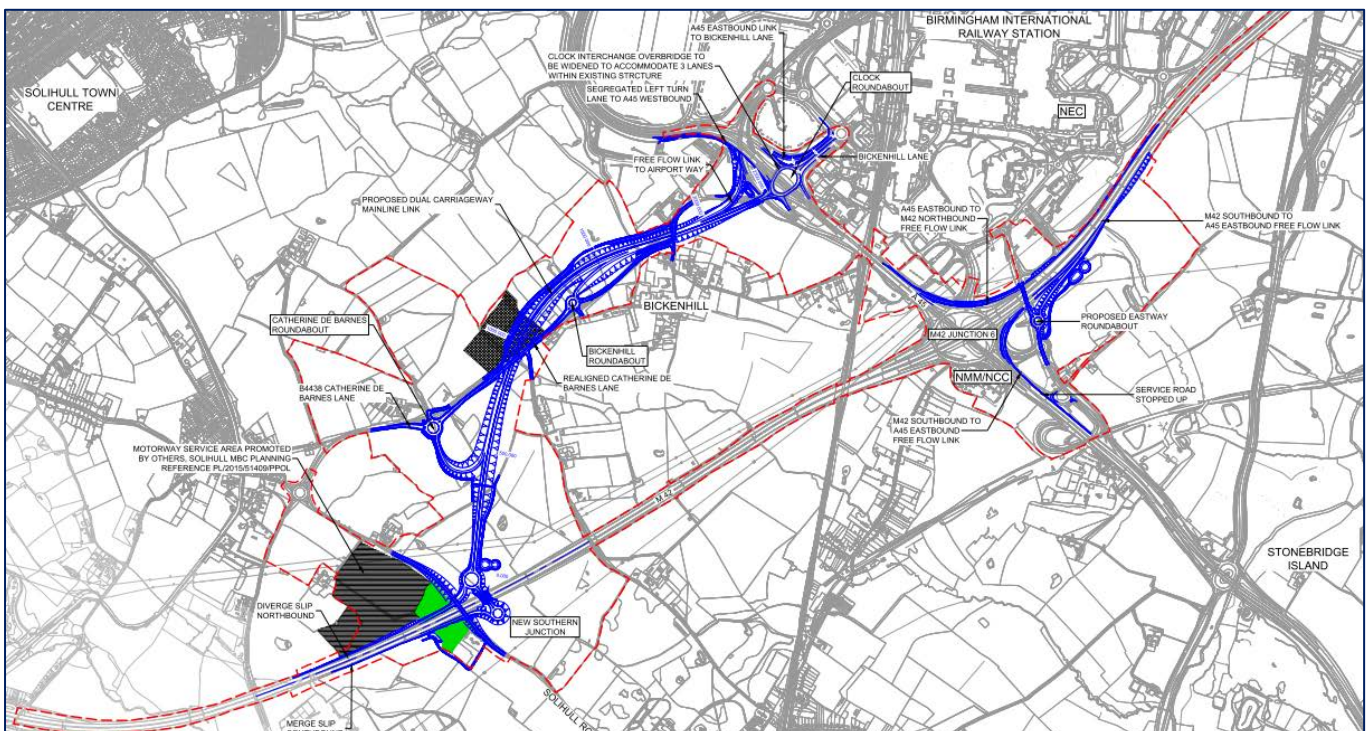


Figure 1: M42 Junction 6 Improvements – General Arrangement
 (source: extract from drawing HE551485-ACM-HGN-M42_GEN_ZZ_ZZ-DR-CH-0012 P02.3)

Figure 2 shows the current design (as of 23/01/18) for the proposed scheme in relation in the SSSI units.

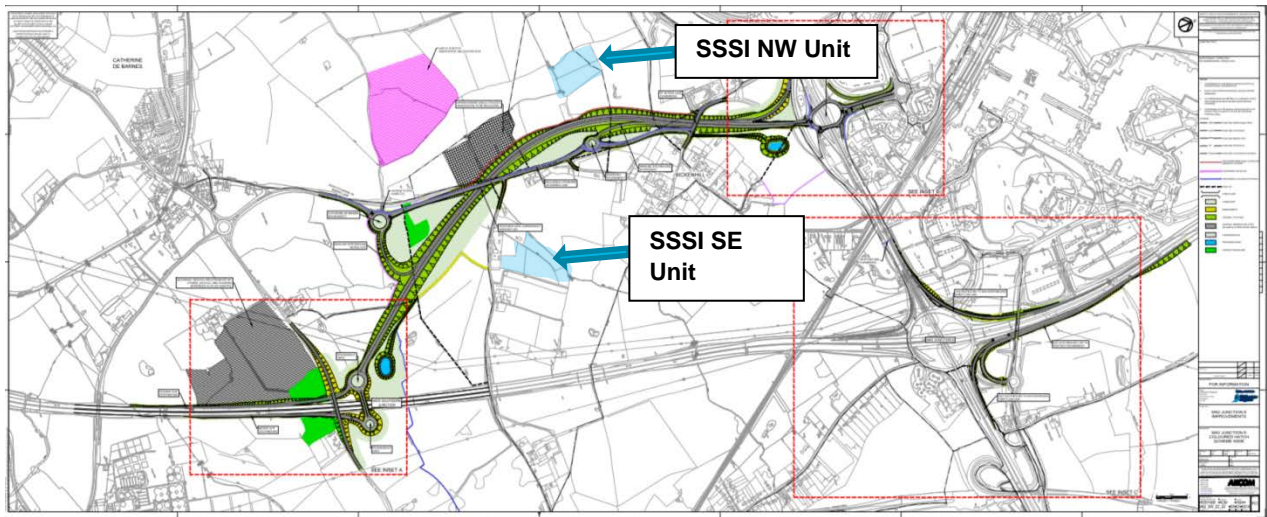


Figure 2: M42 Junction 6 design in relation to Bickenhill Meadows SSSI units and GAA relocation
Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Designation

Bickenhill Meadows SSSI is split between two units, located either side of Catherine de Barnes Lane (centred on approximate national grid references SP182822 and SP 188816) as shown in Figure 2 and on Ordnance Survey mapping in Figure 3. The total area designated covers 7.2 hectares and was notified in 1991.

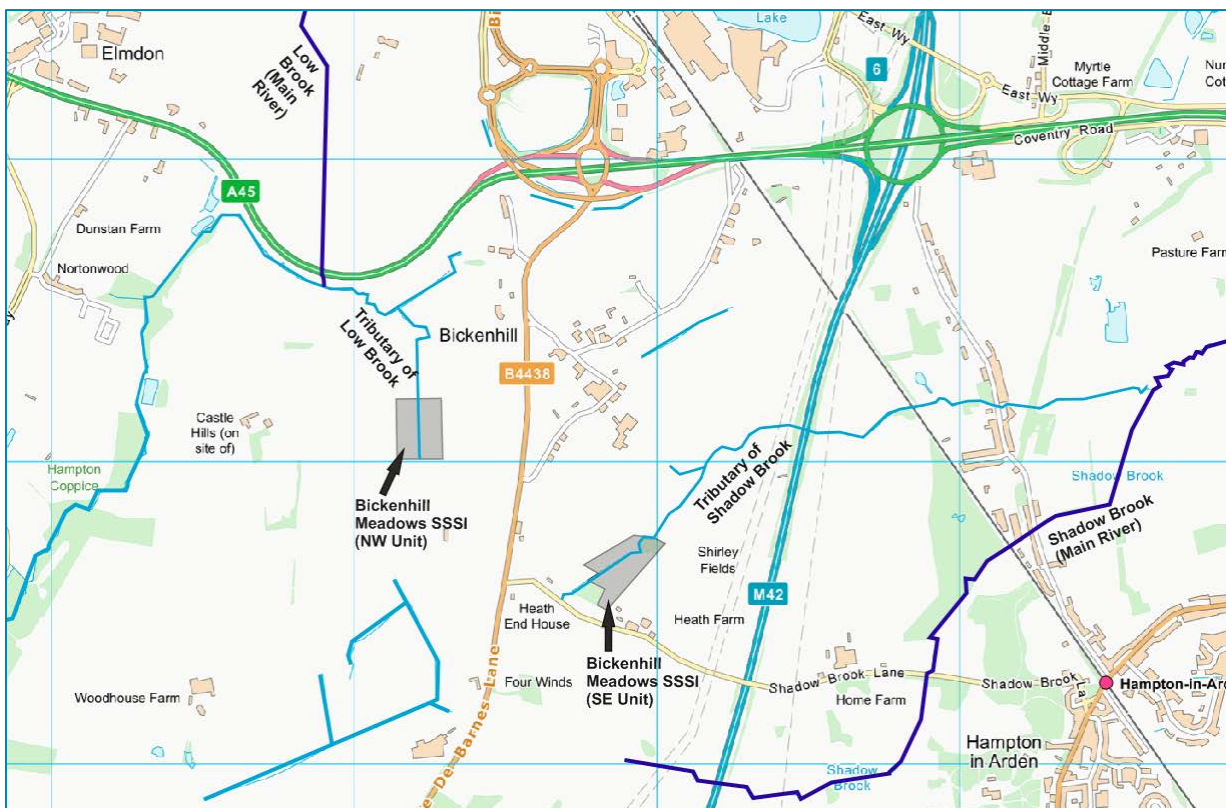


Figure 3. Location of the Bickenhill Meadows SSSI units, to west of the M42 Junction 6. (source: Ordnance Survey © Crown copyright and database rights 2018).

The Natural England citation¹ for the SSSI is as follows.

Bickenhill Meadows consists of two groups of fields comprising species-rich grassland situated to the south and west of the village of Bickenhill on predominantly neutral soils overlying Keuper Marl.

¹ <https://designatedsites.naturalengland.org.uk/SiteDetail.aspx?SiteCode=S1002847>

*The meadows comprise one of the richest grassland floras in the county with good examples of both meadow foxtail (*Alopecurus pratensis*), great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*), flood meadow and common knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*), crested dog's-tail (*Cynosurus cristatus*) meadow and pasture. Both grassland types have declined very severely nationally in the 20th century due to agricultural improvement. The West Midlands Region contains a major part of the national resource of the common knapweed – crested dog's-tail grassland type which is typically associated with level topography, loam or clay soils, moderately free drainage and the retention of traditional farming methods with small fields. There is a complex pattern of vegetation resulting from local variations in topography and drainage, such as the ridge and furrow pattern, evident in some of the fields. This has led to the development of mosaics where the main vegetation types intermingle, as well as to areas where each type can be recognised.*

*Further interest is provided by wetter areas characterised by rushes *Juncus* spp., sedges *Carex* spp. and tall herbs such as meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*) and great burnet. Both groups of meadows have streams and there is a good range of tree and shrub species in the hedgerows around the fields.*

Both units of the SSSI have a status of 'Unfavourable – Recovering'. However, the Natural England condition notes indicate that the southeastern SSSI shows a good cover of desirable species and may move to favourable in the near future.

Natural England's Management Principles for the site includes the following information with regard to drainage, *"For both the damper pastures and meadows, regular and careful maintenance of surface drainage including ditches and drains can be essential to prevent adverse changes in the plant composition of the sward. Deepening of surface drainage should be avoided."*

From the available information on the SSSI it is clear that the plant species in the wet meadows and woodland areas within the SSSI units require wet ground conditions, although subtle changes in topography and local features (such as the local ditches and spoil heaps from past clearing of them) exert an influence on the botanical communities and distinctive zones of MG4 (wetter) and MG5 (drier) plant communities according to the National Vegetation Classification (NVC). It is also not evident from Natural England's SSSI designation and management principles, or through consultation with Natural England and the Warwickshire Wildlife Trust (WWT), whether the maintenance of wet conditions in the SSSI is primarily dependent on surface water or groundwater inflow from the surrounding areas.

Shadowbrook Meadows Local Nature Reserve

The southeastern SSSI unit is wholly encompassed by the larger Shadowbrook Meadows Local Nature Reserve (LNR), which is owned and managed by WWT. The WWT website² describes the site as follows:

"The site contains old meadows and pasture with a stream and wet woodland. The small stream runs through the reserve and sumptuous hedgerows divide the site into two dry meadows, on the eastern side, with two wet meadows to the west. Unfertilised, unsprayed and unploughed, the meadows' diversity has been maintained over centuries by the unaltered, traditional haycutting and grazing regime".

Bickenhill Meadows SSSI / Shadowbrook Meadows LNR Site Visit Report

The Bickenhill Meadows SSSI was initially visited on 18/01/18 in dry conditions but following a week of occasional heavy rain showers and some light snow and sleet showers. It was subsequently visited in spring with representatives of Natural England on 26/04/18 in a period of prevailing dry conditions, and again on 02/05/18 following 12 hours of heavy rain showers, which had resulted in some waterlogging of the surface. The northwestern SSSI unit was visited during wintry showers on the 28/02/18 and with Natural England on 26/04/18 in fine weather. Numerous further visits have been taken to both units throughout the summer of 2018.

² Warwickshire Wildlife Trust – Shadowbrook Meadows website, <http://www.warwickshirewildlifetrust.org.uk/reserves/shadowbrook-meadows>, accessed 15/8/18.

Southeast (SE) SSSI Unit / Shadowbrook Meadows LNR

The southeastern unit consists of four fields and wet woodland at the far north of the site, and (along with the LNR) covers 4.4 hectares. The stream that flows through the centre of the site (from southwest to northeast) is a tributary of Shadow Brook. It meets Shadow Brook to the east of the M42 approximately 2 km downstream at NGR SP 20625 82231. The dry meadows are to the east of the site, and wet meadows are to the west. General views of the wet meadows are shown in Photos 1 to 6 under different conditions.



Photo 1 (top left) and Photo 2 (top right) Wet meadow fields at Bickenhill Meadows SSSI SE Unit in cold/wet conditions; Photo 3 (middle left) Wet meadow fields at Bickenhill Meadows SSSI SE Unit in warm/dry conditions; Photo 4 (middle right) and Photo 5 (bottom left) Bickenhill Meadows SSSI SE Unit in warm/dry conditions; Photo 6 (bottom right) Bickenhill Meadows SSSI unit southern field after a prolonged period of hot weather.

The topography of the site is generally level, with a gentle rise in elevation away from the tributary of Shadow Brook, which flows through the approximate centre of the site. The wet meadow to the north of the brook is relatively flat and may have been the route of the former watercourse prior to digging of the new brook course to the south and the ephemeral ditch to the north (which collects runoff from the steeper hillside slopes but is essentially a soakaway).

Along the edge of the brook there is a slight rise in the elevation that may be a relic of digging out or maintaining the brook. From here north the land gently falls before rising towards the ditch along the northern boundary of the SSSI. Within this general topographic form are isolated depressions that form part of a complex ridge and furrow pattern extending across the site, and which are a relic of historic ploughing practices. This is very subtle with only small changes in elevation of the order of tens of centimeters, but sufficient enough to result in significant changes in plant communities as depicted by the varying position of MG4 and MG5 plant communities. Ground elevation decreases slightly to the north as the stream flows downslope, but the overall gradient across the site is minor.

To the south of the brook, the ground rises earlier and the plant communities appear to be less diverse and well developed. A gas main runs east-west across this field, the route indicated by a line of flushes suggesting that soil hydrology has been locally affected. Due to the intervening presence of the brook, the elevation of this field, and the angle of the slope, it is unlikely to be affected by the proposed scheme.

There is a small pond towards the centre of southern field of the LNR site (but not within the SSSI) with emergent reed vegetation and which is surrounded by a stock proof fence (see Photo 2). The origins of the pond are not known, but when observed in very wet conditions a 'trickle' of water flowed from the pond and overland to the north to ultimately meet the tributary of Shadow Brook, possibly as a result of any under-soil drainage being blocked. The possibility that the pond could be a spring cannot be ruled out.

The source of the tributary of Shadow Brook is mapped by Ordnance Survey as being immediately north of Shadowbrook Lane to the south of the SE SSSI unit. Here lateral ephemeral drainage ditches from the road coalesce and flow north beneath the caravan park site and emerge at the southern border of the SSSI. There is a pond on the opposite (south) side of Shadowbrook Lane to the mapped source of the stream, which collects water from adjacent road and agricultural drainage. The topography of the adjacent fields gently slopes towards this point, creating a natural focal point for drainage to collect. The connectivity of this pond to the stream on the opposite side of the road was not clear, but mapping suggests a culvert beneath the road which was not visible amongst the thick bramble vegetation. Significant amounts of standing water were observed in the ditches adjacent to the culvert after heavy rainfall, indicative of impeded flow through the culvert, presumably due to siltation and blockage by large woody debris and decomposing organic matter. However, it appears that the brook is likely to be rain fed, receiving drainage also from surrounding agricultural land and Shadowbrook Lane. There may also be drainage from the small caravan park site under which the brook flows prior to emerging in the SSSI.

Given its small size, intermittent and generally low flows, the brook is expected to suffer from water quality issues typical of an arable catchment, plus drainage from local roads and potentially other sources, such as runoff from the caravan site.

There is also an ephemeral drainage ditch bordering the northwest of the site (Photo 7), which varies between 1 and 1.5 m wide. This was largely dry on the majority of site visits, with some ponded water in places of 1-2 cm depth adjacent to the upper wet meadow. However, when observed after heavy rain there was obvious flow in the ditch, which presumably was sourced from runoff from the adjacent arable field which slopes significantly down to the SSSI. As the ditch enters the alder woodland at the northern extent of the SSSI there was a small amount of flow even during the drier site visits, which drains into the tributary of Shadow Brook (approximate NGR SP 18950 81743), see Photo 8.



Photo 7 (left) Ponded water in agricultural drainage ditch at NW border of SE SSSI Unit; Photo 8 (right) confluence of the tributary of Shadow Brook and the drainage ditch within the alder woodland; Photo 9. Furrows and depressions saturated with water following rainfall in meadow field of SE SSSI Unit.

Within the SE SSSI Unit the tributary of Shadow Brook is very straight and could have initially been an agricultural drainage ditch. It is around 0.5 m wide and water depth was in the region of 3-5 cm deep when observed on the site visits on the 02/05/18 (Photos 10 and 11). The bed was generally covered by accumulations of fine sediment (and leaf litter in the autumn), although some small accumulations of gravel of 4-5 mm in diameter were also evident.

Towards the centre of the SE SSSI Unit the brook is culverted under a grassed land bridge through a plastic pipe of around 400 mm diameter (Photo 12). Upstream the culvert is partially buried, and there is potential for impoundment of flow during extreme rainfall events, which may result in occasional flooding of the immediate grasslands, although there was no evidence of this. Several blockages across the stream from woody debris and accumulations of leaves were observed during the site visits, which again could cause localised impoundment of flows and encourage local out of bank events. Connectivity to the surrounding floodplain is good in some sections, particularly on the left bank in the northern field. However, the stream is not considered significant enough in size to cause widespread out of bank events across the grasslands and woodland, and Natural England and WWT are not aware of any widespread flooding at the site resulting from out of bank stream flows. However, the brook may locally support groundwater levels in the close vicinity of the channel, and it is possible that soil on either side has been compacted in places due to the past placing of dredgings, and this may influence soil hydrology on the upslope side by helping to maintain wetter ground conditions.

In the northeastern (wet) field of the SE SSSI unit, the ridge and furrow topography gives rise to diverse ecological communities. The furrows tend to be saturated and support grassland species designated as MG4 under the National Vegetation Classification (NVC). MG4 represents a nationally rare flood meadow community. Characteristic species include greater burnet (*Sanguisobra officinalis*) and meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*). The ridges are drier and support MG5 neutral grassland species with assemblages of English crested dog's tail (*Cynosurus cristatus*) and common knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*), amongst others. Subtle changes in colour across the wet meadow, shown in Photo 1, indicate the changes in vegetation across the site.

When the SE SSSI unit was observed following heavy rainfall on 02/05/18 the entire site was extremely wet, with most grassland areas appearing to be fully saturated (Photo 9). All furrows and depressions that were observed during the visit contained surface water, including in the generally drier meadow fields. This observational evidence indicates that the moisture source for the wet grasslands is most probably rainwater, which is slow to drain away due to the poor permeability of the subsurface layers.



Photo 10 (left) and Photo 11 (centre): Tributary of Shadow Brook within the wet woodland. Photo 12: (right) Culvert exit downstream of the grassed land bridge.

Northwest (NW) SSSI Unit

The NW SSSI unit is a small, roughly square grassland area of 2.7 ha, bordered on all sides by a scrub and woodland margin (Photo 13). A tributary of Low Brook flows from south to north and divides the field approximately in half, with the topography rising away from the tributary gently on both sides initially, becoming steeper further field. The brook itself is surrounded by intermittent hedgerow vegetation. Immediately south of the site is a historic landfill site of raised elevation, from which groundwater (of unknown quality) may flow out towards the SSSI, as indicated by iron staining seeping from the embankment.

The watercourse appears to emanate from numerous ephemeral drainage ditches which flow around the elevated historic landfill area and coalesce at the south of the site to then flow north through the SSSI. A further drainage ditch flows north along the western boundary of the site. As the watercourse flows north through the SSSI unit it widens out into a very silted marshland area, with little discernable surface water flow (Photo 14), before reverting to a well-defined stream of up to 2.5m width (Photo 15) which has generally good floodplain connectivity within the SSSI, and emergent macrophytic vegetation in places. The watercourse is not considered of sufficient size to cause significant flooding of the adjacent fields.



Photo 13 (left), Photo 14 (centre) and Photo 15 (right). Bickenhill Meadows SSSI NW Unit.

Vegetation patterns on the eastern side of the SSSI indicate that there may be a spring just upslope of the tributary of Low Brook towards the centre of the site. This is indicated by a slightly raised area with a distinct and ‘spongy’ vegetation assemblage, which is different in character from the surrounding communities of MG4 grasslands (including great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*) and meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*) and MG5 grasslands (including knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*)) that are found across the eastern field of the site. The wetter ground conditions may also be influenced by dredged material

placed in a bund along the eastern bank, which may be compacting the soil below and reducing permeability.

The western field has a generally drier and more uniform character than the eastern field (Photo 16), and is at a slightly greater elevation than the eastern field. The spatial distribution of the MG4 and MG5 grasslands across both fields is a likely consequence of local variability in moisture content in the upper 30-40 cm of soil, with tussocks and ridges across the site providing slightly drier conditions than localised depressions and troughs.



Photo 16 (left) – eastern field within the NW SSSI Unit showing the fringing blackthorn trees. Photo 17 (right) tributary of Low Brook immediately north of the SE SSSI Unit boundary looking towards Birmingham International Airport.

As the tributary of Low Brook flows out of the SSSI to the north of the site, the watercourse becomes a perfectly straight (artificially straightened), deeply incised drainage channel with a width of around 1 m (see Photo 17). This flows north to Low Brook, which is then culverted beneath the Birmingham International Airport runway.

Ground Condition and Soils

According to the British Geological Survey's Geology of Britain website (<http://mapapps.bgs.ac.uk/geologyofbritain3d/>) the bedrock geology beneath both SSSI units is Sidmouth Mudstone Formation (Figure 4). No superficial deposits are recorded below the SE SSSI unit, while alluvium (clay, silt, sand and gravel) is found around the stream through the NW SSSI unit (Figure 5).

The alluvium deposits at the northwestern SSSI unit are Secondary 'A' aquifer. The Sidmouth Mudstone Formation is classified as Secondary 'B' aquifer. Secondary A aquifer are permeable layers capable of supporting water supplies at a local rather than strategic scale, and in some cases forming an important source of base flow to rivers. Secondary B aquifer are predominantly lower permeability layers which may store and yield limited amounts of groundwater due to localised features such as fissures, thin permeable horizons and weathering.

Borehole records collected from historic ground investigations undertaken during the development of the M42 motorway in the 1970s and 1980s showed that groundwater was generally encountered within 10m of the ground surface adjacent to the M42 at Junction 6. The nearest borehole records for the NW SSSI unit shows depth to groundwater of 6.75m at the western extent of the SSSI (within 50m of the northwestern corner of the SSSI), as recorded in 1978 (reference SP18SE/511)³, and the borehole log indicates sand and gravel pockets within clay to a depth of 4.7m. Another borehole approximately 130m to the south of the SSSI had a depth to water of 3.0m, also in 1978 (reference SP18SE/510)⁴. The borehole log here indicated sandy clay and gravel to a depth of 1.3m, with stiffer clay below to a depth of 5.8m, underlain by mudstone.

Further ground investigations were undertaken to the north of the NW SSSI unit in 2011 in relation to the Birmingham International Airport runway extension and re-routing of the A45⁵. The nearest borehole was

³British Geological survey, Geology of Britain website, available at <http://mapapps.bgs.ac.uk/geologyofbritain3d/index.html> (accessed 20/5/18)

⁴British Geological survey, Geology of Britain website, available at <http://mapapps.bgs.ac.uk/geologyofbritain3d/index.html> (accessed 20/5/18)

⁵ Birmingham Airport (December 2011) Factual Report on Ground Investigation for the Proposed Runway Extension at Birmingham Airport,

located approximately 250m north of the SSSI unit, adjacent to the tributary of Low Brook (i.e. towards the valley bottom). This borehole (reference CP26) indicated slightly gravelly sandy clay with gravelly sand lenses to 2.2m, underlain by Mercia mudstone, with groundwater struck at 4.2m depth (in October 2011). A borehole approximately 380m north of the SSSI (reference CPRC31) recorded slightly sandy clay to 1.65m underlain by Mercia Mudstone group. No groundwater was encountered (in October 2011).

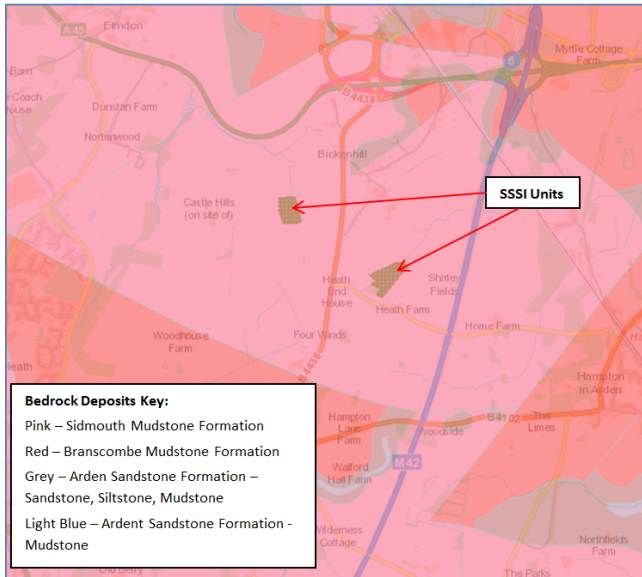


Figure 4. Bedrock deposits in the area around Bickenhill Meadows SSSI (source: British Geological Survey Geindex website, <http://www.bgs.ac.uk/geindex>).

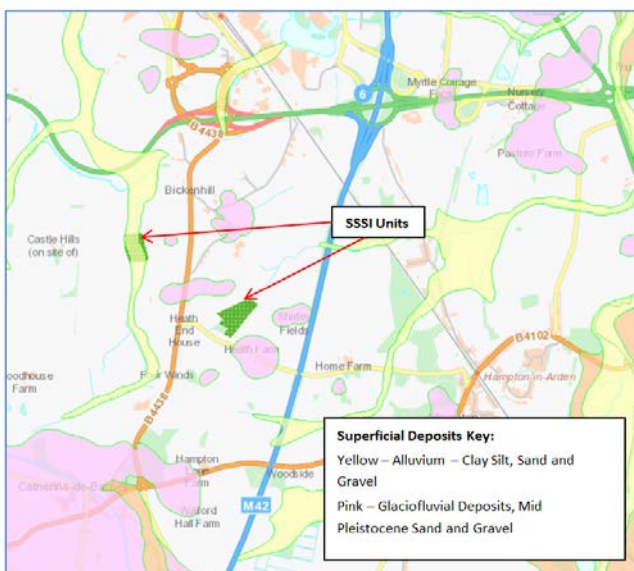


Figure 5. Superficial deposits in the area around Bickenhill Meadows SSSI (source: British Geological Survey Geindex website, <http://www.bgs.ac.uk/geindex>).

There are no historic borehole records in the immediate vicinity of the SE SSSI unit. The nearest is 340m to the east of the site (SP18SE/26B) and was drilled as part of the ground investigation for the M42 in 1970. This borehole had a depth to water of 11.05m. The borehole log indicates that the upper layers consisted of silty clay (weathered mudstone), with lumps of hard mudstone apparent from 4.45m depth, and weathered mudstone extending to the borehole base at 13.55m.

According to the Environment Agency there are no groundwater abstractions within 3 km of either SSSI unit and Solihull Metropolitan Borough Council has confirmed that there are five known Private Water Supplies within 2 km of the site, although exact locations have not been provided.

No springs are marked on current Ordnance Survey mapping in the immediate vicinity of the SSSI units, or on historical mapping that is available online. The nearest spring is marked ('issues' on Ordnance Survey mapping) approximately 500m to the southeast of the SE SSSI Unit at the source of Shadow Brook. When visited on site on 27/10/17, Shadow Brook was completely dry at its source and along its channel until east of the M42. This suggests that there may be low groundwater levels, or that there may only be an ephemeral groundwater input at times of high groundwater level conditions. While several pockets of sand and gravel that could contain significant groundwater are mapped in the area, particularly on higher ground, these do not extend to the SSSIs, although it is not currently known whether this is simply due to a lack of available information. The ongoing Ground Investigation for the proposed scheme will help clarify the full spatial location of the sand and gravel pockets.

Cranfield University's Soilscales website (<http://www.landis.org.uk/soilscales/>) indicates that the soil across the study area, including both SSSI units, is slowly permeable seasonally wet slightly acid base-rich loamy and clayey soils. Habitats typically associated with such soils are seasonally wet pastures and woodlands.

Topographic Survey

LiDAR topographic data has been obtained from the UK Government's Open Data website (<https://data.gov.uk/>) for the area covering the two SSSI units. This is shown in Figure 6 overlain onto Ordnance Survey Mapping. The surrounding topography is also shown in contour form in Figure 7. Areas of the highest elevation (shown as pale green shading in Figure 6) are located: i) immediately to the east of the northwestern SSSI unit; ii) at Bickenhill village; iii) at Catherine de Barnes Lane north of the Shadowbrook Lane junction; and iv) close to Four Winds to the south of the SE SSSI unit. Areas of progressively lower elevation are found along the streams that flow through each SSSI (yellow to light brown to dark brown shading).

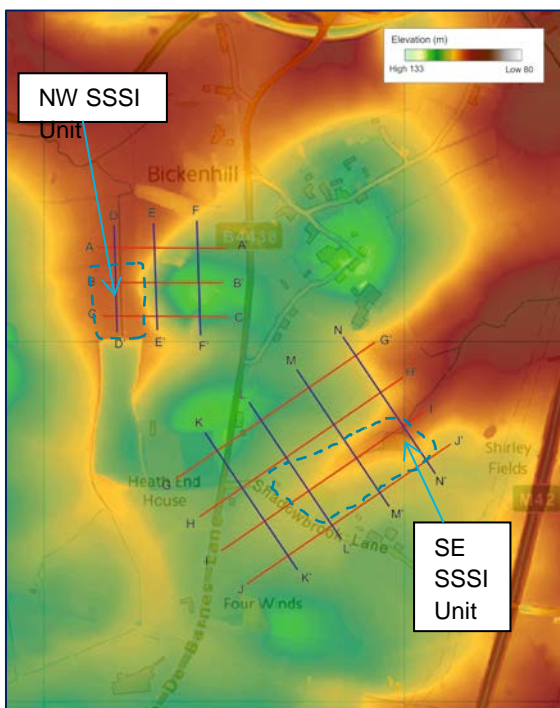


Figure 6. LiDAR data (source: UK open data website) overlain on Ordnance Survey data (crown copyright and database rights 2018 Ordnance Survey). Solid lines indicate locations of topographic sections, as shown in Appendix 1. Dashed lines indicate approximate SSSI locations. The figure shows a surface water divide between the two sites running NE-SW.

Around the SE SSSI unit the topography gently declines in elevation from the east, south and west towards the tributary of Shadow Brook, which has gentle valley slopes surrounding it as it flows to the northeast. Similarly, the northwestern SSSI unit has slopes falling away from the east, south and west, with a gentle valley forming to the north as the stream in the SSSI flows towards Low Brook. A series of topographic sections have been derived from the LiDAR data. The section lines are indicated and labelled in Figure 6, and are all presented in Appendix 1.

It is clear from the sections that there is a general decline in elevation from east to west towards the NW SSSI unit (sections A-C). This is essentially a valley side to the tributary of Low Brook. As the new dual carriageway would be located to the east of the NW SSSI (see Figures 1 and 2) there is potential for flow pathways between the proposed scheme and the downslope SSSI. If construction and operational runoff was not properly controlled, and appropriate mitigation measures not put into place, then there could be adverse impacts to habitats and water quality within the SSSI unit from this runoff. However, the proposed scheme includes mitigation for all potential adverse impacts from road drainage and spillage incidents during construction and operation.

There is also a decline in elevation from south to north towards the NW SSSI unit (sections D-F). This includes a field directly south of the SSSI unit which is elevated in comparison to the surrounding land, and is a former landfill site.

The topographic long sections for the SE SSSI unit (sections G-J) indicate a general decline in elevation from the south of Shadowbrook Lane towards the SSSI, while the cross sections (sections K-N) indicate gentle valley slopes rising each side of the watercourse. As designs indicate that the new dual carriageway will cross Catherine de Barnes Lane just south of the Shadowbrook Lane junction, and will continue in a southeast direction (Figure 8), there is potential for surface water flows between the proposed scheme and the SSSI unit. Again, this could have impacts on the habitats in the SSSI if appropriate mitigation for surface water runoff from construction and operation was not implemented; however, various mitigation measures are built into the proposed scheme design.

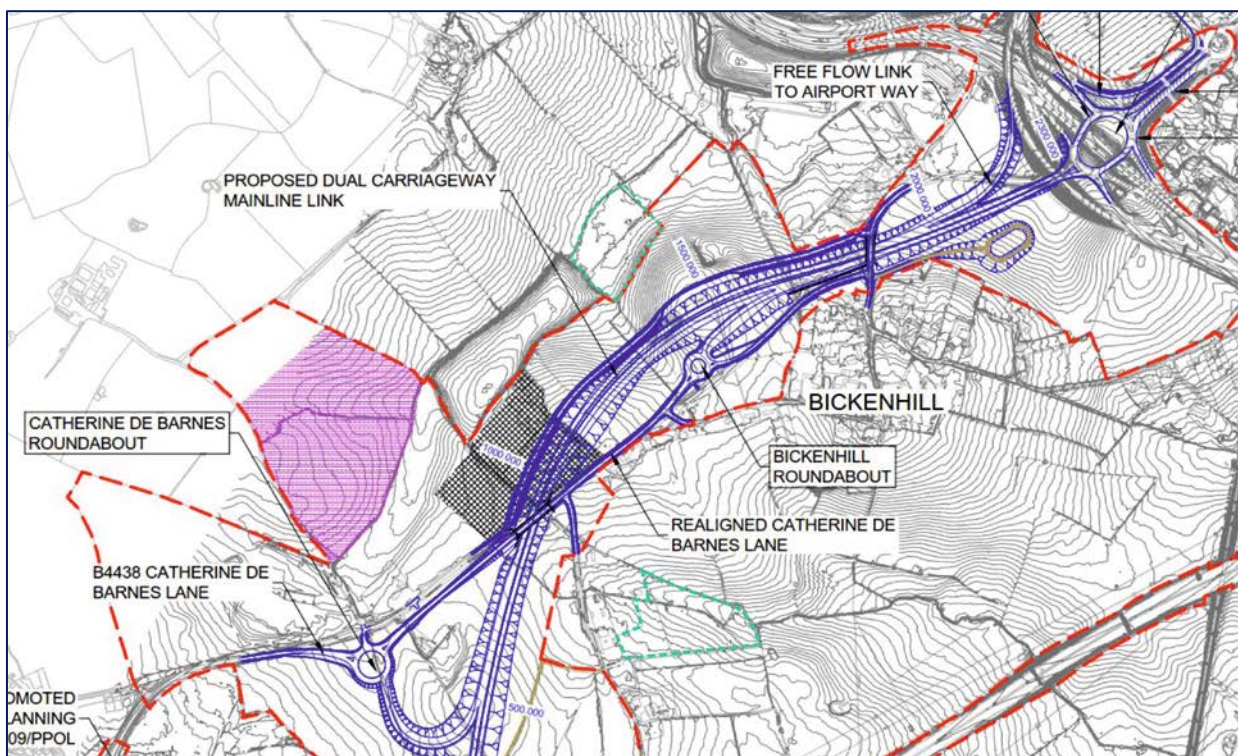


Figure 7. Contour map to show topography surrounding the two SSSI units. SSSI units are outlined in a green dashed line, with the proposed scheme red line boundary shown in red). Contours were derived from topographic survey undertaken at PCF Stage 2 for the proposed scheme.

In Figure 8, the catchments for each SSSI unit have been derived from the LiDAR data. The NW SSSI unit has a noticeably larger catchment than the SE SSSI unit, and extends a considerable distance to the southwest where it is interrupted by the Grand Union Canal near Catherine de Barnes. On the basis of the approximate road alignment shown in Figure 8, the proportion of the catchment lost for each SSSI unit would be in the region of 3% for the NW unit and 14% for the SE unit. This is an approximation, and can be updated following release of a shapefile for the general arrangement of the proposed scheme from the design team.

The site observations and topographic investigation of LiDAR data suggest that surface water flows are important contributors to the habitats in the two SSSI units, particularly in the close vicinity of the channels. However, significant flooding of the units is very unlikely and it is more likely that rainfall combined with the ridge and furrow topography and localised hillslope runoff is the most significant source of water controlling the hydrology of the wet meadows. The role of groundwater flow is unclear, but features such as the apparent spring in the NW SSSI suggest that it is a contributor, at least in certain locations.

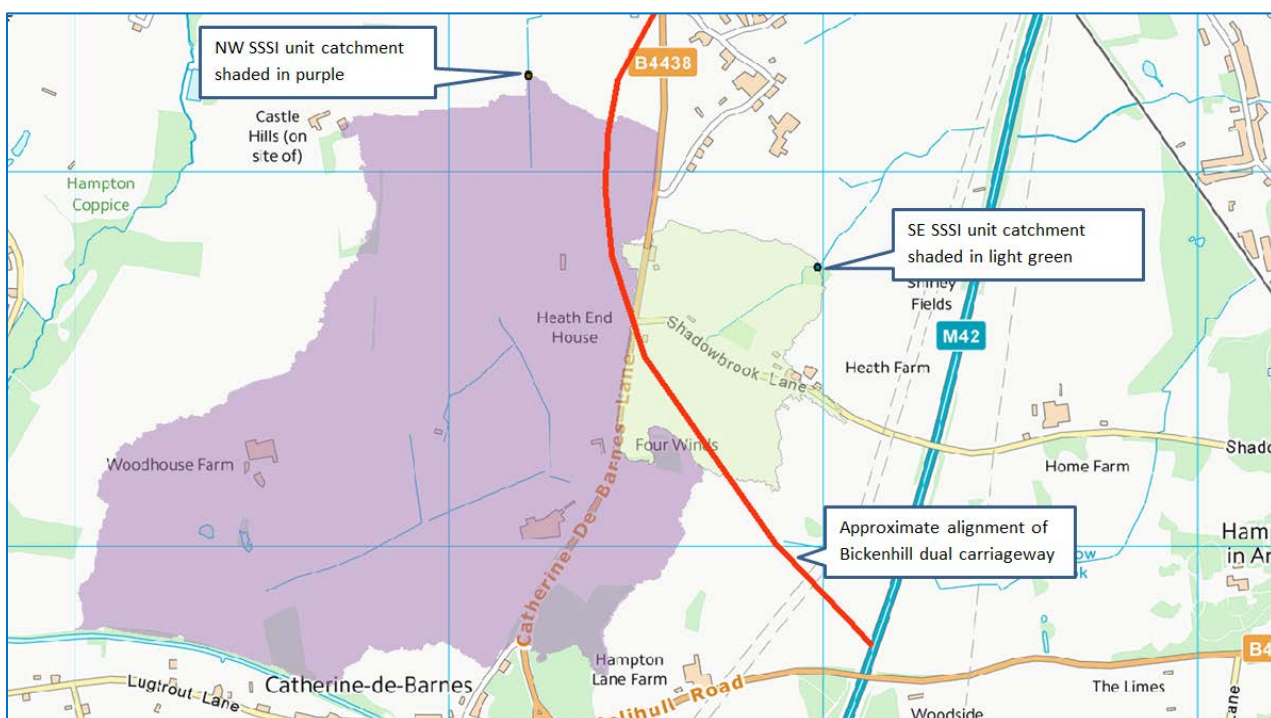


Figure 8. Catchment boundaries as determined from GIS analysis, with approximate road alignment overlain in red.

Ground Investigation

The Ground Investigation currently being undertaken as part of the proposed scheme will provide some understanding of groundwater levels in the vicinity of the SSSI and the extent to which they may intersect with the wet meadows and woodlands. It will also reveal whether glacial sand and gravel deposits extend to, or intersect with, the two SSSI units.

The design of the proposed link road indicates that in places the cuttings will have a depth of up to 10 m below existing ground level. Adjacent to the SE SSSI unit, the cutting would have depths varying between 5 and 8 m below existing ground level, while adjacent to the NW SSSI unit depths would be between 0 and 9 m lower than existing levels. The potential for drawdown of groundwater is thought to be greatest where the cutting will intersect patches of glacial sands and gravel and Arden Sandstone. There are no mapped Arden Sandstone outcrops adjacent to the SSSIs that would be impacted by the cutting (see Figure 4), but there are deposits of glacial sand and gravel as indicated in Figure 9 and 10. Drawdown from these deposits could impact on lateral groundwater flow towards the SSSIs, and it remains a possibility that they are more extensive than current mapping suggests. The potential for drawdown in

areas of Sidmouth Mudstone Formation is likely to be much reduced in comparison to the areas of sand and gravel deposits.

Given that groundwater in the area has historically been within 10m of the surface, and that in places the cutting is to be up to 10m deep, there is some potential for disruption of groundwater flows. While groundwater flow is not currently considered to be the primary source of water maintaining wet conditions and streamflow in the SSSI units, it is not ruled out as having a contributory role, particularly if the sand and gravel is more spatially extensive than mapped. As such, the relationship between groundwater levels at the site of the proposed road and at the two SSSI units needs to be better understood to determine whether the cutting would have any impact. To achieve this, the Ground Investigation for the proposed scheme has been extended to take account of the SSSI units.

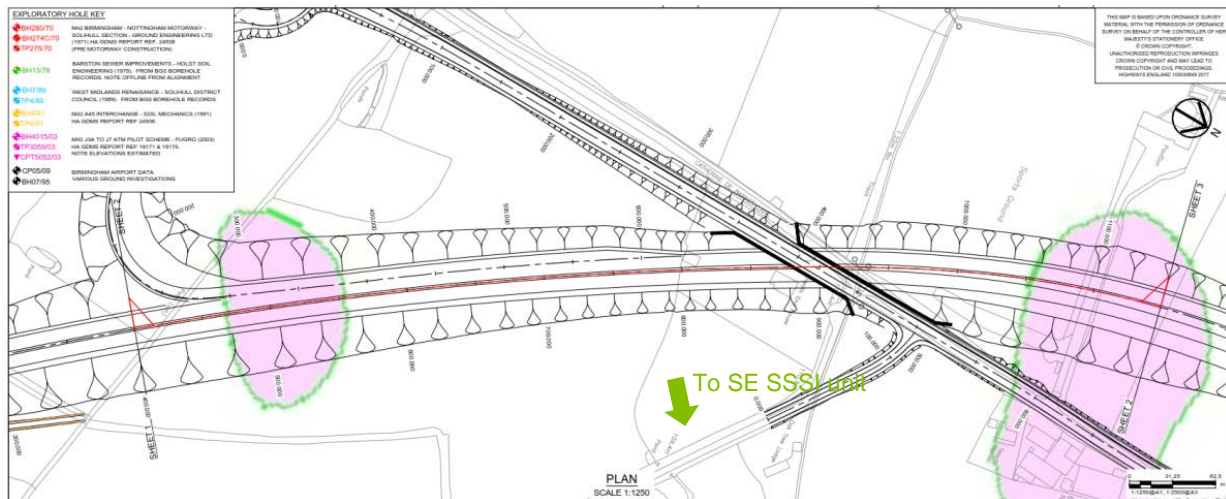


Figure 9. Location of Glacial Sands and Gravels along the proposed link road (shown by Pink shading), in the vicinity of the southeastern SSSI unit.

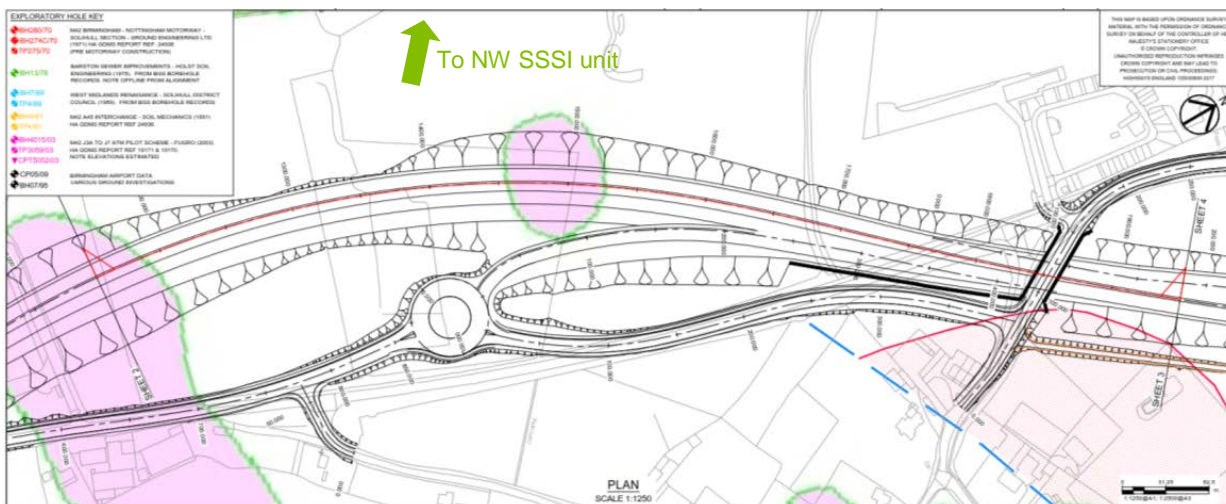


Figure 10. Location of Glacial Sands and Gravels along the proposed link road (shown by Pink shading), in the vicinity of the northwestern SSSI unit.

Figure 11a and 11b show the location of the Ground Investigation works, which are ongoing at the time of writing (August 2018). The works now include boreholes around the periphery of each SSSI unit and within the SSSI units. Those on the periphery of the units are window samples with a standpipe installation to allow monitoring of groundwater levels over time. The standpipes terminate on proving the surface of the Sidmouth Mudstone Formation. The boreholes within the SSSI units are not long-term installations for monitoring, but have been included to prove the underlying geology and provide a snapshot of groundwater conditions that can be related to the levels around the periphery of the sites.

The borehole locations within the NE SSSI units are still to be completed, and are dependent on permission being obtained from the landowner. These locations are indicative only and final locations will be chosen in collaboration with an ecologist on site in order that the boreholes reflect the different vegetation communities. This will enable the nature of the substratum (e.g. type of superficial deposit) to be related to the ecology of the site.

The proposed monitoring of groundwater levels around the periphery of the SSSIs will help understand the groundwater dependence of the two SSSI units, and hence the likelihood of any adverse impact from the proposed scheme that would need to be mitigated.

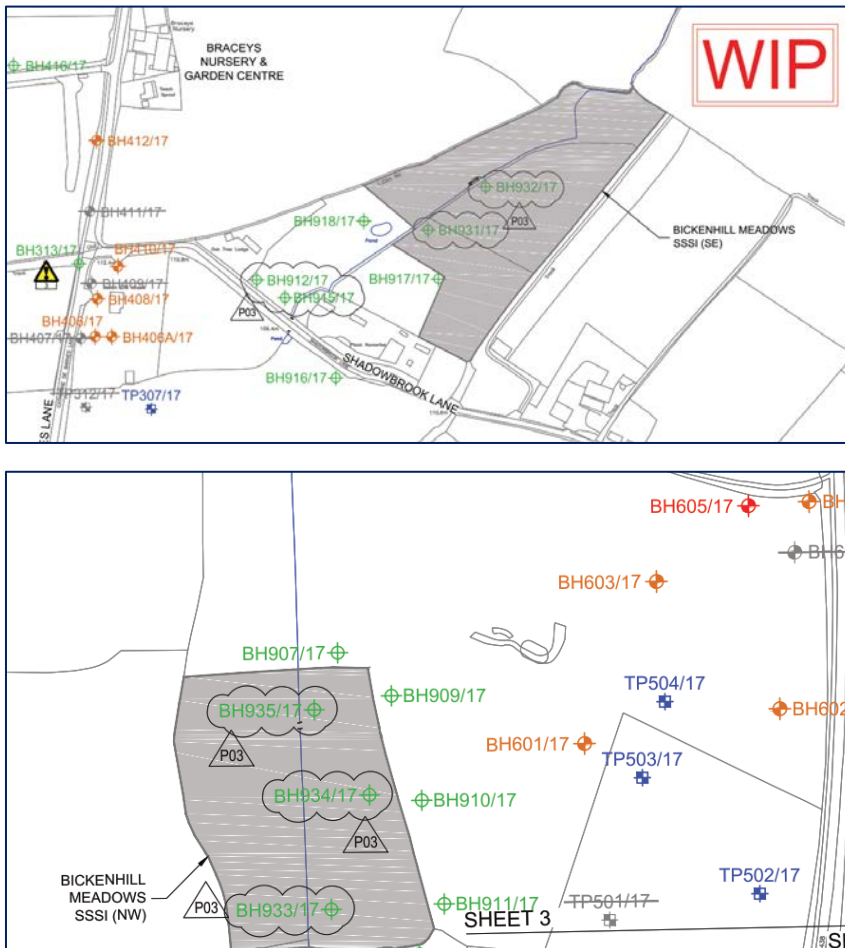


Figure 11a (top) and 11b (bottom) Ground Investigation locations – extended to include the SSSI units. Red – cable percussion boreholes; orange – rotary coring boreholes; green – window sample; blue – trial pit.

Soil Saturation Monitoring

During a site visit to the SE SSSI unit following heavy rainfall (02/05/18), it was apparent that rainfall had accumulated on the ground surface and was very slow to drain away. This was particularly the case in depressions and furrows across the site. This supports the assertion that maintenance of wet ground conditions required for many of the grassland species may be rainwater fed to a large extent, perhaps supported by localised out of bank flows very close to the stream, and/or limited groundwater flows from any surrounding glacial sand and gravel deposits. These glacial deposits may act somewhat like a sponge, filling with groundwater in response to rainfall. In the wet meadow at the SE SSSI unit, it appears that the MG4 species are more successful in the saturated furrows across the site, while MG5 species are more successful on the slightly elevated and therefore drier ridges.

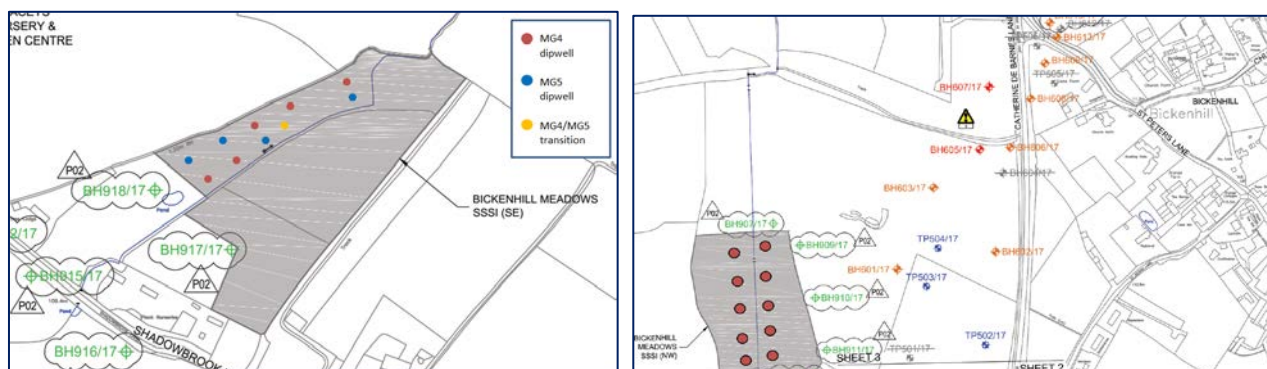
To better understand the variability in soil saturation and how long it takes the site to drain following heavy rainfall, it was proposed in discussions with Natural England (on site on 26/4/18) to install a series

of dipwells on the wet meadow field. Soil water levels and conductivity would then be measured fortnightly within the dipwells over a period of at least 6 months to build an understanding of subsurface moisture conditions, and whether they are indeed largely rainwater fed. While less than 6 months of monitoring may be available at the point that the Environmental Statement is finalised and the Development Consent Order (DCO) application submitted, the monitoring would continue post submission, with Natural England kept informed with data and technical interpretation. The findings presented in the Environmental Statement would be updated at DCO Examination if necessary, and monitoring could potentially be maintained during construction of the proposed scheme to assess any impact on the two SSSI units.

The dipwells were installed in the wet meadow field on 13-14th August 2018 (see Figure 12a) following a prolonged three month summer dry spell. As such, ground conditions were extremely dry. A total of 10 dipwells were installed, covering MG4 grassland, MG5 grassland and transitional grassland areas. Of these, 6 dipwells were installed to a depth of 90 cm and 4 dipwells to a depth of 50-60 cm (due to difficulty penetrating the substratum with hand held soil augering equipment). Environment Agency Ecohydrological Guidelines⁶ for MG4 grasslands suggest an indicative target mean water table depth range from 35 cm depth in summer to 70 cm depth in winter, and so ordinarily the installed dipwells should be of sufficient depth to monitor the water table for these grasslands. However, at the time of installation all dipwells were empty due to the ongoing unusually dry summer conditions. The dipwells will be monitored fortnightly to capture water table recharge in response to rainfall, although the monitoring period will be varied on an ad-hoc basis to capture informative prevailing weather patterns, such as heavy rainfall associated with storms. One dipwell has also been fitted with a water level data logger to allow continuous measurement of soil water levels.

Natural England assent also includes for installation of 10 dipwells within the NW SSSI unit, again to provide an understanding of soil saturation conditions and to supplement the data to be obtained from the extended Ground Investigation within the site (subject to land access being agreed). The location of the dipwells would be determined in consultation with an ecologist in order to ensure that soil saturation conditions for different microhabitats were incorporated in the monitoring. As at the SE SSSI unit, soil water levels would be monitored fortnightly (or more frequently in particularly wet conditions) for an initial period of six months, with both water level and conductivity being recorded. As described above for the SE SSSI unit this could be extended to monitor conditions during construction. A water level datalogger would be installed within one dipwell to enable continuous measurement. Rainfall data from the nearest Environment Agency meteorological stations would be obtained to compare with the water level record. At the time of writing, access had yet to be granted from the landowner for installation of the dipwells within the NW SSSI.

Figure 12a show locations of installed dipwells in the SE SSSI and Figure 12b shows indicative arrangements for dipwells in both SSSI units. Exact locations for the NW SSSI will be determined on site, and similarly to the SE SSSI will encompass ridges and furrows, and MG4 and MG5 grasslands.



⁶ Environment Agency (2004) Protective and Enhancing Wetlands: Ecohydrological Guidelines for Lowland Wetland Plant Communities.

Figure 12a (left). Locations of dipwells installed in the wet meadow field at the SE SSSI unit (dipwells shown in red); and 12b (right) Indicative locations of dipwells in the NW SSSI unit.

The dipwells installed at the SE SSSI were prefabricated from a perforated plastic pipe of 40 mm diameter. They are sealed above ground to prevent rainwater from filling the pipe. The plastic pipe is perforated at regular intervals along its length on all sides, to allow throughflow of soil water, and to allow equilibration to be achieved with the surrounding water table. The regular measurement of water levels is being undertaken using a dip tape inserted into the pipe. Conductivity would be measured using a Hanna Instruments conductivity meter.

Preliminary Ground Investigation Results at the SSSIs

The boreholes shown in the SE SSSI and immediate periphery in Figure 11a and the four boreholes on the eastern periphery of the NW SSSI in Figure 11b were installed in July 2018. Those within the NW SSSI unit have yet to be installed at the time of writing in August 2018 (due to ongoing land access negotiations).

A summary of the preliminary results is given in Table 1.

Table 1 Provisional Ground Investigation findings for the SE and NW SSSI units. For borehole location refer to Figure 11a and 11b.

Borehole	Geology Summary	Groundwater strike
SE SSSI		
BH932 (within SSSI)	4m depth - gravelly sand to 0.8m, very sandy clay to 2.25m, sandy clay with weak mudstone fragments to 4m.	Water strike at 2.25m rising to 2.18m after 20 minutes.
BH931 (within SSSI)	3m depth – gravelly sand to 0.8m, sandy slightly gravelly clay to 1.2m, silty clay to 3m.	Water strike at 1.96m rising to 1.8m after 20 minutes.
BH917 (within SSSI)	3m depth – gravelly sand to 0.8m, slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 1.75m, sandy clay to 3.0m	Water strike at 2.19m.
BH918 (within nature reserve but not SSSI)	3m depth – fine to coarse sand with some gravel to 1.15m, sandy clay to 1.5m, gravelly fine to coarse sand to 3m.	Water strike at 1.48m.
BH912 (within nature reserve but not SSSI)	4m depth – gravelly sand to 0.8m, sandy slightly gravelly clay to 1.5m, sand to 1.6m, sandy clay to 2.10m, slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 2.6m including extremely weak mudstone, sandy clay to 4m.	Water strike at 2.6m, rising to 1.74m after 20 minutes.
BH915A (within nature reserve but not SSSI)	6.4m depth – gravelly fine to coarse sand to 0.8m, sandy gravelly clay to 3.10m, sandy clay to 5.0m, fine to coarse sand to 5.6m, sandy clay to 6.1m, clay tending to extremely weak mudstone to 6.4m	Water strike at 3.10m, rising to 1.8m after 40 minutes.
NW SSSI		
BH907 (northern periphery of SSSI)	2.0m depth – slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.6m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.0m	No water strike
BH909 (eastern periphery of SSSI)	2.3m depth - slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.6m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.3m	No water strike
BH910 (eastern periphery of SSSI)	2.7m depth - slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.6m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.7m	No water strike
BH911 (eastern periphery of SSSI)	2.0m depth - slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.5m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.0m	No water strike

Preliminary Interpretation of Results - SE SSSI Unit

All of the boreholes described in Table 1 were collected in July 2018 following a prolonged three month period of dry weather, and so groundwater levels would be considerably lower than during the spring period considered critical to the SSSI grasslands. Mercia Mudstone is at considerable depth within the SE SSSI unit (2.25m at BH932 and >3.0m in BH931 and BH917) and immediate periphery (6.1m at BH915A, 2.6m at BH912 and >3.0m at BH918) with substantial glacial superficial deposits located above it (see

Table 1). Mercia Mudstone is generally located deeper within and immediately around the SSSI than in many other locations studied within the Ground Investigation across the wider scheme. Based on this and the observed high ground water levels (1.48 - 3.1m depth when measured during drought conditions) compared with elsewhere there are considered to be two potential hypotheses:

1. There is an isolated 'bowl' of mixed superficial deposits to a variable depth of several metres that spans the SSSI and immediate periphery, and this is surrounded by shallower Mercia mudstone in the adjacent areas (Figure 13a and 13b). The deeper superficial deposits located at the SSSI are able to hold greater quantities of groundwater than Mercia mudstone and may support a high groundwater table, thereby reducing the rate that rainwater infiltrates. This would then maintain a moisture source for the sensitive grassland species. This 'bowl' of mixed superficial deposits is expected to be largely rainwater fed and dries up during drought (as seen in the summer of 2018 when the site was extremely dry), and is recharged on receipt of rainfall (to be determined from future monitoring of the boreholes and dipwells). The proposed road is not anticipated to impact on this scenario as the SSSI is predominantly rainwater fed and not reliant on groundwater flows from the surrounding areas.
2. There is a channel-shaped feature of mixed superficial deposits which runs from the direction of Catherine de Barnes Lane to the SSSI (Figure 13c). This is a relatively narrow channel based on the Ground Investigation results from elsewhere in the proposed scheme. Rainwater would be the major contributor to the groundwater levels in the superficial deposits, potentially supplemented to some extent by flows through the 'channel' of deposits which extend to Catherine de Barnes Lane. Figure 7 indicates that approximately 14% of the surface water catchment would be lost to the proposed link road, and only a portion of this is likely to include significant superficial deposits. Given this minimal extent of impacted catchment loss, it is considered unlikely that the proposed link road would have an adverse impact on the recharge of groundwater levels in the SSSI, which would depend predominantly on rainfall with only slight supplementation from groundwater flow.

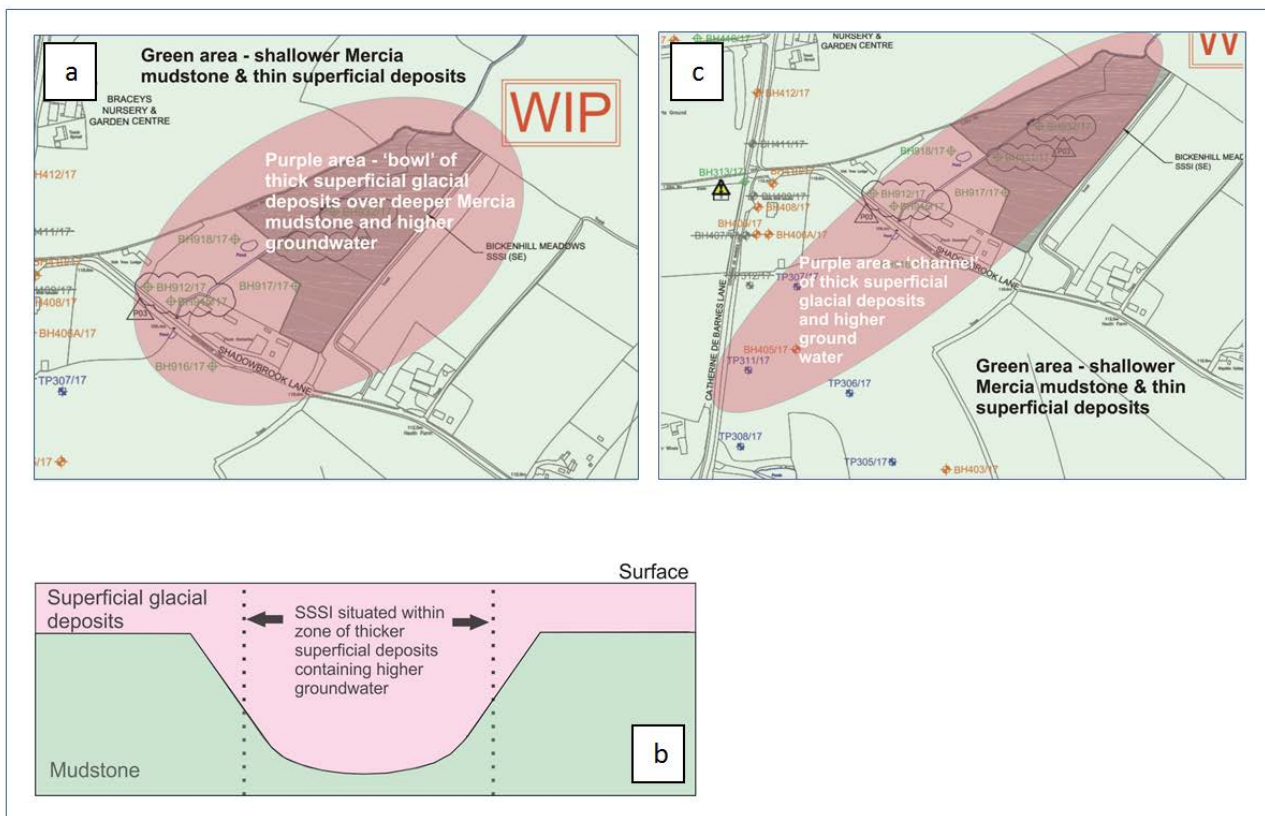


Figure 13a (top left) Indicative diagram showing Hypothesis 1, a 'bowl' of thicker superficial glacial deposits surrounded by shallower Mercia mudstone; 13b (bottom left) indicative diagram to show how the SSSI appears to be located within thicker superficial deposits; and 13c (top right)

indicative Hypothesis 2, a ‘channel’ of thicker superficial deposits surrounded by shallow Mercia mudstone.

In both cases described above the ongoing monitoring of groundwater levels using the dipwells within the SSSI and the boreholes in the periphery of the SSSI is required to prove that there is recharge after rainfall and thereby increase the evidence base for these hypotheses.

Preliminary Interpretation of Results - NW SSSI Unit

The holes on the eastern periphery of the NW SSSI unit show the Mercia mudstone to be very shallow (e.g. 60cm at BH907, BH909, BH910) with no significant superficial deposits, and deep groundwater (i.e. no groundwater strikes recorded within these boreholes). The deeper groundwater levels were recorded during a period of drought, and ongoing monitoring will show how these levels vary in response to rainfall.

Boreholes have yet to be obtained from within this SSSI unit itself as land access negotiations are ongoing. However, given the slope down towards the stream from both the east and west margins, and that the SSSI has generally been particularly wet and ‘spongey’ underfoot, it is considered that there may be a similar scenario at this site to the SE SSSI, with a circular basin (‘bowl’) or channel of thicker superficial deposits surrounded by shallower mudstone. The thicker superficial deposits would contain more significant amounts of groundwater that are required to maintain the sensitive grassland communities.

The boreholes within the SSSI are required to prove that it contains thicker superficial deposits, and monitoring of dipwells will be required to prove recharge in response to rainfall. However, it is noteworthy that there does not appear to be high groundwater or superficial deposits on the eastern edge of the SSSI that the road would intercept. As such, minimal impact to the SSSI might be expected, but the site would need the ongoing monitoring using dipwells to confirm this post construction.

National Vegetation Classification (NVC) Surveys

A Phase 2 NVC survey was undertaken of the identified homogenous stands of grassland vegetation within the Bickenhill Meadows SSSI in summer 2018. The survey followed the standard published methodology (Rodwell, 2006)⁷ and comprised recording a minimum of five quadrats in each identified grassland type and at least one in each parcel of each grassland type. Following this, the data sets identified were matched to the published grassland community types using the keys provided in Rodwell (1992)⁸ and using the software TABLEFIT⁹. The survey was undertaken on the 27th June and the 7th August 2018.

The vegetation in all the fields on the days of the survey was tall and coarse and because of this appeared uniform with the subtle changes in ground level apparent earlier in the year masked by the dense growth.

The SE SSSI comprises three fields separated by a small watercourse (dry on the day of the survey); two of the fields are on the east side and the third on the west side. A fourth field is not within the SSSI but along with the fields in the SSSI is managed as a nature reserve by Warwickshire Wildlife Trust.

The two fields on the eastern side slope down to the watercourse and the vegetation on the day of the survey was grass dominated (tall and lodging in places) and dry (Photo 18 and 19). Yorkshire fog (*Holcus lanatus*) was abundant with other grasses such as cock’s foot (*Dactylis glomerata*), common bent (*Agrostis capillaris*), red fescue (*Festuca rubra*), crested dog’s tail (*Cynosurus cristatus*) and meadow fescue (*Schedonorus pratensis*). A range of generally common forbs were recorded and included ribwort

⁷ Rodwell, J. S. (2006) National Vegetation Classification; Users’ Handbook. Joint Nature Conservation Committee, Peterborough

⁸ Rodwell, J. S. (ed.) 1992. British Plant Communities. Volume 3. Grassland and montane communities. Cambridge University Press.

⁹ Hill (2015) TABLEFIT Version 2; A program to identify types of vegetation by measuring goodness-of-fit to association tables. Centre of Ecology and Hydrology, Wallingford

plantain (*Plantago lanceolata*), common knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*), bird's foot trefoil (*Lotus corniculatus*) and red clover (*Trifolium pratense*). Less common species included yellow rattle (*Rhinanthus minor*) and tormentil (*Potentilla erecta*).



Photo 18 (left) and Photo 19 (right), typical vegetation in the SE SSSI unit eastern fields.

Seven quadrats were recorded in the two fields, as they were uniform in appearance and structure. The data obtained was run through TABLEFIT and the goodness of fit to the NVC community type MG5; *Cynosurus cristatus* - *Centaurea nigra* was at around 83% and classed as very good fit. The second best fit was to the MG5a *Lathyrus pratensis* sub-community type.

The field within the SE SSSI unit on the west side of the watercourse was generally flat but with an apparent rise towards the northern boundary; the grasses did not dominate to the degree they did in the dry fields and there were patches of meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*) and great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*) (Photo 20 and 21). Meadowsweet and other wetland species such as wild angelica (*Angelica sylvestris*) seemed to be more frequent towards the watercourse where the vegetation was taller and coarser. Interesting species recorded here were betony (*Stachys officinalis*) and tormentil (*Potentilla erecta*). It has been reported that meadow thistle (*Cirsium dissectum*) is also present but this was not found during the current survey.



Photo 20 (left) and Photo 21 (right), typical vegetation in the SE SSSI unit wet meadow field.

Five quadrats were recorded in this western field and along with the data collected from similar vegetation recorded in the NW section of the SSSI (describe below) were run through TABLEFIT. The goodness-of-fit to the NVC community type MG4; *Alopecurus pratensis* – *Sanguisorba officinalis* was around 63% and classed as a fair fit. Any variation in the vegetation from topographical variation was masked by the tall growth and a better understanding of this would be obtained once the field has been cut. This will provide

information on the relationship of the community boundaries to topography, depth to water and ditch levels, and enable the communities to be tied with soils information to determine the mechanism whereby any vegetation changes are driven.

The NW SSSI unit comprises two fields separated by a small, ephemeral watercourse, which was dry on the day of the survey. The western field appeared to be uniform in structure and was generally a mix of patches of larger forbs such as great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*) and meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*), and grasses with a range of smaller forbs including several legumes scrambling through the vegetation. This field appeared to be more diverse than the corresponding field in the SE SSSI unit and here saw-wort (*Serratula tinctoria*), quaking grass (*Briza media*) and devil's bit scabious (*Succisa pratensis*) were recorded in addition to the more typical and commoner forb species. When visited in August 2018, tufted hair grass (*Deschampsia cespitosa*) was the dominant species in this field.



Photo 22 (left) and Photo 23 (right), typical vegetation in the NW SSSI unit western field.

Five quadrats were recorded in the field and along with the data collected from similar vegetation recorded in the SE SSSI unit were run through TABLEFIT. The goodness-of-fit to the NVC community type MG4; *Alopecurus pratensis* – *Sanguisorba officinalis* was around 63% and classed as a fair fit.

The eastern field of the NW SSSI unit was only visited in August and had much coarser vegetation and the dominant grass across larger areas was tufted hair grass (*Deschampsia cespitosa*) but with meadowsweet and great burnet also frequent throughout the field. Sedges appeared to be more common in this field and included hairy sedge (*Carex hirta*), false fox sedge (*Carex otrubae*), common sedge (*Carex nigra*) and tufted sedge (*Carex acuta*). Otherwise it was very similar to the western field (Photos 24 and 25).



Photo 24 (left) and Photo 25 (right), typical vegetation in the NW SSSI unit eastern field.

Part way along the western boundary of the field, there was a distinctive change in vegetation and whilst this will have to be shown by survey, it appeared to be delineated by a low spot, possibly linked to the ditch and was demarked by young alders (*Alnus glutinosa*). The vegetation here was dominated by tall rushes including soft rush (*Juncus effusus*), hard rush (*Juncus inflexus*) and sharp flowered rush (*Juncus acutiflorus*), along with sedges with abundant great hairy willowherb (*Epilobium hirsutum*) and in the wettest areas patches of fool's watercress (*Apium nodiflorum*). This is the area considered to be a potential spring in the preceding discussion (Photo 26 and Photo 27).



Photo 26 (left) and Photo 27 (right), typical vegetation in the distinct wetter area within the NW SSSI unit eastern field.

Five quadrats were recorded in this area and the data was run through TABLEFIT. The goodness-of-fit to the NVC community type OV26; *Epilobium hirsutum* community was around 58% and classed as a fair fit. A similar fit was obtained from the MG9 community; *Holcus lanatus-Deschampsia cespitosa* grassland. This community is found in area where the ground is seasonally waterlogged and can be found in association with MG4 grassland but is not usually as species diverse and is tolerant of less free draining soils.

It is clear from the surveys that the two dry grassland fields in the SE SSSI unit fit closely to the MG5 community type and that for the most part the wetter field in the SE unit and the two fields in the NW unit fit to the MG4 community type. Within the wetter fields, there may be localised variation and this seems to have been picked up by the walkovers earlier in 2018 but by summer the tall vegetation was masking much of this variation.

Summary and Recommendations

The proposed scheme includes a new dual carriageway link road to link a new junction south of M42 Junction 6 to Clock Interchange to the southwest of the Birmingham National Exhibition Centre. This would be an approximate length of 2.4 km and located to the west of the M42 motorway, close to Catherine de Barnes Lane. Much of the carriageway would be within cutting with varying depths below ground level, up to a maximum of 10 m.

The Bickenhill Meadows SSSI is located in two units situated either side of the proposed link road. This is designated for its species-rich grassland and includes areas of wet meadows and wet alder woodland. Small streams run through each SSSI unit, and are tributaries of Shadow Brook and Low Brook. Wet conditions need to be maintained in the SSSIs to ensure the preservation of the rare grassland habitats that are housed within.

On the basis of the topography surrounding each SSSI unit, site visits and preliminary Ground Investigation results it appears as though the grasslands are primarily rainwater fed. Rainwater accumulates in the variable local-topographic features and drains away only very slowly. Emerging ground investigation data suggests that rainwater is likely to be the dominant mechanism for recharging groundwater levels in the underlying glacial superficial sands and gravels. The streams flowing through

each site are also likely to be predominantly rainwater fed via their agricultural catchments and road runoff, and may on rare occasions lead to some localised flooding, particularly when the narrow channels are blocked with litter, debris, sediment and plant growth. The watercourses may also contribute to maintaining wet ground conditions in the immediate vicinity of the streams.

To enable greater clarity and understanding of groundwater interaction with the SSSI, the ongoing Ground Investigation has been extended to include eight additional boreholes within and immediately around the SE SSSI, as well as a further eight boreholes in and immediately around the NW SSSI unit.

Provisional results indicate that groundwater is likely to have a significant contribution to maintaining wet conditions in the SSSI units during dry periods, although plant communities would most likely have formed during the spring/early summer where ground conditions are typically still moist from the preceding winter's rainfall. Groundwater varied between 1.48 and 3.5 m in and around the SE SSSI unit in July 2018, and this is considerably shallower than observed elsewhere in the scheme area. This shallower groundwater corresponds to thicker superficial sand and gravel glacial deposits that have greater capacity to store groundwater. However, the presence of such deposits at the NW unit has yet to be proved (and is subject to ongoing land access negotiations). It is anticipated that the groundwater levels at both SSSI units are recharged in response to rainfall, but further investigation is required to prove this. This investigation will use dipwells (10 per site) to measure water table depth, which have been installed at depths of up to 900mm at the SE SSSI unit, and will soon be installed at the NW SSSI unit. These will be monitored fortnightly (or more regularly in response to heavy rainfall), to determine whether recharge is directly related to rainfall patterns.

The possibility remains that ongoing investigation may prove that the proposed scheme does impact upon the maintenance of wet conditions required by the grassland communities in the SSSI. As such potential mitigation options are required to be considered, and these are discussed further below.

Mitigation Hierarchy

During the site meeting with Natural England on 26/04/18 it was requested that options are presented for the approaches that may be taken in the event that the proposed scheme results in an adverse effect upon the SSSI. In accordance with best practice this would follow the mitigation hierarchy, which seeks to avoid, reduce (i.e. mitigate) or offset (i.e. compensate) for any adverse impact.

At the current stage of design it is acknowledged that it is highly unlikely that the horizontal or vertical alignment of the proposed link road could be altered to avoid potential effects on the SSSI, as the road has already been moved as far east as possible as part of earlier optioneering work to maximise the distance from the NW SSSI unit. Accordingly, the approaches need to focus on options for mitigation and compensation.

A potentially significant adverse effect would comprise alterations to the type or extent of the grassland communities that are interest features of the SSSI. This may occur as a result of changes to the existing hydrological regime. Based on the available data it is not possible to provide a detailed assessment of impacts; however, in the event that a significant impact to the interest features of the SSSI is considered likely then options for mitigation or compensation may include the following.

- Improved grassland management of the SSSI to maintain the nature and extent of this interest feature. This may require refining the existing grazing/cutting of the grasslands and the control of encroaching scrub.
- Measures to maintain the existing hydrological regime of the SSSI. This may include the pumping of water at an appropriate time of year to replicate the existing water supply.
- Physical changes within the SSSI to extend the existing habitat types. This would involve carefully planned and localised changes to the topography of the SSSI, and would be based on detailed modelling of the existing vegetation communities. As an example, the approach could seek to extend the topographical variations (such as ridge-and-furrow) that have established the existing pattern of vegetation communities.

- Measures to re-store natural flow along streams flowing through the SSSI units by re-routing each stream through the low point of each valley and restoring a more natural planform;
- As a last resort, it may be possible to establish habitats similar to the interest features in land immediately adjacent to the SSSI. This would include creating a parcel of land with a varied topography and a related hydrological regime, and establishing grassland using green hay from the SSSI.

All of the approaches above would be informed by ongoing monitoring of the SSSI grasslands to ensure effectiveness. An options appraisal for these approaches is provided in Table 2.

Table 2 Potential Hydrological Impacts on Bickenhill Meadows SSSI – Mitigation Options Appraisal

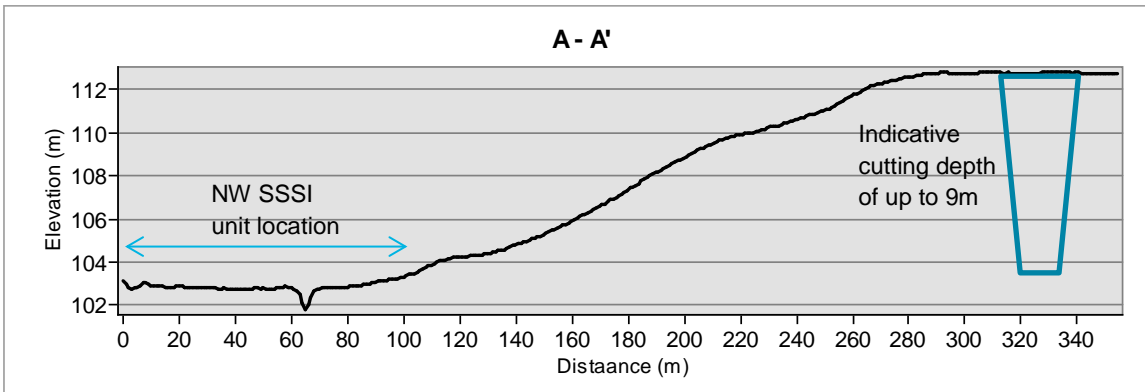
Mitigation Option	Description	Mitigation Type	Implications				
			Design	Third Party and Land Ownership	Planning and Deliverability	Future Maintenance	Cost
Improved grassland management of the SSSI to maintain the nature and extent of this interest feature.	Refining the existing grazing/cutting of the grasslands and the control of encroaching scrub.	Offsetting impact	Does not require any new infrastructure to be provided.	<p>Main benefit of this mitigation is on the NW Unit where little management other than occasional grazing by livestock takes place (limited scope on SE unit which is well managed by WWT).</p> <p>This would be undertaken yearly under a management / legal agreement that would be needed in perpetuity. This could be adopted by the land-owner or a third party via the legal agreement. Option would need to be agreed with Birmingham Airport Authority (BAA) and would most likely involve Highways England (HE) accepting some long terms liabilities.</p>	<p>The current application boundary incorporates the extents of land designated within the boundary of the SSSI, within which it is expected that these measures could be delivered and managed without requiring additional land beyond that already identified.</p> <p>Scheme description would need to be amended to incorporate these measures.</p> <p>Potentially requires the relevant third party bodies to enter into an agreement with HE, secured through the DCO, to implement the improvements and undertake long-term management of the improved site.</p>	Maintenance of grasslands and scrub would be undertaken on an annual basis under a management / legal agreement that would be needed in perpetuity. This could be adopted by the land-owner or a third party via the legal agreement.	<p>No upfront costs but some costs associated with ongoing costs of surveys and management actions in perpetuity, which could become significant.</p> <p>Mitigation may only be required if surveys identify a need.</p>
Maintain the existing hydrological regime of the SSSI.	This may include the pumping of water to a recharge trench to replicate the existing 'natural' groundwater supply that has been interrupted by the cutting	Reduction of impact	This option would require new infrastructure to collect water from the cutting and to pump it up to a new infiltration trench into the sand and gravel layer to recharge the site. Access would also be required.	The location of new infrastructure is yet to be determined and may require land take currently outside of the application boundary.	The application boundary and scheme description would potentially need to be amended to ensure any infrastructure associated with this measure could be constructed, operated and access provided for long term maintenance purposes.	The new pumping network and soakaway would need to be regularly maintained with access provided.	Capital costs associated with the new infrastructure and operating costs associated with operating and maintaining it.
Physical changes within the SSSI to extend the existing habitat types.	This would involve carefully planned and localised changes to the topography of the SSSI, and would	Offsetting impact	Unlikely to require any changes to the infrastructure design. A detailed Habitat Enhancement Plan would need to be prepared.	The greatest opportunity would be on the NW site that is owned by BAA. There may be some options for the SE Unit that is owned and managed by WWT, although	The current application boundary incorporates the extents of land designated within the boundary of the SSSI, within which it is expected that these	It would be expected that any changes to the SSSIs would need to be carefully monitored for 3 years +.	Costs associated with the development of the Habitat Enhancement Plan and its implementation including monitoring.

	be based on detailed modelling of the existing vegetation communities (e.g. extend the topographical variations.			less so. Other landowners may be affected. Both BAA and WWT (as well as NE) would need to be carefully consulted on the Habitat Enhancement Plan to ensure it can be agreed and delivered.	measures could be delivered and managed without requiring additional land beyond that already identified. Scheme description would need to be amended to incorporate these measures. Although works may be of a soft nature, the use of some equipment and small plant cannot be ruled out. This would require Assent from NE and permission from the landowners. Experience with BAA to date is that this may not be straight forward and could even be objected to or require acceptance of unreasonable levels of liability.		
Establish habitats similar to the interest features in land immediately adjacent to the SSSI.	This would include creating a parcel of land with a varied topography and a related hydrological regime, and establishing grassland using green hay from the SSSI.	Offsetting impact	The conditions of the SSSI would be re-created from land parcels flanking the brooks in/out of the SSSI, while avoiding significant risk of impacts from the proposed road. Requires careful design, alterations to topography and specialised planting in consultation with NE. A detailed Habitat Management Plan would likely be required to demonstrate to the relevant bodies how these habitats would be established and managed in the long term.	Discussions with adjacent landowners would need to be advanced, as their land would either need to be secured by way of prior agreed purchase to implement these measures, or via the DCO as essential landtake for mitigation purposes. With regards to the NW Unit, and assuming some tasks will require the use of equipment and plant, discussions with BAA would be required to understand any safeguarding issues that may limit how the work is undertaken.	The application boundary and scheme description would need to be amended to ensure this mitigation could be implemented. Although works may be of a soft nature, the use of some equipment and small plant cannot be ruled out. Permission will be required from the landowners. Experience with BAA to date is that this may not be straight forward and could even be objected to or require acceptance of unreasonable levels of liability.	Maintenance of site would be undertaken on an annual basis under a management / legal agreement that would be needed in perpetuity. This could be adopted by the land-owner or a third party via the legal agreement	Cost associated with the compulsory purchase of land, development of a Habitats Enhancement Plan and its implementation and any post works monitoring.
Re-storing natural flow along streams flowing through the SSSI	This would involve re-routing each stream through the low point of each	Reduction in impact – out of bank flows may help	Design would be undertaken by specialist hydromorphologists and modelled to indicate	Unlikely to affect any landowners other than those for the two SSSIs, although it will be important to check that	The application boundary and scheme description may need to be amended to ensure this mitigation could	Initial monitoring of effectivity of designed features and out of bank flows following storm	Costs associated with the development of a river restoration strategy and its

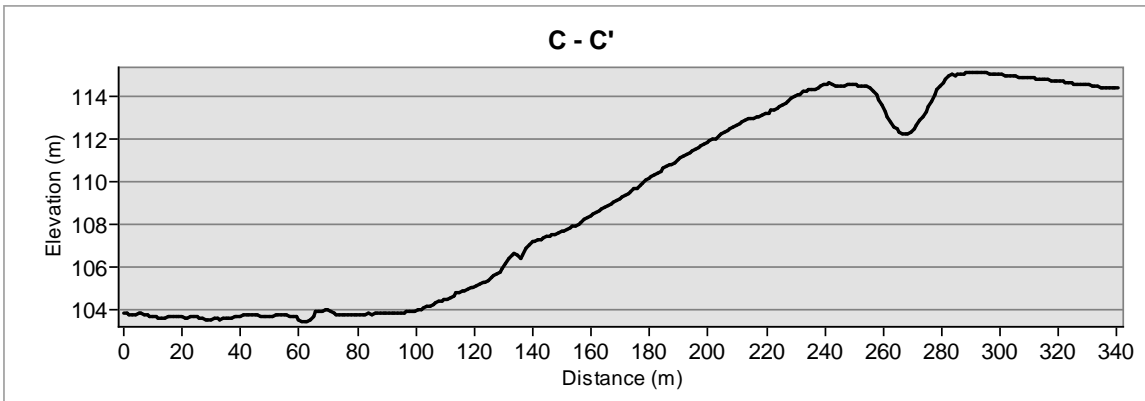
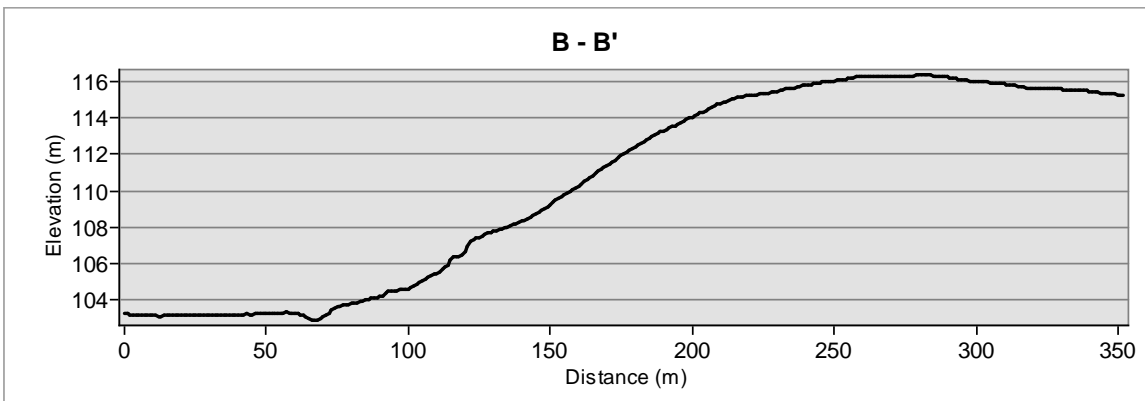
<p>units.</p>	<p>valley and restoring a more natural planform including meanders and features to encourage out of bank flows.</p>	<p>maintain wet conditions at each site but flooding is not the principle factor controlling MG4 hydrology and so this is unlikely to support grasslands across the entire site. It is therefore not a favoured option.</p>	<p>effectivity of proposed features and impact on flood risk at a range of design storm events. However, these watercourses are small, with low and ephemeral flows, and although channel form might be improved and localised out of bank flows encouraged, the frequency and spatial extent of any flooding may not change significantly. Improving conveyance may also improve drainage and lower the water table, which could be detrimental to the conservation status of the two SSSI units.</p>	<p>improved conveyance does not affect flood risk off-site.</p>	<p>be implemented.</p> <p>Although works may be of a soft nature, the use of some equipment and small plant cannot be ruled out. This would require Assent from NE, permission from the landowners, and Ordinary Watercourse consent from the LLFA. Experience with BAA to date is that this may not be straight forward and could even be objected to or require acceptance of unreasonable levels of liability.</p>	<p>events. Thereafter should be self-sustaining, but unlikely to maintain wet conditions across the entire SSSI site and might actually improve drainage and depress the water table.</p>	<p>implementation including monitoring.</p>
----------------------	---	---	--	---	---	---	---

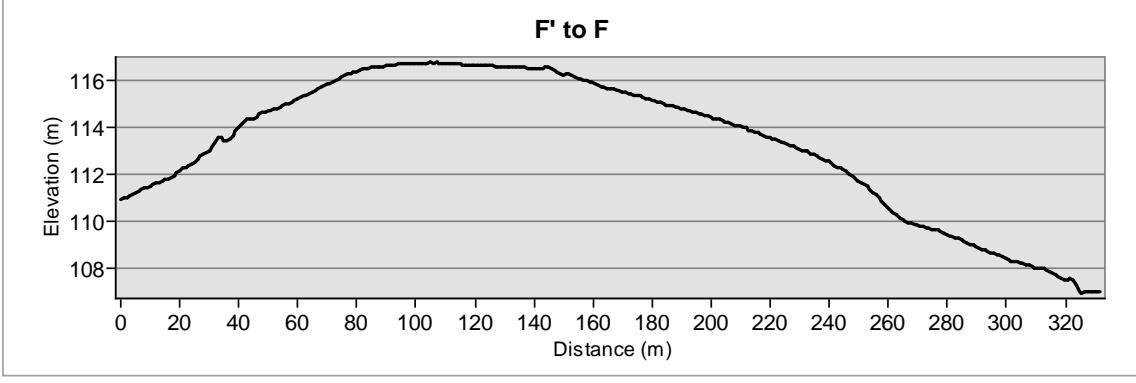
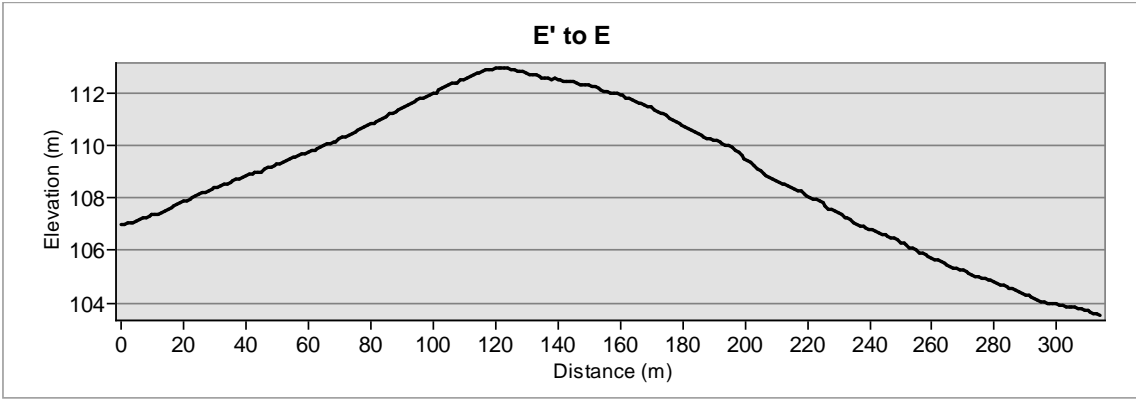
Sections

NW SSSI unit

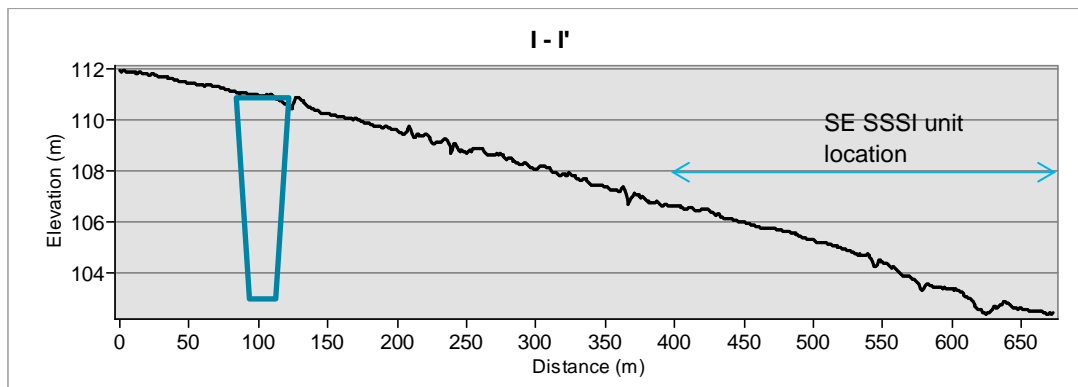
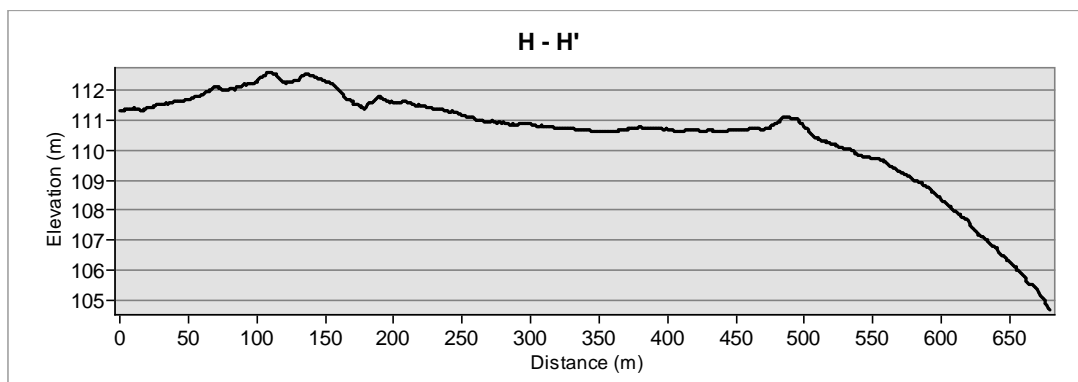
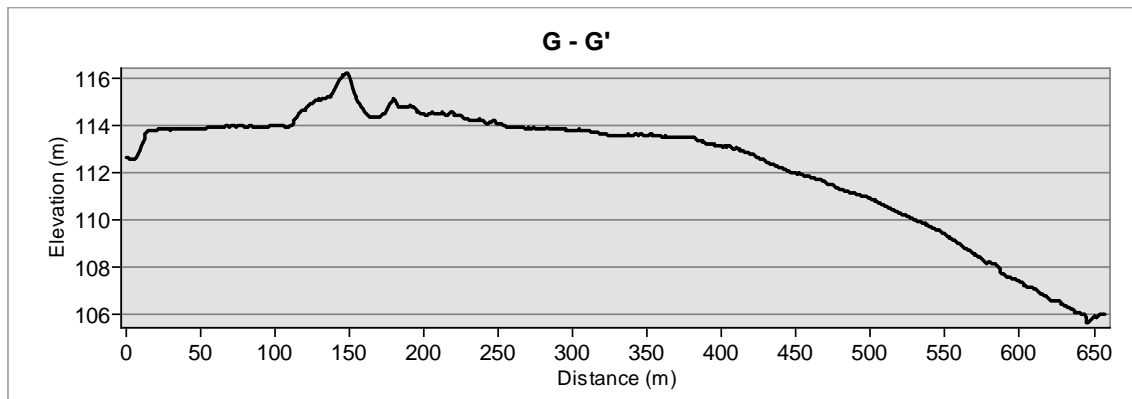


Note. Indicative cutting of up to 9m depth shown in blue.

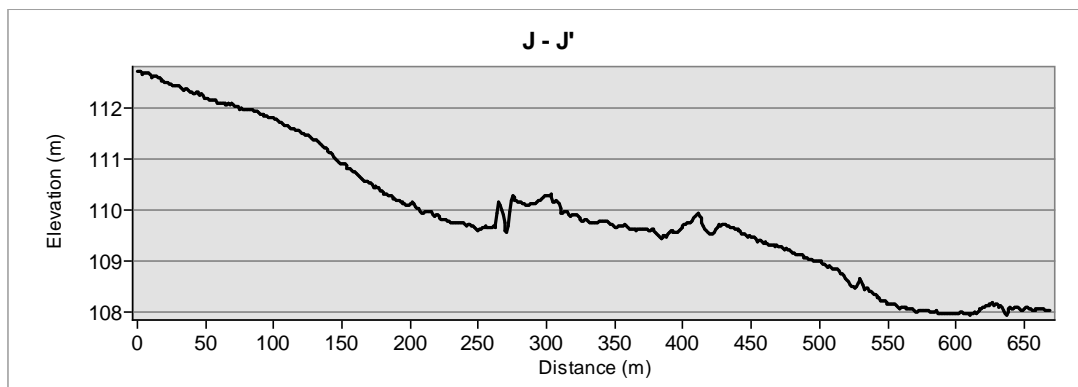


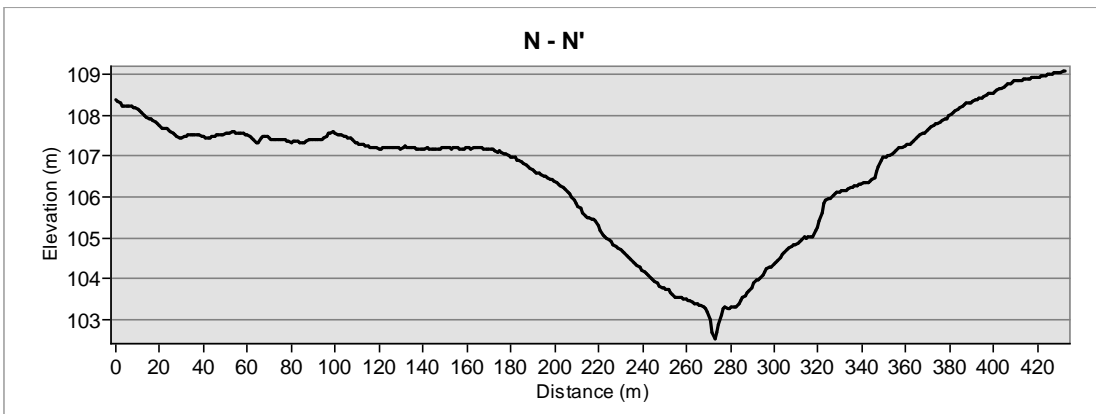
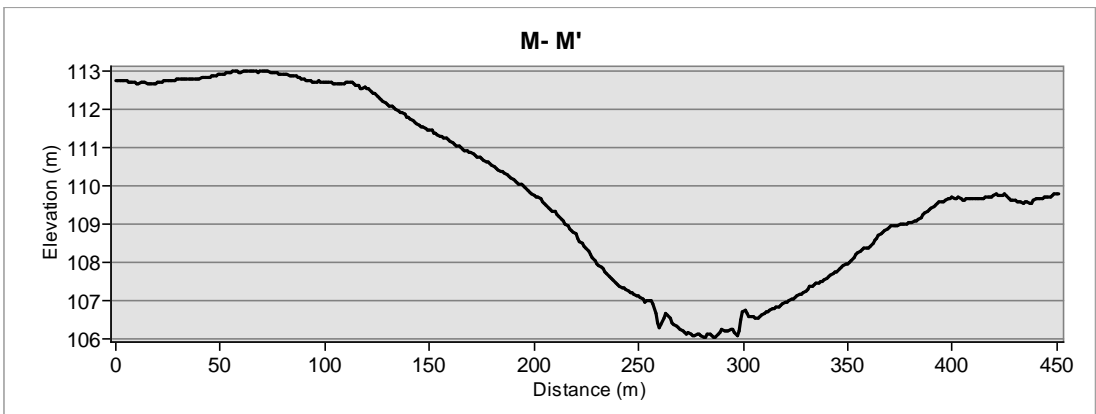
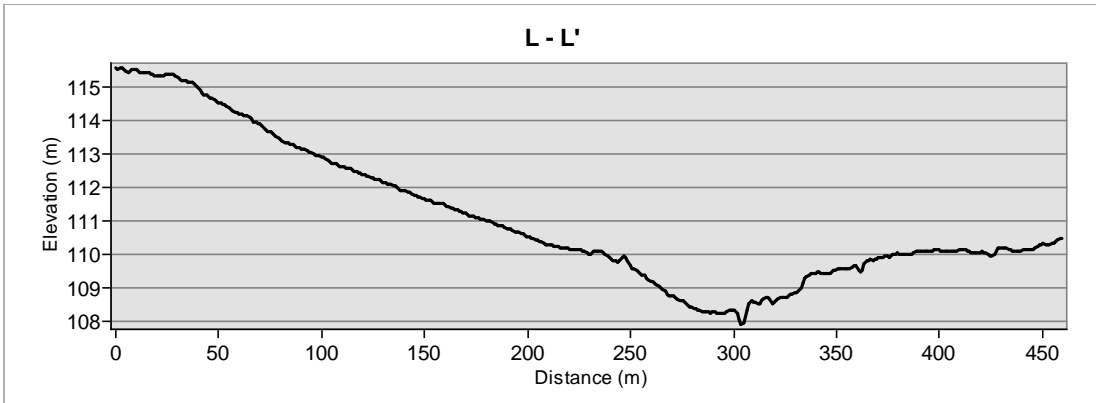
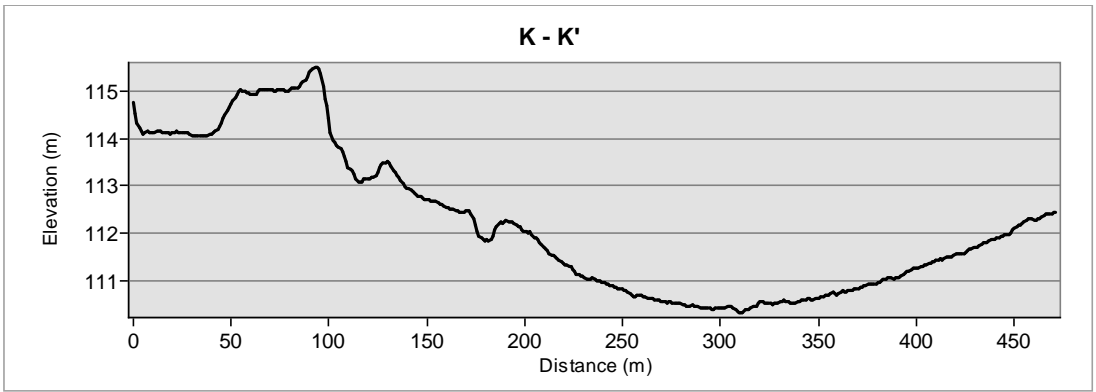


SE SSSI unit



Note. Indicative cutting of up to 8m depth shown in blue in this topographic section.





About AECOM

AECOM (NYSE: ACM) is built to deliver a better world. We design, build, finance and operate infrastructure assets for governments, businesses and organizations in more than 150 countries.

As a fully integrated firm, we connect knowledge and experience across our global network of experts to help clients solve their most complex challenges.

From high-performance buildings and infrastructure, to resilient communities and environments, to stable and secure nations, our work is transformative, differentiated and vital. A Fortune 500 firm, AECOM companies had revenue of approximately US\$19 billion during the 12 months ended June 30, 2015.

See how we deliver what others can only imagine at aecom.com and [@AECOM](https://twitter.com/AECOM)

Appendix D - Bickenhill Meadows SSSI *Preliminary Hydrological Investigation Technical Note V4.*

M42 JUNCTION 6 IMPROVEMENT SCHEME

***BICKENHILL MEADOWS SITE OF SPECIAL SCIENTIFIC
INTEREST – PRELIMINARY HYDROLOGICAL INVESTIGATION
TECHNICAL NOTE (V4)***

Prepared for: HIGHWAYS ENGLAND

Prepared by: AECOM

Project number: 60543032

Quality information

Prepared by

Tim Jones BSc (Hon) PhD
Water Scientist

Checked by

Owen Tucker BSc (Hon) MSc CEnv
MCIWEM Principal Environmental
Scientist
Philip Smart BSc MSc C Geol FGS
Technical Director, Hydrogeology

Approved by

Jamie Gleave MLPM (Hons) CEnv
CSci MIEMA MEnvSc
Associate Director
Graeme Cowling CEnv
Principal Environmental Consultant

Revision History

Revision	Revision date	Details	Authorized	Name	Position
Version 0	13.02.2018	Original Version	Jamie Gleave		Associate Director
Version 1	09.08.2018	Update	Jamie Gleave		Associate Director
Version 2	15.08.2018	Update	Jamie Gleave		Associate Director
Version 3	20.08.2018	Update	Jamie Gleave		Associate Director
	21.08.2018	Update	Graeme Cowling		Principal Consultant
Version 4	17.09.2018	Update	Jamie Gleave		Associate Director
			Graeme Cowling		Principal Consultant

Distribution List

Hard Copies PDF Required Association / Company Name

Prepared by AECOM, AECOM House, 179 Moss Lane, Altrincham, WA15 8FH, UK (www.aecom.com)

Project Number: **60543032**

AECOM Limited (hereafter referred to as "AECOM") has prepared this Report for the sole use of Highways England, in accordance with the Agreement under which our services were performed. No other warranty, expressed or implied, is made as to the professional advice included in this Report or any other services provided by AECOM. This Report is confidential and may not be disclosed by the Client or relied upon by any other party without the prior and express written agreement of AECOM.

The information contained in this Report is based upon information provided by others and upon the assumption that all relevant information has been provided by those parties from whom it has been requested and that such information is accurate. Information obtained by AECOM has not been independently verified by AECOM, unless otherwise stated in the Report.

The methodology adopted and the sources of information used by AECOM in providing its services are outlined in this Report. The work described in this Report is based on the conditions encountered and the information available during the said period of time. The scope of this Report and the services are accordingly factually limited by these circumstances.

AECOM disclaim any undertaking or obligation to advise any person of any change in any matter affecting the Report, which may come or be brought to AECOM's attention after the date of the Report.

Certain statements made in the Report that are not historical facts may constitute estimates, projections or other forward-looking statements and even though they are based on reasonable assumptions as of the date of the Report, such forward-looking statements by their nature involve risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from the results predicted.

AECOM specifically does not guarantee or warrant any estimate or projections contained in this Report. Unless otherwise stated in this Report, the assessments made assume that the sites and facilities will continue to be used for their current purpose without significant changes.

Copyright © This Report is the copyright of AECOM and its wholly owned subsidiary, AECOM Limited. Any unauthorised reproduction or usage by any person other than the addressee is strictly prohibited.

FOIA Disclaimer AECOM Limited considers that the following constitutes exempt information on grounds of confidentiality and commercially sensitive information under the terms of the Freedom of Information Act 2000, which shall not be disclosed to third parties. The enclosed information is not to be made available to the public for at least six years from the end of the project, unless specifically agreed otherwise.

Any specific enquiries about what may be commercially sensitive or queries about disclosure should be directed to **ian.bamforth@aecom.com**. We would be grateful to be informed of all requests by third parties for information contained in this document.

M42 Junction 6 Improvement Scheme – Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Preliminary Hydrological Investigation

Introduction

M42 Junction 6 provides connections between the national motorway network and the A45 Coventry Road, which provides strategic access to Birmingham to the west and Coventry to the east. Current congestion and journey reliability issues on the M42 and at Junction 6 are causing severe delays on parts of the strategic road network, as the junction does not have sufficient capacity to accommodate the predicted growth in traffic associated with future planned development in the area.

The M42 Junction 6 Improvement Scheme (the proposed scheme) has been developed by Highways England (HE) to provide a solution to improve junction capacity, support economic growth, improve access, and ensure the safe and reliable operation of the network.

The proposed scheme is currently being subject to a process of Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA), the design of which includes the following key components and works.

- A new junction approximately 1.8 km south of the existing Junction 6 off the M42 (referred to as M42 Junction 5A).
- A new 2.4 km long dual carriageway link road between M42 Junction 5A and Clock Interchange, with a free flow slip road to the A45 Coventry Road.
- Capacity and junction improvements at Clock Interchange.
- New free flow links between the A45 and M42 motorway at M42 Junction 6.
- The realignment and modification of the B4438 Catherine de Barnes Lane, Clock Lane and St. Peters Lane west of the M42 motorway, and of Eastway and the Middle Bickenhill Loop north east of M42 Junction 6.
- Modifications to the location and spacing of emergency refuge areas, overhead gantries and message signing along the M42 motorway.
- Modifications to the Gaelic Athletic Association (Páirc na hÉireann) sports facility.

A Ground Investigation is currently being undertaken to establish the existing ground conditions that would underlie key areas of the proposed scheme, and to obtain data for use in the EIA.

The proposed link road has been designed to be positioned below the flight path control zones of Birmingham International Airport, and to place much of the dual carriageway in cutting (up to 10m depth) in order to lower the road and thereby provide visual screening and noise attenuation benefits; however, construction of these earthworks has the potential to disrupt groundwater flows in the area.

The EIA process has so far identified that the proposed link road may also have an adverse impact on Bickenhill Meadows Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI), which consists of two separate units located either side of the proposed link road. The SSSI includes areas of wet woodland and wet meadows that support a range of plants and other species. The cutting and associated works are also in close proximity (within 300 m) of streams that flow through each SSSI unit, which may be impacted during the construction and operation phases.

Accordingly, the processes for maintaining the hydrology of the two SSSI units needs to be established in order to identify and understand the potential impacts of the proposed scheme on the SSSI, such that appropriate mitigation measures for any likely significant effects can be identified and, where possible, incorporated into its design. In particular, the importance of rainfall, groundwater, nearby streams and localised flooding needs to be investigated.

This Technical Note reports the outcomes of a preliminary investigation of the hydrology of the two SSSI units. It considers the soil and geological ground conditions from available data sources, the topography around the SSSI by reviewing LiDAR and contour data, and reports on the observations made during site visits (including one attended by Natural England). Based on preliminary findings, the note also considers the potential effects of the cutting and loss of surface water catchment, and sets out the scope of additional ground and field investigations that are being undertaken, as requested by Natural England. The preliminary findings of the investigation are reported, and potential mitigation and compensation measures are also discussed.

Proposed Link Road

The current general arrangement for the proposed link road is shown in Figure 1, set within its local context.

From M42 Junction 5A, the link road would initially travel north westwards through open fields to the north of Hampton Lane Farm, where it would cross a number of public rights of way. A roundabout would be constructed (Barber’s Coppice Roundabout) south of the SSSI which would provide a tie-in from the existing Catherine De Barnes Lane (both in a north and southbound direction) to the link road.

As the proposed link road continues north, it would cross Catherine De Barnes Lane approximately 70 m south of the T-junction of Shadowbrook Lane. Approximately 500m north of the crossing point with Catherine De Barnes Lane, a second local roundabout (Bickenhill Roundabout) would be constructed to provide a north and south tie-in with Catherine De Barnes Lane and St Peters Lane. Between these two local roundabouts, Catherine De Barnes Lane would be realigned at its furthest point approximately 20 m west of its current alignment.

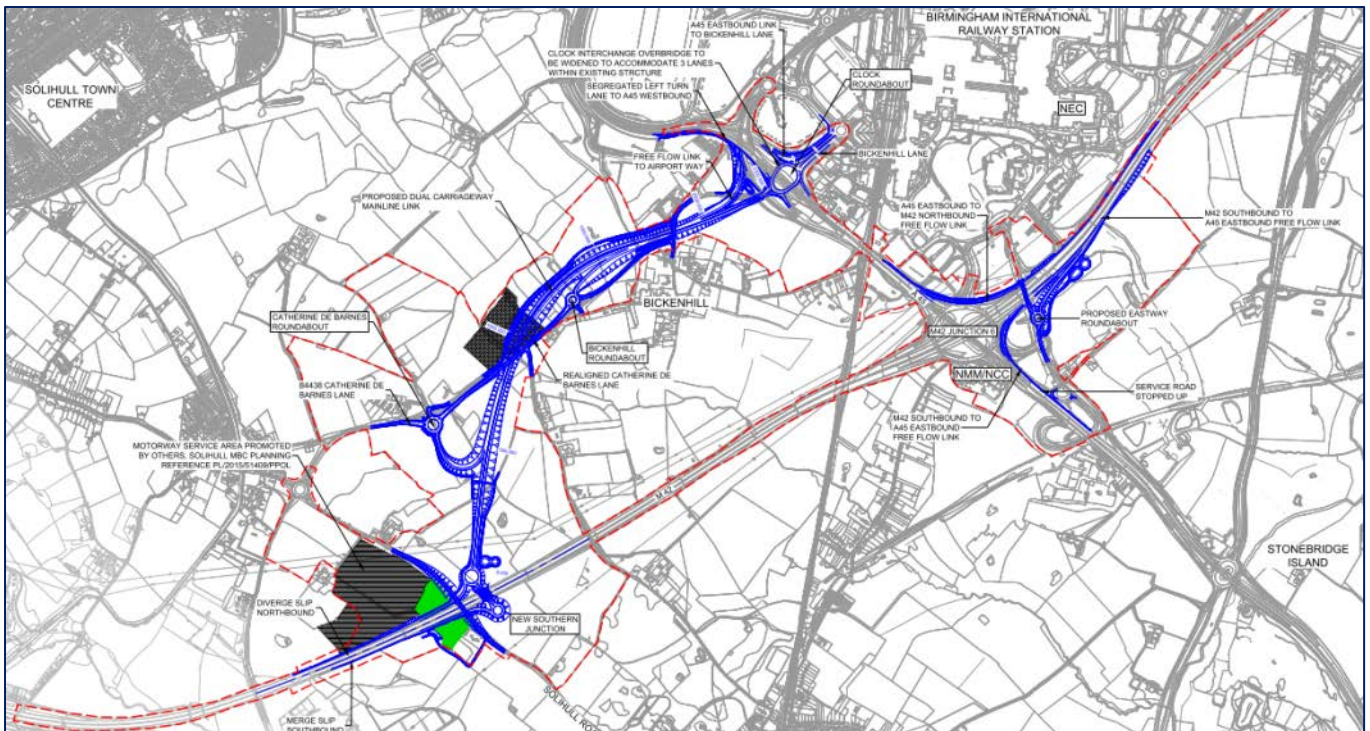


Figure 1: M42 Junction 6 Improvements – General Arrangement
 (source: extract from drawing HE551485-ACM-HGN-M42_GEN_ZZ_ZZ-DR-CH-0012 P02.3)

Figure 2 shows the current designs (as of 23/01/18) for the proposed scheme in relation in the SSSI units.

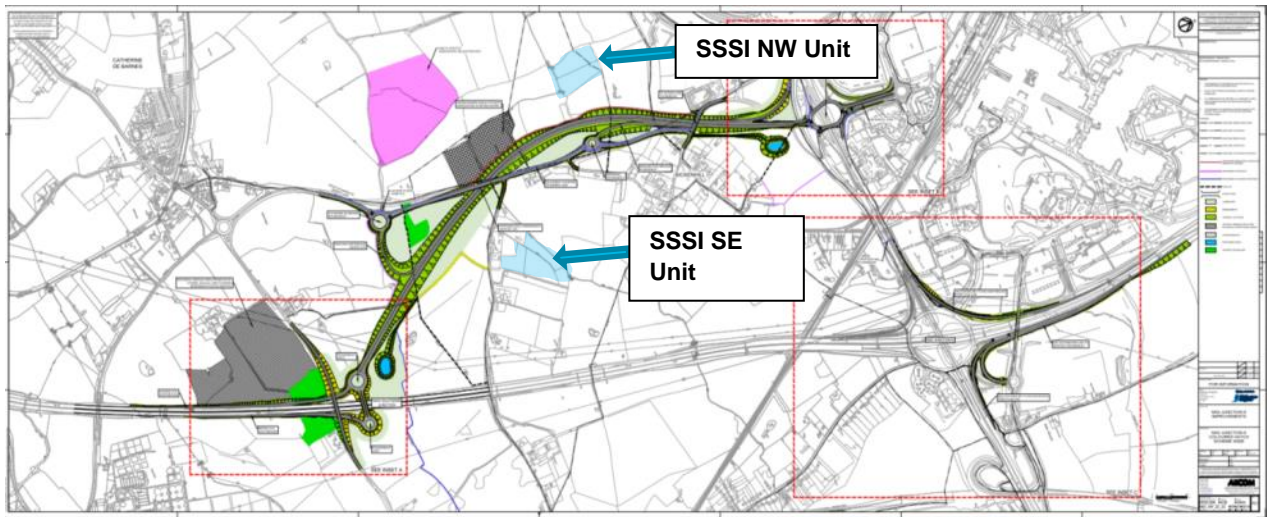


Figure 2: M42 Junction 6 design in relation to Bickenhill Meadows SSSI units and GAA relocation
Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Designation

Bickenhill Meadows SSSI is split between two units, located either side of Catherine de Barnes Lane (centred on approximate national grid references SP182822 and SP 188816) as shown in Figure 2 and on Ordnance Survey mapping in Figure 3. The total area designated covers 7.2 hectares and was notified in 1991.

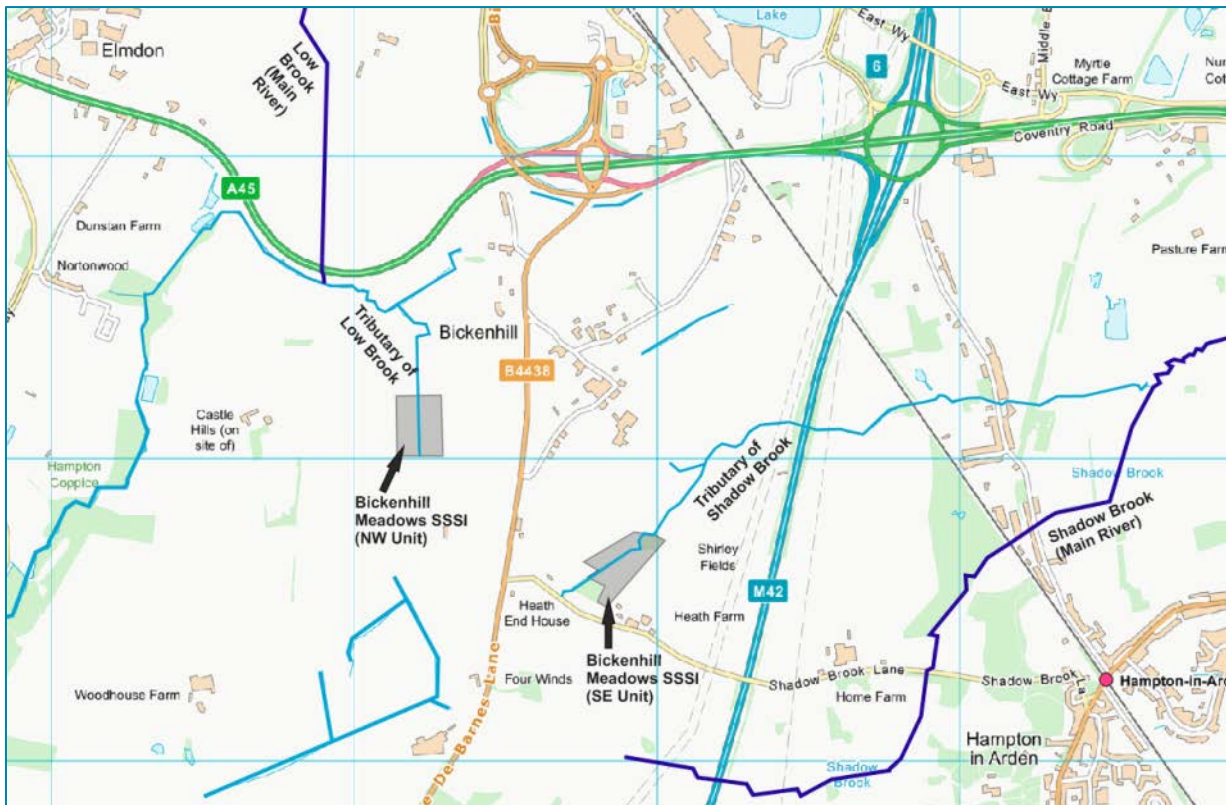


Figure 3. Location of the Bickenhill Meadows SSSI units, to west of the M42 Junction 6. (source: Ordnance Survey © Crown copyright and database rights 2018).

The Natural England citation¹ for the SSSI is as follows.

Bickenhill Meadows consists of two groups of fields comprising species-rich grassland situated to the south and west of the village of Bickenhill on predominantly neutral soils overlying Keuper Marl.

¹ <https://designatedsites.naturalengland.org.uk/SiteDetail.aspx?SiteCode=S1002847>

*The meadows comprise one of the richest grassland floras in the county with good examples of both meadow foxtail (*Alopecurus pratensis*), great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*), flood meadow and common knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*), crested dog's-tail (*Cynosurus cristatus*) meadow and pasture. Both grassland types have declined very severely nationally in the 20th century due to agricultural improvement. The West Midlands Region contains a major part of the national resource of the common knapweed – crested dog's-tail grassland type which is typically associated with level topography, loam or clay soils, moderately free drainage and the retention of traditional farming methods with small fields. There is a complex pattern of vegetation resulting from local variations in topography and drainage, such as the ridge and furrow pattern, evident in some of the fields. This has led to the development of mosaics where the main vegetation types intermingle, as well as to areas where each type can be recognised.*

*Further interest is provided by wetter areas characterised by rushes *Juncus* spp., sedges *Carex* spp. and tall herbs such as meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*) and great burnet. Both groups of meadows have streams and there is a good range of tree and shrub species in the hedgerows around the fields.*

Both units of the SSSI have a status of 'Unfavourable – Recovering'. However, the Natural England condition notes indicate that the southeastern SSSI shows a good cover of desirable species and may move to favourable in the near future.

Natural England's Management Principles for the site includes the following information with regard to drainage, *"For both the damper pastures and meadows, regular and careful maintenance of surface drainage including ditches and drains can be essential to prevent adverse changes in the plant composition of the sward. Deepening of surface drainage should be avoided."*

From the available information on the SSSI it is clear that the plant species in the wet meadows and woodland areas within the SSSI units require wet ground conditions, although subtle changes in topography and local features (such as the local ditches and spoil heaps from past clearing of them) exert an influence on the botanical communities and distinctive zones of MG4 (wetter) and MG5 (drier) plant communities according to the National Vegetation Classification (NVC). It is also not evident from Natural England's SSSI designation and management principles, or through consultation with Natural England and the Warwickshire Wildlife Trust (WWT), whether the maintenance of wet conditions in the SSSI is primarily dependent on surface water or groundwater inflow from the surrounding areas.

Shadowbrook Meadows Local Nature Reserve

The southeastern SSSI unit is wholly encompassed by the larger Shadowbrook Meadows Local Nature Reserve (LNR), which is owned and managed by WWT. The WWT website² describes the site as follows:

"The site contains old meadows and pasture with a stream and wet woodland. The small stream runs through the reserve and sumptuous hedgerows divide the site into two dry meadows, on the eastern side, with two wet meadows to the west. Unfertilised, unsprayed and unploughed, the meadows' diversity has been maintained over centuries by the unaltered, traditional haycutting and grazing regime".

Bickenhill Meadows SSSI / Shadowbrook Meadows LNR Site Visit Report

The Bickenhill Meadows SSSI was initially visited on 18/01/18 in dry conditions but following a week of occasional heavy rain showers and some light snow and sleet showers. It was subsequently visited in spring with representatives of Natural England on 26/04/18 in a period of prevailing dry conditions, and again on 02/05/18 following 12 hours of heavy rain showers, which had resulted in some waterlogging of the surface. The northwestern SSSI unit was visited during wintry showers on the 28/02/18 and with Natural England on 26/04/18 in fine weather. Numerous further visits have been taken to both units throughout the summer of 2018.

² Warwickshire Wildlife Trust – Shadowbrook Meadows website, <http://www.warwickshirewildlifetrust.org.uk/reserves/shadowbrook-meadows>, accessed 15/8/18.

Southeast (SE) SSSI Unit / Shadowbrook Meadows LNR

The southeastern unit consists of four fields and wet woodland at the far north of the site, and (along with the LNR) covers 4.4 hectares. The stream that flows through the centre of the site (from southwest to northeast) is a tributary of Shadow Brook. It meets Shadow Brook to the east of the M42 approximately 2 km downstream at NGR SP 20625 82231. The dry meadows are to the east of the site, and wet meadows are to the west. General views of the wet meadows are shown in Photos 1 to 6 under different conditions.



Photo 1 (top left) and Photo 2 (top right) Wet meadow fields at Bickenhill Meadows SSSI SE Unit in cold/wet conditions; Photo 3 (middle left) Wet meadow fields at Bickenhill Meadows SSSI SE Unit in warm/dry conditions; Photo 4 (middle right) and Photo 5 (bottom left) Bickenhill Meadows SSSI SE Unit in warm/dry conditions; Photo 6 (bottom right) Bickenhill Meadows SSSI unit southern field after a prolonged period of hot weather.

The topography of the site is generally level, with a gentle rise in elevation away from the tributary of Shadow Brook, which flows through the approximate centre of the site. The wet meadow to the north of the brook is relatively flat and may have been the route of the former watercourse prior to digging of the new brook course to the south and the ephemeral ditch to the north (which collects runoff from the steeper hillside slopes but is essentially a soakaway).

Along the edge of the brook there is a slight rise in the elevation that may be a relic of digging out or maintaining the brook. From here north the land gently falls before rising towards the ditch along the northern boundary of the SSSI. Within this general topographic form are isolated depressions that form part of a complex ridge and furrow pattern extending across the site, and which are a relic of historic ploughing practices. This is very subtle with only small changes in elevation of the order of tens of centimeters, but sufficient enough to result in significant changes in plant communities as depicted by the varying position of MG4 and MG5 plant communities. Ground elevation decreases slightly to the north as the stream flows downslope, but the overall gradient across the site is minor.

To the south of the brook, the ground rises earlier and the plant communities appear to be less diverse and well developed. A gas main runs east-west across this field, the route indicated by a line of flushes suggesting that soil hydrology has been locally affected. Due to the intervening presence of the brook, the elevation of this field, and the angle of the slope, it is unlikely to be affected by the proposed scheme.

There is a small pond towards the centre of southern field of the LNR site (but not within the SSSI) with emergent reed vegetation and which is surrounded by a stock proof fence (see Photo 2). The origins of the pond are not known, but when observed in very wet conditions a 'trickle' of water flowed from the pond and overland to the north to ultimately meet the tributary of Shadow Brook, possibly as a result of any undersoil drainage being blocked. The possibility that the pond could be a spring cannot be ruled out.

The source of the tributary of Shadow Brook is mapped by Ordnance Survey as being immediately north of Shadowbrook Lane to the south of the SE SSSI unit. Here lateral ephemeral drainage ditches from the road coalesce and flow north beneath the caravan park site and emerge at the southern border of the SSSI. There is a pond on the opposite (south) side of Shadowbrook Lane to the mapped source of the stream, which collects water from adjacent road and agricultural drainage. The topography of the adjacent fields gently slopes towards this point, creating a natural focal point for drainage to collect. The connectivity of this pond to the stream on the opposite side of the road was not clear, but mapping suggests a culvert beneath the road which was not visible amongst the thick bramble vegetation. Significant amounts of standing water were observed in the ditches adjacent to the culvert after heavy rainfall, indicative of impeded flow through the culvert, presumably due to siltation and blockage by large woody debris and decomposing organic matter. However, it appears that the brook is likely to be rain fed, receiving drainage also from surrounding agricultural land and Shadowbrook Lane. There may also be drainage from the small caravan park site under which the brook flows prior to emerging in the SSSI.

Given its small size, intermittent and generally low flows, the brook is expected to suffer from water quality issues typical of an arable catchment, plus drainage from local roads and potentially other sources, such as runoff from the caravan site.

There is also an ephemeral drainage ditch bordering the northwest of the site (Photo 7), which varies between 1 and 1.5 m wide. This was largely dry on the majority of site visits, with some ponded water in places of 1-2 cm depth adjacent to the upper wet meadow. However, when observed after heavy rain there was obvious flow in the ditch, which presumably was sourced from runoff from the adjacent arable field which slopes significantly down to the SSSI. As the ditch enters the alder woodland at the northern extent of the SSSI there was a small amount of flow even during the drier site visits, which drains into the tributary of Shadow Brook (approximate NGR SP 18950 81743), see Photo 8.



Photo 7 (left) Ponded water in agricultural drainage ditch at NW border of SE SSSI Unit; Photo 8 (right) confluence of the tributary of Shadow Brook and the drainage ditch within the alder woodland; Photo 9. Furrows and depressions saturated with water following rainfall in meadow field of SE SSSI Unit.

Within the SE SSSI Unit the tributary of Shadow Brook is very straight and could have initially been an agricultural drainage ditch. It is around 0.5 m wide and water depth was in the region of 3-5 cm deep when observed on the site visits on the 02/05/18 (Photos 10 and 11). The bed was generally covered by accumulations of fine sediment (and leaf litter in the autumn), although some small accumulations of gravel of 4-5 mm in diameter were also evident.

Towards the centre of the SE SSSI Unit the brook is culverted under a grassed land bridge through a plastic pipe of around 400 mm diameter (Photo 12). Upstream the culvert is partially buried, and there is potential for impoundment of flow during extreme rainfall events, which may result in occasional flooding of the immediate grasslands, although there was no evidence of this. Several blockages across the stream from woody debris and accumulations of leaves were observed during the site visits, which again could cause localised impoundment of flows and encourage local out of bank events. Connectivity to the surrounding floodplain is good in some sections, particularly on the left bank in the northern field. However, the stream is not considered significant enough in size to cause widespread out of bank events across the grasslands and woodland, and Natural England and WWT are not aware of any widespread flooding at the site resulting from out of bank stream flows. However, the brook may locally support groundwater levels in the close vicinity of the channel, and it is possible that soil on either side has been compacted in places due to the past placing of dredgings, and this may influence soil hydrology on the upslope side by helping to maintain wetter ground conditions.

In the northeastern (wet) field of the SE SSSI unit, the ridge and furrow topography gives rise to diverse ecological communities. The furrows tend to be saturated and support grassland species designated as MG4 under the National Vegetation Classification (NVC). MG4 represents a nationally rare flood meadow community. Characteristic species include greater burnet (*Sanguisobra officinalis*) and meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*). The ridges are drier and support MG5 neutral grassland species with assemblages of English crested dog's tail (*Cynosurus cristatus*) and common knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*), amongst others. Subtle changes in colour across the wet meadow, shown in Photo 1, indicate the changes in vegetation across the site.

When the SE SSSI unit was observed following heavy rainfall on 02/05/18 the entire site was extremely wet, with most grassland areas appearing to be fully saturated (Photo 9). All furrows and depressions that were observed during the visit contained surface water, including in the generally drier meadow fields. This observational evidence indicates that the moisture source for the wet grasslands is most probably rainwater, which is slow to drain away due to the poor permeability of the subsurface layers.



Photo 10 (left) and Photo 11 (centre): Tributary of Shadow Brook within the wet woodland. Photo 12: (right) Culvert exit downstream of the grassed land bridge.

Northwest (NW) SSSI Unit

The NW SSSI unit is a small, roughly square grassland area of 2.7 ha, bordered on all sides by a scrub and woodland margin (Photo 13). A tributary of Low Brook flows from south to north and divides the field approximately in half, with the topography rising away from the tributary gently on both sides initially, becoming steeper further field. The brook itself is surrounded by intermittent hedgerow vegetation. Immediately south of the site is a historic landfill site of raised elevation, from which groundwater (of unknown quality) may flow out towards the SSSI, as indicated by iron staining seeping from the embankment.

The watercourse appears to emanate from numerous ephemeral drainage ditches which flow around the elevated historic landfill area and coalesce at the south of the site to then flow north through the SSSI. A further drainage ditch flows north along the western boundary of the site. As the watercourse flows north through the SSSI unit it widens out into a very silted marshland area, with little discernable surface water flow (Photo 14), before reverting to a well-defined stream of up to 2.5m width (Photo 15) which has generally good floodplain connectivity within the SSSI, and emergent macrophytic vegetation in places. The watercourse is not considered of sufficient size to cause significant flooding of the adjacent fields.



Photo 13 (left), Photo 14 (centre) and Photo 15 (right). Bickenhill Meadows SSSI NW Unit.

Vegetation patterns on the eastern side of the SSSI indicate that there may be a spring just upslope of the tributary of Low Brook towards the centre of the site. This is indicated by a slightly raised area with a distinct and 'spongy' vegetation assemblage, which is different in character from the surrounding communities of MG4 grasslands (including great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*) and meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*) and MG5 grasslands (including knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*)) that are found across the eastern field of the site. The wetter ground conditions may also be influenced by dredged material

placed in a bund along the eastern bank, which may be compacting the soil below and reducing permeability.

The western field has a generally drier and more uniform character than the eastern field (Photo 16), and is at a slightly greater elevation than the eastern field. The spatial distribution of the MG4 and MG5 grasslands across both fields is a likely consequence of local variability in moisture content in the upper 30-40 cm of soil, with tussocks and ridges across the site providing slightly drier conditions than localised depressions and troughs.



Photo 16 (left) – eastern field within the NW SSSI Unit showing the fringing blackthorn trees. Photo 17 (right) tributary of Low Brook immediately north of the SE SSSI Unit boundary looking towards Birmingham International Airport.

As the tributary of Low Brook flows out of the SSSI to the north of the site, the watercourse becomes a perfectly straight (artificially straightened), deeply incised drainage channel with a width of around 1 m (see Photo 17). This flows north to Low Brook, which is then culverted beneath the Birmingham International Airport runway.

Ground Condition and Soils

According to the British Geological Survey's Geology of Britain website (<http://mapapps.bgs.ac.uk/geologyofbritain3d/>) the bedrock geology beneath both SSSI units is Sidmouth Mudstone Formation (Figure 4). No superficial deposits are recorded below the SE SSSI unit, while alluvium (clay, silt, sand and gravel) is found around the stream through the NW SSSI unit (Figure 5).

The alluvium deposits at the northwestern SSSI unit are Secondary 'A' aquifer. The Sidmouth Mudstone Formation is classified as Secondary 'B' aquifer. Secondary A aquifer are permeable layers capable of supporting water supplies at a local rather than strategic scale, and in some cases forming an important source of base flow to rivers. Secondary B aquifer are predominantly lower permeability layers which may store and yield limited amounts of groundwater due to localised features such as fissures, thin permeable horizons and weathering.

Borehole records collected from historic ground investigations undertaken during the development of the M42 motorway in the 1970s and 1980s showed that groundwater was generally encountered within 10m of the ground surface adjacent to the M42 at Junction 6. The nearest borehole records for the NW SSSI unit shows depth to groundwater of 6.75m at the western extent of the SSSI (within 50m of the northwestern corner of the SSSI), as recorded in 1978 (reference SP18SE/511)³, and the borehole log indicates sand and gravel pockets within clay to a depth of 4.7m. Another borehole approximately 130m to the south of the SSSI had a depth to water of 3.0m, also in 1978 (reference SP18SE/510)⁴. The borehole log here indicated sandy clay and gravel to a depth of 1.3m, with stiffer clay below to a depth of 5.8m, underlain by mudstone.

Further ground investigations were undertaken to the north of the NW SSSI unit in 2011 in relation to the Birmingham International Airport runway extension and re-routing of the A45⁵. The nearest borehole was

³British Geological survey, Geology of Britain website, available at <http://mapapps.bgs.ac.uk/geologyofbritain3d/index.html> (accessed 20/5/18)

⁴British Geological survey, Geology of Britain website, available at <http://mapapps.bgs.ac.uk/geologyofbritain3d/index.html> (accessed 20/5/18)

⁵ Birmingham Airport (December 2011) Factual Report on Ground Investigation for the Proposed Runway Extension at Birmingham Airport,

located approximately 250m north of the SSSI unit, adjacent to the tributary of Low Brook (i.e. towards the valley bottom). This borehole (reference CP26) indicated slightly gravelly sandy clay with gravelly sand lenses to 2.2m, underlain by Mercia mudstone, with groundwater struck at 4.2m depth (in October 2011). A borehole approximately 380m north of the SSSI (reference CPRC31) recorded slightly sandy clay to 1.65m underlain by Mercia Mudstone group. No groundwater was encountered (in October 2011).

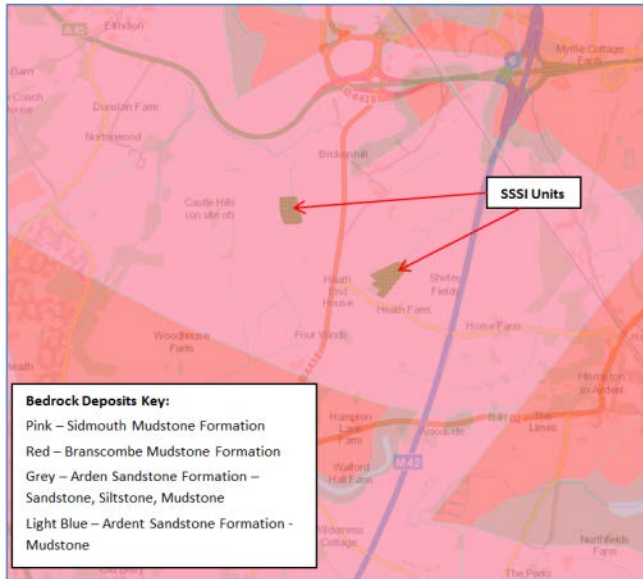


Figure 4. Bedrock deposits in the area around Bickenhill Meadows SSSI (source: British Geological Survey Geindex website, <http://www.bgs.ac.uk/geindex>).

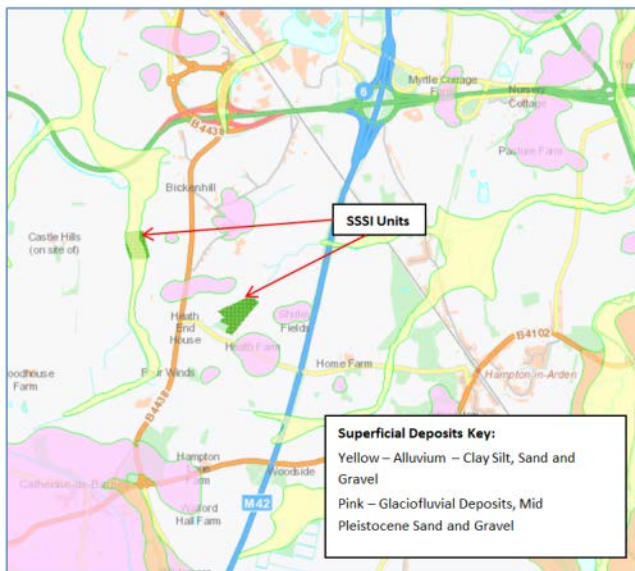


Figure 5. Superficial deposits in the area around Bickenhill Meadows SSSI (source: British Geological Survey Geindex website, <http://www.bgs.ac.uk/geindex>).

There are no historic borehole records in the immediate vicinity of the SE SSSI unit. The nearest is 340m to the east of the site (SP18SE/26B) and was drilled as part of the ground investigation for the M42 in 1970. This borehole had a depth to water of 11.05m. The borehole log indicates that the upper layers consisted of silty clay (weathered mudstone), with lumps of hard mudstone apparent from 4.45m depth, and weathered mudstone extending to the borehole base at 13.55m.

According to the Environment Agency there are no groundwater abstractions within 3 km of either SSSI unit and Solihull Metropolitan Borough Council has confirmed that there are five known Private Water Supplies within 2 km of the site, although exact locations have not been provided.

No springs are marked on current Ordnance Survey mapping in the immediate vicinity of the SSSI units, or on historical mapping that is available online. The nearest spring is marked ('issues' on Ordnance Survey mapping) approximately 500m to the southeast of the SE SSSI Unit at the source of Shadow Brook. When visited on site on 27/10/17, Shadow Brook was completely dry at its source and along its channel until east of the M42. This suggests that there may be low groundwater levels, or that there may only be an ephemeral groundwater input at times of high groundwater level conditions. While several pockets of sand and gravel that could contain significant groundwater are mapped in the area, particularly on higher ground, these do not extend to the SSSIs, although it is not currently known whether this is simply due to a lack of available information. The ongoing Ground Investigation for the proposed scheme will help clarify the full spatial location of the sand and gravel pockets.

Cranfield University's Soilscales website (<http://www.landis.org.uk/soilscales/>) indicates that the soil across the study area, including both SSSI units, is slowly permeable seasonally wet slightly acid base-rich loamy and clayey soils. Habitats typically associated with such soils are seasonally wet pastures and woodlands.

Topographic Survey

LiDAR topographic data has been obtained from the UK Government's Open Data website (<https://data.gov.uk/>) for the area covering the two SSSI units. This is shown in Figure 6 overlain onto Ordnance Survey Mapping. The surrounding topography is also shown in contour form in Figure 7. Areas of the highest elevation (shown as pale green shading in Figure 6) are located: i) immediately to the east of the northwestern SSSI unit; ii) at Bickenhill village; iii) at Catherine de Barnes Lane north of the Shadowbrook Lane junction; and iv) close to Four Winds to the south of the SE SSSI unit. Areas of progressively lower elevation are found along the streams that flow through each SSSI (yellow to light brown to dark brown shading).

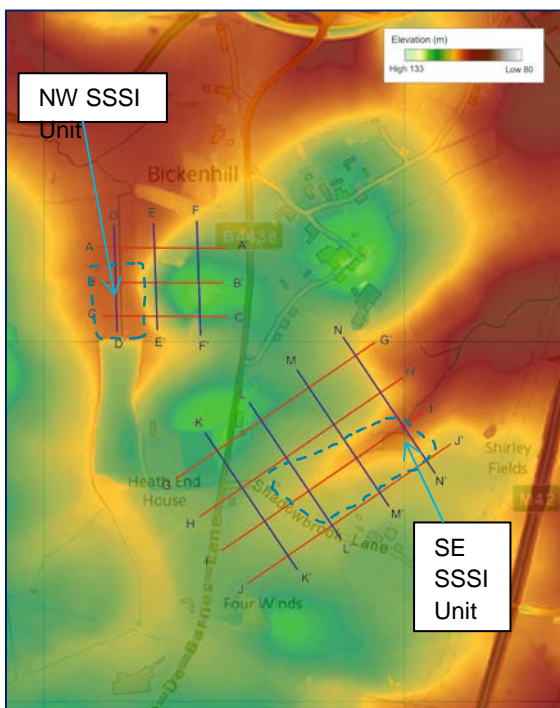


Figure 6. LiDAR data (source: UK open data website) overlain on Ordnance Survey data (crown copyright and database rights 2018 Ordnance Survey). Solid lines indicate locations of topographic sections, as shown in Appendix 1. Dashed lines indicate approximate SSSI locations. The figure shows a surface water divide between the two sites running NE-SW.

Around the SE SSSI unit the topography gently declines in elevation from the east, south and west towards the tributary of Shadow Brook, which has gentle valley slopes surrounding it as it flows to the northeast. Similarly, the northwestern SSSI unit has slopes falling away from the east, south and west, with a gentle valley forming to the north as the stream in the SSSI flows towards Low Brook. A series of topographic sections have been derived from the LiDAR data. The section lines are indicated and labelled in Figure 6, and are all presented in Appendix 1.

It is clear from the sections that there is a general decline in elevation from east to west towards the NW SSSI unit (sections A-C). This is essentially a valley side to the tributary of Low Brook. As the new dual carriageway would be located to the east of the NW SSSI (see Figures 1 and 2) there is potential for flow pathways between the proposed scheme and the downslope SSSI. If construction and operational runoff was not properly controlled, and appropriate mitigation measures not put into place, then there could be adverse impacts to habitats and water quality within the SSSI unit from this runoff. However, the proposed scheme includes mitigation for all potential adverse impacts from road drainage and spillage incidents during construction and operation.

There is also a decline in elevation from south to north towards the NW SSSI unit (sections D-F). This includes a field directly south of the SSSI unit which is elevated in comparison to the surrounding land, and is a former landfill site.

The topographic long sections for the SE SSSI unit (sections G-J) indicate a general decline in elevation from the south of Shadowbrook Lane towards the SSSI, while the cross sections (sections K-N) indicate gentle valley slopes rising each side of the watercourse. As designs indicate that the new dual carriageway will cross Catherine de Barnes Lane just south of the Shadowbrook Lane junction, and will continue in a southeast direction (Figure 8), there is potential for surface water flows between the proposed scheme and the SSSI unit. Again, this could have impacts on the habitats in the SSSI if appropriate mitigation for surface water runoff from construction and operation was not implemented; however, various mitigation measures are built into the proposed scheme design.

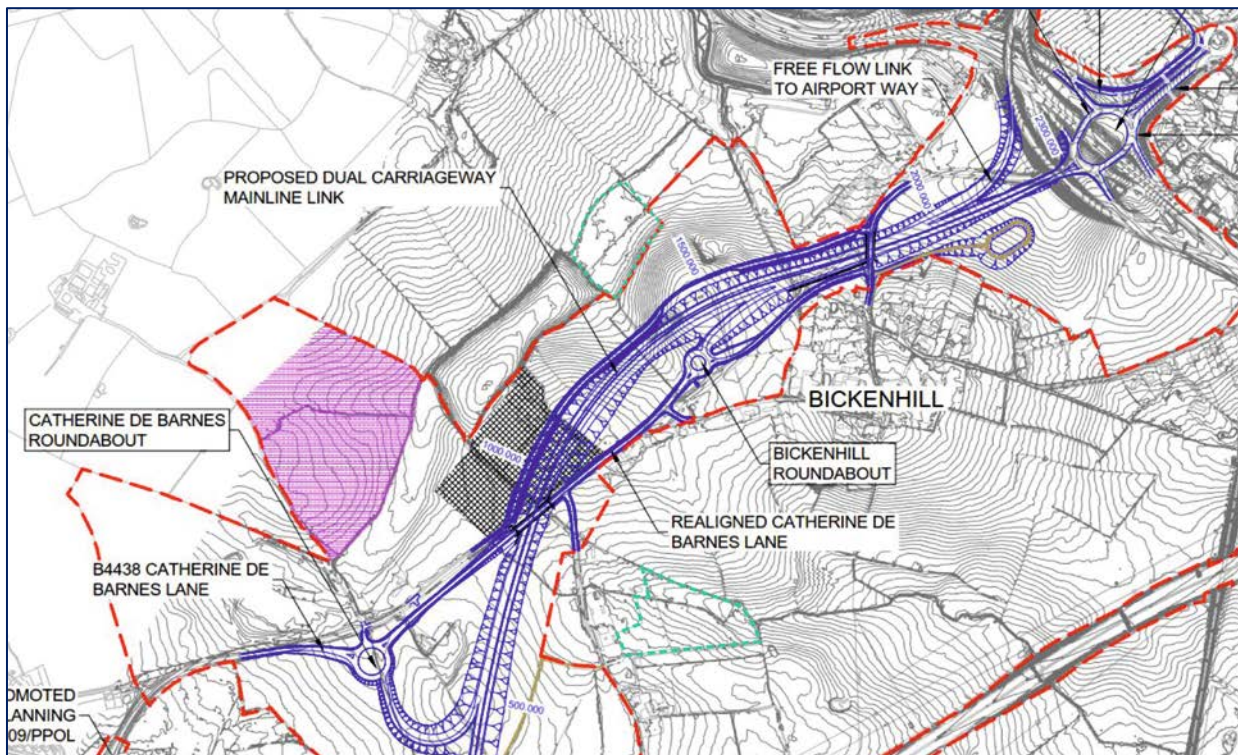


Figure 7. Contour map to show topography surrounding the two SSSI units. SSSI units are outlined in a green dashed line, with the proposed scheme red line boundary shown in red). Contours were derived from topographic survey undertaken at PCF Stage 2 for the proposed scheme.

In Figure 8, the catchments for each SSSI unit have been derived from the LiDAR data. The NW SSSI unit has a noticeably larger catchment than the SE SSSI unit, and extends a considerable distance to the southwest where it is interrupted by the Grand Union Canal near Catherine de Barnes. On the basis of the approximate road alignment shown in Figure 8, the proportion of the catchment lost for each SSSI unit would be in the region of 3% for the NW unit and 14% for the SE unit. This is an approximation, and can be updated following release of a shapefile for the general arrangement of the proposed scheme from the design team.

The site observations and topographic investigation of LiDAR data suggest that surface water flows are important contributors to the habitats in the two SSSI units, particularly in the close vicinity of the channels. However, significant flooding of the units is very unlikely and it is more likely that rainfall combined with the ridge and furrow topography and localised hillslope runoff is the most significant source of water controlling the hydrology of the wet meadows. The role of groundwater flow is unclear, but features such as the apparent spring in the NW SSSI suggest that it is a contributor, at least in certain locations.

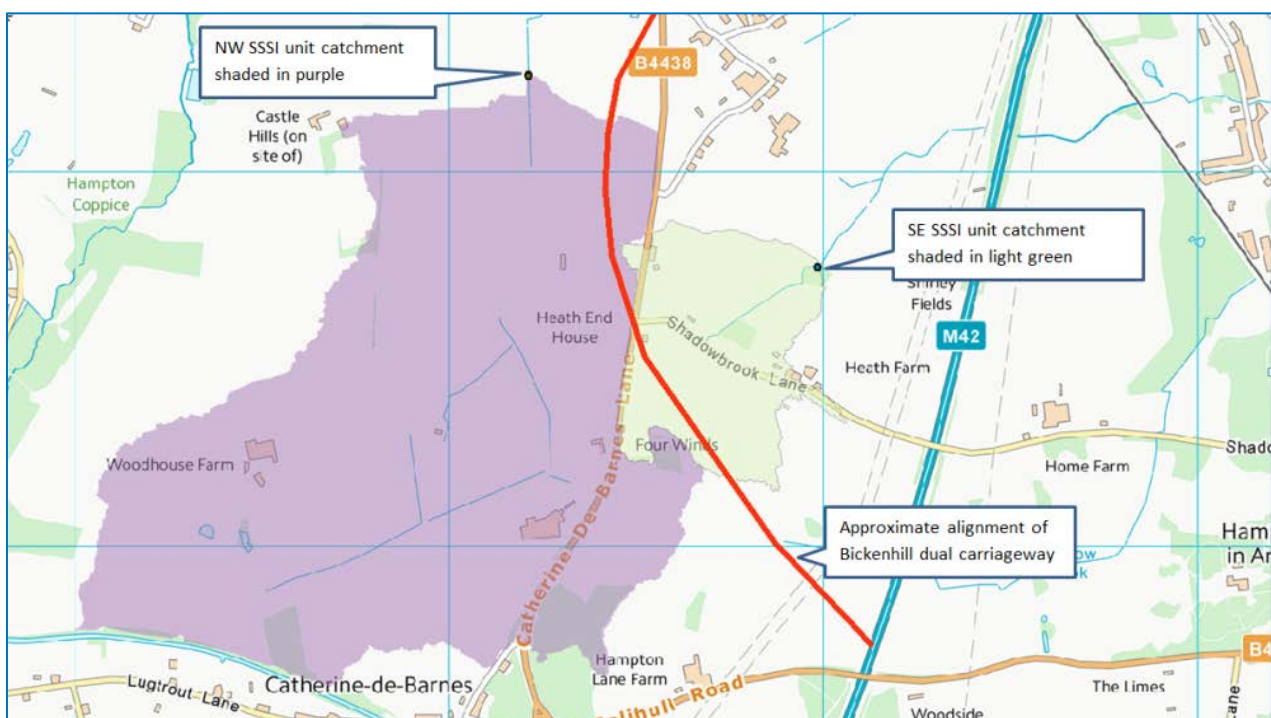


Figure 8. Catchment boundaries as determined from GIS analysis, with approximate road alignment overlain in red.

Ground Investigation

The Ground Investigation currently being undertaken as part of the proposed scheme will provide some understanding of groundwater levels in the vicinity of the SSSI and the extent to which they may intersect with the wet meadows and woodlands. It will also reveal whether glacial sand and gravel deposits extend to, or intersect with, the two SSSI units.

The design of the proposed link road indicates that in places the cuttings will have a depth of up to 10 m below existing ground level. Adjacent to the SE SSSI unit, the cutting would have depths varying between 5 and 8 m below existing ground level, while adjacent to the NW SSSI unit depths would be between 0 and 9 m lower than existing levels. The potential for drawdown of groundwater is thought to be greatest where the cutting will intersect patches of glacial sands and gravel and Arden Sandstone. There are no mapped Arden Sandstone outcrops adjacent to the SSSIs that would be impacted by the cutting (see Figure 4), but there are deposits of glacial sand and gravel as indicated in Figure 9 and 10. Drawdown from these deposits could impact on lateral groundwater flow towards the SSSIs, and it remains a possibility that they are more extensive than current mapping suggests. The potential for drawdown in

areas of Sidmouth Mudstone Formation is likely to be much reduced in comparison to the areas of sand and gravel deposits.

Given that groundwater in the area has historically been within 10m of the surface, and that in places the cutting is to be up to 10m deep, there is some potential for disruption of groundwater flows. While groundwater flow is not currently considered to be the primary source of water maintaining wet conditions and streamflow in the SSSI units, it is not ruled out as having a contributory role, particularly if the sand and gravel is more spatially extensive than mapped. As such, the relationship between groundwater levels at the site of the proposed road and at the two SSSI units needs to be better understood to determine whether the cutting would have any impact. To achieve this, the Ground Investigation for the proposed scheme has been extended to take account of the SSSI units.

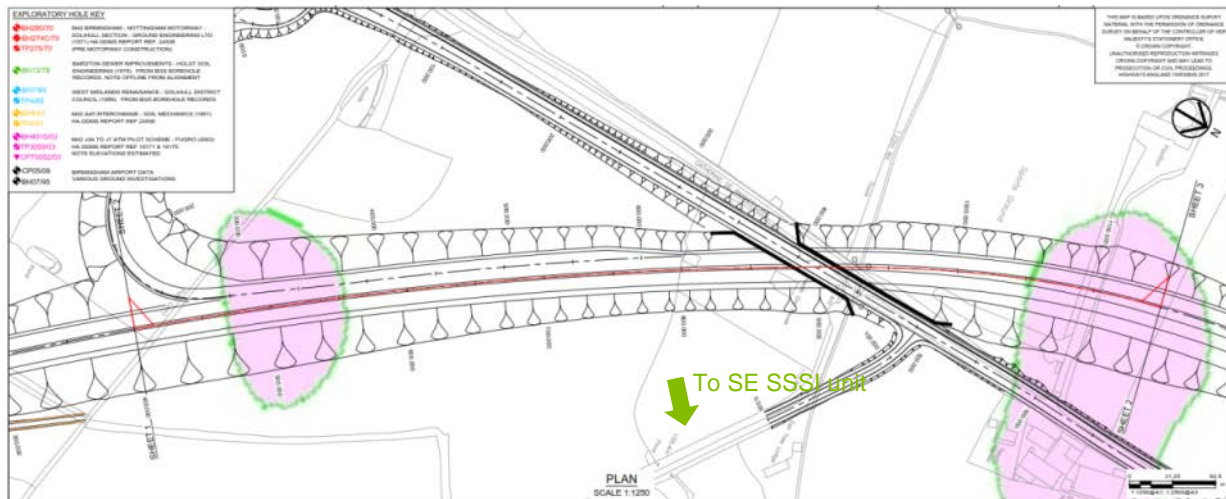


Figure 9. Location of Glacial Sands and Gravels along the proposed link road (shown by Pink shading), in the vicinity of the southeastern SSSI unit.

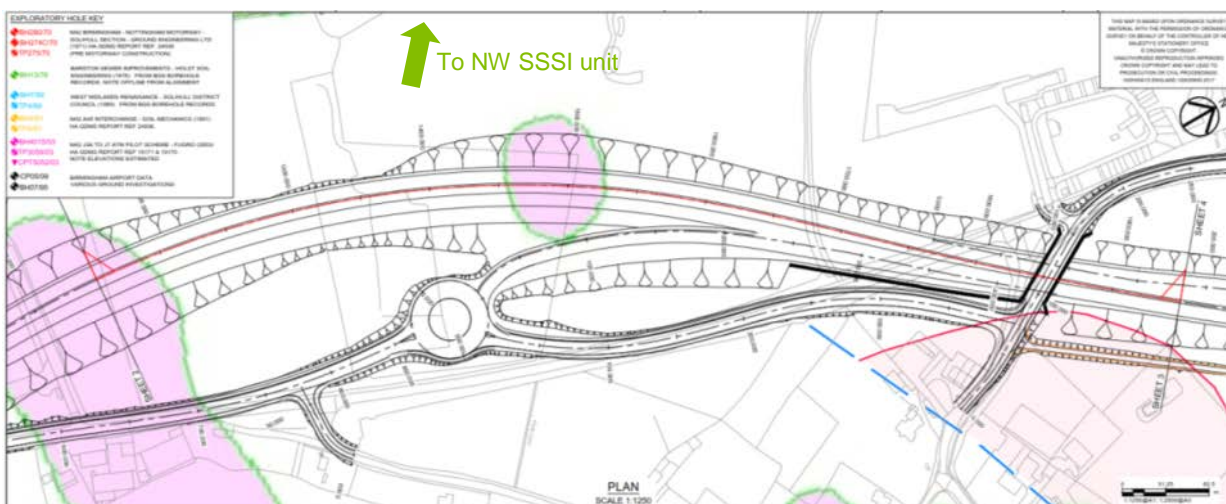


Figure 10. Location of Glacial Sands and Gravels along the proposed link road (shown by Pink shading), in the vicinity of the northwestern SSSI unit.

Figure 11a and 11b show the location of the Ground Investigation works, which are ongoing at the time of writing (September 2018). The works now include boreholes around the periphery of each SSSI unit and within the SSSI units. Those on the periphery of the units are window samples with a standpipe installation to allow monitoring of groundwater levels over time. The standpipes terminate on proving the surface of the Sidmouth Mudstone Formation. The boreholes within the SSSI units are not long-term installations for monitoring, but have been included to prove the underlying geology and provide a snapshot of groundwater conditions that can be related to the levels around the periphery of the sites.

The borehole locations within the NE SSSI units are still to be completed, following a protracted period of negotiations over land access. These locations are indicative only and final locations will be chosen in collaboration with an ecologist on site in order that the boreholes reflect the different vegetation communities. This will enable the nature of the substratum (e.g. type of superficial deposit) to be related to the ecology of the site.

The proposed monitoring of groundwater levels around the periphery of the SSSIs will help understand the groundwater dependence of the two SSSI units, and hence the likelihood of any adverse impact from the proposed scheme that would need to be mitigated.

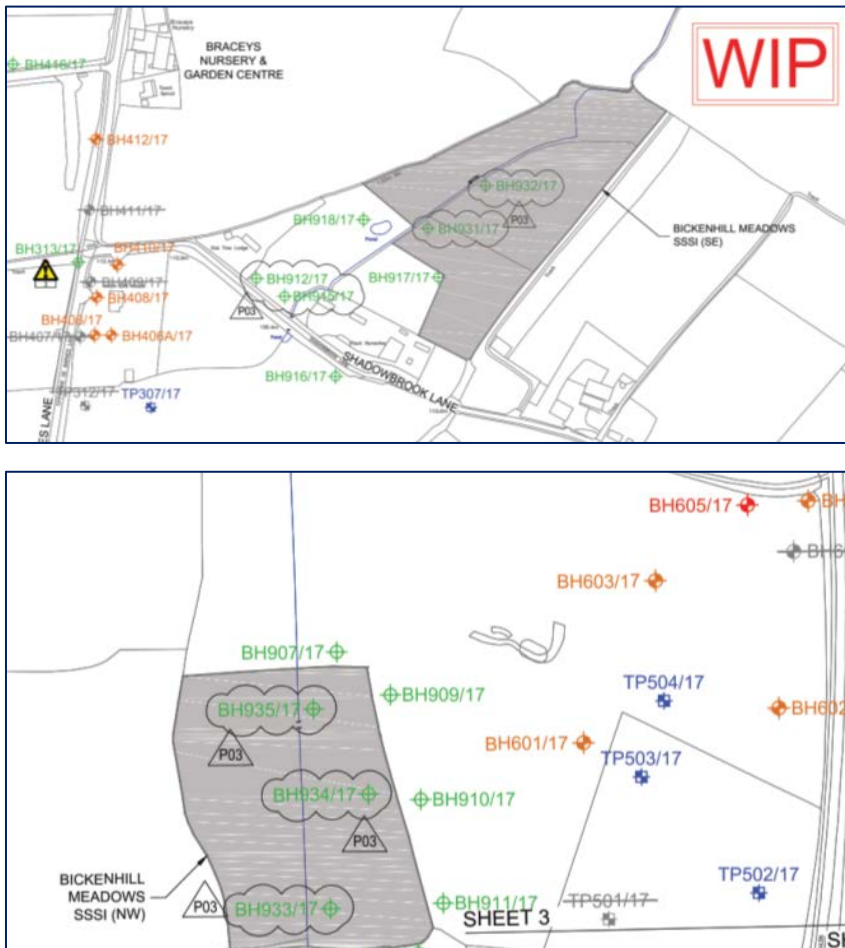


Figure 11a (top) and 11b (bottom) Ground Investigation locations – extended to include the SSSI units. Red – cable percussion boreholes; orange – rotary coring boreholes; green – window sample; blue – trial pit.

Soil Saturation Monitoring

During site visits to the SE SSSI unit following heavy rainfall events, it has been apparent that rainfall accumulates on the ground surface and can be very slow to drain away. This is particularly the case in depressions and furrows across the site. This supports the assertion that maintenance of wet ground conditions required for many of the grassland species may be rainwater fed to a large extent, perhaps supported by localised out of bank flows very close to the stream, and/or limited groundwater flows from any surrounding glacial sand and gravel deposits. These glacial deposits may act somewhat like a sponge, filling with groundwater in response to rainfall. In the wet meadow at the SE SSSI unit, it appears that the MG4 species are more successful in the saturated furrows across the site, while MG5 species are more successful on the slightly elevated and therefore drier ridges.

To better understand the variability in soil saturation and how long it takes the SSSI sites to drain following heavy rainfall, it was proposed in discussions with Natural England (on site on 26/4/18) to install

a series of dipwells on the wet meadow field at the SE SSSI unit and within the NW SSSI unit. Soil water levels and conductivity would then be measured fortnightly within the dipwells over a period of at least 6 months to build an understanding of subsurface moisture conditions, and whether they are indeed largely rainwater fed. While less than 6 months of monitoring may be available at the point that the Environmental Statement is finalised and the Development Consent Order (DCO) application submitted, the monitoring would continue post submission, with Natural England kept informed with data and technical interpretation. The findings presented in the Environmental Statement would be updated at DCO Examination if necessary, and monitoring could potentially be maintained during construction of the proposed scheme to assess any impact on the two SSSI units.

Prior to land owner consent being granted for installation of dipwells at the two SSSI units, ground conditions at both sites were inspected visually every fortnight. The streams through both sites had dried up by 1/7/18 and the pond immediately outside the SE SSSI unit had dried up by mid August (13/8/18). At both sites the grass was also straw-like in colour and wilting by late July, and no ground moisture was apparent on any visit between July and early September. As such, if dipwells had already been installed earlier in the summer of 2018, there is a strong likelihood that they would have been dry throughout the period (between mid-May and September) due to the especially dry summer conditions.

Dipwells were installed in the SE SSSI unit on 13-14th August 2018 (see Figure 12a for locations and Photo 18 for an example). A total of 10 dipwells were installed, covering MG4 grassland, MG5 grassland and transitional grassland areas. The dipwells were prefabricated from a perforated plastic pipe of 32 mm diameter. They are sealed above ground to prevent rainwater from filling the pipe. The plastic pipe is perforated at regular intervals along its length on all sides, to allow throughflow of soil water, and to allow equilibration to be achieved with the surrounding water table.

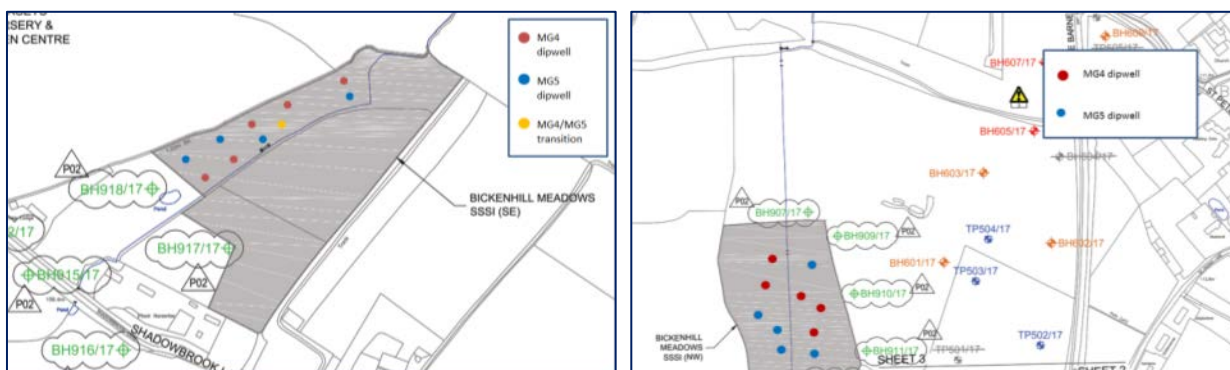


Figure 12a (left). Locations of dipwells installed in the wet meadow field at the SE SSSI unit (dipwells shown in red); and 12b (right) locations of dipwells in the NW SSSI unit.

Of the 10 dipwells installed at the SE SSSI unit, 6 were installed to a depth of 90 cm and 4 to a depth of 50-60 cm (due to difficulty penetrating the substratum with hand held soil augering equipment). Environment Agency Ecohydrological Guidelines⁶ for MG4 grasslands suggest an indicative target mean water table depth range from 35 cm depth in winter to 70 cm depth in summer, and so ordinarily the installed dipwells should be of sufficient depth to monitor the water table for these grasslands. Soil conditions beneath the site were variable, with a mix of upper dark brown sandy silt layers and stiff dark grey clay layers generally encountered to around 50cm depth. Light grey and orange sand layers and gravel layers were commonly found beneath this, including isolated pockets of large cobbles (mix of rounded and angular cobbles, 10-20cm diameter), as well as some layers of blue-grey clay. A full description of the soils encountered during augering at each dipwell as well as further details on location and depth are described in Appendix 2.

The dipwells in the NW SSSI unit were installed on 5th-6th September 2018 (see Figure 12b for locations, and an example in Photo 19). Despite sporadic rainfall in the period since the installation of the SE unit

⁶ Environment Agency (2004) Protective and Enhancing Wetlands: Ecohydrological Guidelines for Lowland Wetland Plant Communities.

dipwells, the ground conditions at the NW unit remained extremely dry with no groundwater encountered during augering of any of the holes. In total, 4 dipwells were installed to 90 cm depth, two to 70 cm depth, and additional dipwells to 66 cm, 60 cm, 50 cm and 43 cm depth. The shallower depths of some dipwells are a result of impenetrable stiff clay layers being encountered. In general, the top soil at the NW SSSI unit was up to 20cm to 40 cm depth below ground, before trending to extremely stiff, dark grey clay to the base of the dipwells. The main exception was the two dipwells towards the centre of the eastern half of the SSSI (close to the suspected spring), where sand and gravel layers were encountered at depths below 50 cm. Further details are described in Appendix 2.

The dipwells have been monitored fortnightly since installation to capture water table recharge in response to rainfall. The regular measurement of water levels is undertaken using a dip tape inserted into the pipe. Conductivity will be measured using a Hanna Instruments conductivity meter should enough water accumulate in the dipwells to enable measurement. One dipwell at each site has also been fitted with a water level data logger to allow continuous measurement of soil water levels.

At the time of writing (September 2018) only two dipwells at either site had recorded water. This was at the SE SSSI unit on the 31/8/18 when the two northernmost dipwells recorded water at depths below ground of 0.86 m and 0.88 m. Water levels have since receded with all dipwells being dry on the most recent monitoring visit (13/9/18). As such, there is currently insufficient data to determine whether the soil saturation conditions at the SSSI units respond primarily to rainfall. It may take several weeks to months for the 'hollow' to fill with groundwater.

Rainfall data from the nearest Environment Agency meteorological stations and/or the Birmingham Airport Meteorological Station will be obtained to compare with the water level record once a more significant period of monitoring has been undertaken.



Photo 18 (left) Dipwell T2-D at the SE SSSI unit; and Photo 19 (right) Dipwell N2-B on the NW SSSI unit.

Preliminary Ground Investigation Results at the SSSIs

The boreholes shown in the SE SSSI and immediate periphery in Figure 11a and the four boreholes on the eastern periphery of the NW SSSI in Figure 11b were installed in July 2018. Those within the NW SSSI unit have yet to be installed at the time of writing in September 2018 (due to ongoing land access negotiations).

A summary of the preliminary results is given in Table 1.

Table 1 Provisional Ground Investigation findings for the SE and NW SSSI units. For borehole location refer to Figure 11a and 11b.

Borehole	Geology Summary	Groundwater strike
SE SSSI		
BH932 (within SSSI)	4m depth - gravelly sand to 0.8m, very sandy clay to 2.25m, sandy clay with weak mudstone fragments to 4m.	Water strike at 2.25m rising to 2.18m after 20 minutes.
BH931 (within SSSI)	3m depth – gravelly sand to 0.8m, sandy slightly gravelly clay to 1.2m, silty clay to 3m.	Water strike at 1.96m rising to 1.8m after 20 minutes.
BH917 (within SSSI)	3m depth – gravelly sand to 0.8m, slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 1.75m, sandy clay to 3.0m	Water strike at 2.19m.
BH918 (within nature reserve but not SSSI)	3m depth – fine to coarse sand with some gravel to 1.15m, sandy clay to 1.5m, gravelly fine to coarse sand to 3m.	Water strike at 1.48m.
BH912 (within nature reserve but not SSSI)	4m depth – gravelly sand to 0.8m, sandy slightly gravelly clay to 1.5m, sand to 1.6m, sandy clay to 2.10m, slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 2.6m including extremely weak mudstone, sandy clay to 4m.	Water strike at 2.6m, rising to 1.74m after 20 minutes.
BH915A (within nature reserve but not SSSI)	6.4m depth – gravelly fine to coarse sand to 0.8m, sandy gravelly clay to 3.10m, sandy clay to 5.0m, fine to coarse sand to 5.6m, sandy clay to 6.1m, clay tending to extremely weak mudstone to 6.4m	Water strike at 3.10m, rising to 1.8m after 40 minutes.
NW SSSI		
BH907 (northern periphery of SSSI)	2.0m depth – slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.6m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.0m	No water strike
BH909 (eastern periphery of SSSI)	2.3m depth - slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.6m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.3m	No water strike
BH910 (eastern periphery of SSSI)	2.7m depth - slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.6m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.7m	No water strike
BH911 (eastern periphery of SSSI)	2.0m depth - slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.5m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.0m	No water strike

Preliminary Interpretation of Results - SE SSSI Unit

All of the boreholes described in Table 1 were collected in July 2018 following a prolonged three month period of dry weather, and so groundwater levels would be considerably lower than during the spring period considered critical to the SSSI grasslands. Mercia Mudstone is at considerable depth within the SE SSSI unit (2.25m at BH932 and >3.0m in BH931 and BH917) and immediate periphery (6.1m at BH915A, 2.6m at BH912 and >3.0m at BH918) with substantial glacial superficial deposits located above it (see Table 1). Mercia Mudstone is generally located deeper within and immediately around the SSSI than in many other locations studied within the Ground Investigation across the wider scheme. Based on this and the observed high ground water levels (1.48 - 3.1m depth when measured during drought conditions) compared with elsewhere there are considered to be two potential hypotheses:

1. Hypotheses 1 - There is an isolated 'bowl' of mixed superficial deposits to a variable depth of several metres that spans the SSSI and immediate periphery, and this is surrounded by shallower Mercia mudstone in the adjacent areas (Figure 13a and 13b). The deeper superficial deposits located at the SSSI are able to hold greater quantities of groundwater than Mercia mudstone and be a source of groundwater to support a higher water table above them, lasting into the summer months each year. This would help to maintain sufficient saturation of the soil whilst not prohibiting drainage entirely that could result in water ponding on the surface, which would be detrimental to the establishment of MG4 plant communities. This 'bowl' of mixed superficial deposits is expected to be largely rainwater fed and dries up slowly during extended dry periods or drought conditions (as seen in the summer of 2018 when the site was extremely dry). It is intended that the monitoring of groundwater levels in boreholes and dipwells will determine whether this local groundwater water body is recharged by rainfall. The proposed road is not anticipated to impact on this scenario as the

SSSI is predominantly rainwater fed and not reliant on groundwater flows from the surrounding areas, that could be intercepted or drawn down by the proposed road cutting.

- Hypothesis 2 - There is a channel-shaped (or trench) feature of mixed superficial deposits which runs from the direction of Catherine de Barnes Lane to the SSSI (Figure 13c). This would be a relatively narrow channel based on the Ground Investigation results from elsewhere in the proposed scheme. Rainwater would still be the major contributor to the groundwater levels in the superficial deposits, but this could be potentially supplemented to some extent by groundwater flows through the 'channel' or 'trench' of deposits which extend to Catherine de Barnes Lane. If this hypothesis is correct, there is a plausible risk that superficial deposits in this channel/trench will be intercepted in the proposed road cutting to the west of the SSSI and, in this event, it is likely that the cutting will intercept groundwater flow in the trench towards the SSSI, potentially resulting in a change to the hydrology of the SSSU Unit.

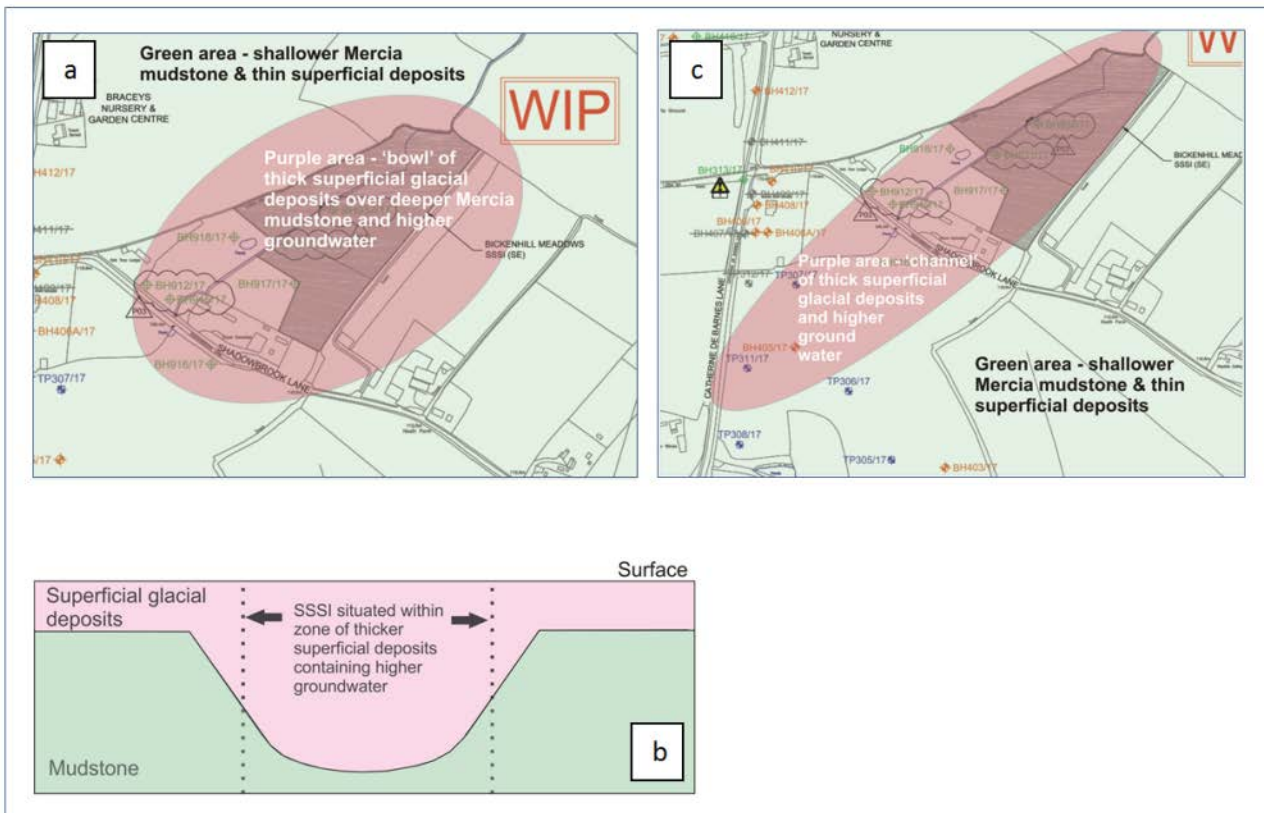


Figure 13a (top left) Indicative diagram showing Hypothesis 1, a 'bowl' of thicker superficial glacial deposits surrounded by shallower Mercia mudstone; 13b (bottom left) indicative diagram to show how the SSSI appears to be located within thicker superficial deposits; and 13c (top right) indicative Hypothesis 2, a 'channel' of thicker superficial deposits surrounded by shallow Mercia mudstone.

Unfortunately, it will be difficult to fully test Hypothesis 2 until the cutting is being excavated and the true nature of ground conditions through the cutting is known. However, in an effort to support these interpretations an additional borehole is to be drilled between the SSSI and the location of the proposed road cutting (to be installed in September 2018).

In both cases described above the ongoing monitoring of groundwater levels using the dipwells within the SSSI and the boreholes in the periphery of the SSSI is required to prove that there is recharge after rainfall and thereby increase the evidence base for these hypotheses.

Preliminary Interpretation of Results - NW SSSI Unit

The holes on the eastern periphery of the NW SSSI unit show the Mercia mudstone to be very shallow (e.g. 60cm at BH907, BH909, BH910) with no significant superficial deposits, and deep groundwater (i.e. no groundwater strikes recorded within these boreholes). The deeper groundwater levels were recorded during a period of drought, and ongoing monitoring will show how these levels vary in response to rainfall. Boreholes have yet to be obtained from within this SSSI unit itself as land access negotiations have been ongoing. However, given the slope down towards the stream from both the east and west margins, and that the SSSI has generally been particularly wet and 'spongey' underfoot, it is considered that there may be a similar scenario at this site to the SE SSSI, with a circular basin ('bowl') or channel of thicker superficial deposits surrounded by the shallower Mercia Mudstone. The thicker superficial deposits would contain more significant amounts of groundwater that are required to maintain the sensitive grassland communities. The boreholes within the SSSI are required to prove that it contains thicker superficial deposits, and monitoring of dipwells will be required to prove recharge in response to rainfall. However, it is noteworthy that there does not appear to be high groundwater or superficial deposits on the eastern edge of the SSSI that the road would intercept. As such, minimal impact to the SSSI might be expected as there is no direct pathway between the road cutting and superficial deposits within the SSSI. However, ongoing monitoring using dipwells could be continued to ensure that this is the case post construction.

National Vegetation Classification (NVC) Surveys

A Phase 2 NVC survey was undertaken of the identified homogenous stands of grassland vegetation within the Bickenhill Meadows SSSI in summer 2018. The survey followed the standard published methodology (Rodwell, 2006)⁷ and comprised recording a minimum of five quadrats in each identified grassland type and at least one in each parcel of each grassland type. Following this, the data sets identified were matched to the published grassland community types using the keys provided in Rodwell (1992)⁸ and using the software TABLEFIT⁹. The survey was undertaken on the 27th June and the 7th August 2018.

The vegetation in all the fields on the days of the survey was tall and coarse and because of this appeared uniform with the subtle changes in ground level apparent earlier in the year masked by the dense growth.

The SE SSSI comprises three fields separated by a small watercourse (dry on the day of the survey); two of the fields are on the east side and the third on the west side. A fourth field is not within the SSSI but along with the fields in the SSSI is managed as a nature reserve by Warwickshire Wildlife Trust.

The two fields on the eastern side slope down to the watercourse and the vegetation on the day of the survey was grass dominated (tall and lodging in places) and dry (Photo 20 and 21). Yorkshire fog (*Holcus lanatus*) was abundant with other grasses such as cock's foot (*Dactylis glomerata*), common bent (*Agrostis capillaris*), red fescue (*Festuca rubra*), crested dog's tail (*Cynosurus cristatus*) and meadow fescue (*Schedonorus pratensis*). A range of generally common forbs were recorded and included ribwort plantain (*Plantago lanceolata*), common knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*), bird's foot trefoil (*Lotus corniculatus*) and red clover (*Trifolium pratense*). Less common species included yellow rattle (*Rhinanthus minor*) and tormentil (*Potentilla erecta*).

⁷ Rodwell, J. S. (2006) National Vegetation Classification; Users' Handbook. Joint Nature Conservation Committee, Peterborough

⁸ Rodwell, J. S. (ed.) 1992. British Plant Communities. Volume 3. Grassland and montane communities. Cambridge University Press.

⁹ Hill (2015) TABLEFIT Version 2; A program to identify types of vegetation by measuring goodness-of-fit to association tables. Centre of Ecology and Hydrology, Wallingford



Photo 20 (left) and Photo 21 (right), typical vegetation in the SE SSSI unit eastern fields.

Seven quadrats were recorded in the two fields, as they were uniform in appearance and structure. The data obtained was run through TABLEFIT and the goodness of fit to the NVC community type MG5; *Cynosurus cristatus* - *Centaurea nigra* was at around 83% and classed as very good fit. The second best fit was to the MG5a *Lathyrus pratensis* sub-community type.

The field within the SE SSSI unit on the west side of the watercourse was generally flat but with an apparent rise towards the northern boundary; the grasses did not dominate to the degree they did in the dry fields and there were patches of meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*) and great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*) (Photo 22 and 23). Meadowsweet and other wetland species such as wild angelica (*Angelica sylvestris*) seemed to be more frequent towards the watercourse where the vegetation was taller and coarser. Interesting species recorded here were betony (*Stachys officinalis*) and tormentil (*Potentilla erecta*). It has been reported that meadow thistle (*Cirsium dissectum*) is also present but this was not found during the current survey.



Photo 22 (left) and Photo 23 (right), typical vegetation in the SE SSSI unit wet meadow field.

Five quadrats were recorded in this western field and along with the data collected from similar vegetation recorded in the NW section of the SSSI (described below) were run through TABLEFIT. The goodness-of-fit to the NVC community type MG4; *Alopecurus pratensis* – *Sanguisorba officinalis* was around 63% and classed as a fair fit. Any variation in the vegetation from topographical variation was masked by the tall growth and a better understanding of this would be obtained once the field has been cut. This will provide information on the relationship of the community boundaries to topography, depth to water and ditch levels, and enable the communities to be tied with soils information to determine the mechanism whereby any vegetation changes are driven.

The NW SSSI unit comprises two fields separated by a small, ephemeral watercourse, which was dry on the day of the survey. The western field appeared to be uniform in structure and was generally a mix of patches of larger forbs such as great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*) and meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*), and grasses with a range of smaller forbs including several legumes scrambling through the vegetation (Photo 24 and Photo 25). This field appeared to be more diverse than the corresponding field in the SE SSSI unit and here saw-wort (*Serratula tinctoria*), quaking grass (*Briza media*) and devil's bit scabious (*Succisa pratensis*) were recorded in addition to the more typical and commoner forb species. When visited in August 2018, tufted hair grass (*Deschampsia cespitosa*) was the dominant species in this field.



Photo 24 (left) and Photo 25 (right), typical vegetation in the NW SSSI unit western field.

Five quadrats were recorded in the field and along with the data collected from similar vegetation recorded in the SE SSSI unit were run through TABLEFIT. The goodness-of-fit to the NVC community type MG4; *Alopecurus pratensis* – *Sanguisorba officinalis* was around 63% and classed as a fair fit.

The eastern field of the NW SSSI unit was only visited in August and had much coarser vegetation and the dominant grass across larger areas was tufted hair grass (*Deschampsia cespitosa*) but with meadowsweet and great burnet also frequent throughout the field. Sedges appeared to be more common in this field and included hairy sedge (*Carex hirta*), false fox sedge (*Carex otrubae*), common sedge (*Carex nigra*) and tufted sedge (*Carex acuta*). Otherwise it was very similar to the western field (Photos 26 and 27).



Photo 26 (left) and Photo 27 (right), typical vegetation in the NW SSSI unit eastern field.

Part way along the western boundary of the field, there was a distinctive change in vegetation and whilst this will have to be shown by survey, it appeared to be delineated by a low spot, possibly linked to the ditch and was demarked by young alders (*Alnus glutinosa*). The vegetation here was dominated by tall rushes including soft rush (*Juncus effusus*), hard rush (*Juncus inflexus*) and sharp flowered rush (*Juncus*

acutiflorus), along with sedges with abundant great hairy willowherb (*Epilobium hirsutum*) and in the wettest areas patches of fool's watercress (*Apium nodiflorum*). This is the area considered to be a potential spring in the preceding discussion (Photo 27 and Photo 28).



Photo 27 (left) and Photo 28 (right), typical vegetation in the distinct wetter area within the NW SSSI unit eastern field.

Five quadrats were recorded in this area and the data was run through TABLEFIT. The goodness-of-fit to the NVC community type OV26; *Epilobium hirsutum* community was around 58% and classed as a fair fit. A similar fit was obtained from the MG9 community; *Holcus lanatus-Deschampsia cespitosa* grassland. This community is found in area where the ground is seasonally waterlogged and can be found in association with MG4 grassland but is not usually as species diverse and is tolerant of less free draining soils.

It is clear from the surveys that the two dry grassland fields in the SE SSSI unit fit closely to the MG5 community type and that for the most part the wetter field in the SE unit and the two fields in the NW unit fit to the MG4 community type. Within the wetter fields, there may be localised variation and this seems to have been picked up by the walkovers earlier in 2018 but by summer the tall vegetation was masking much of this variation.

Summary and Recommendations

The proposed scheme includes a new dual carriageway link road to link a new junction south of M42 Junction 6 to Clock Interchange to the southwest of the Birmingham National Exhibition Centre. This would be an approximate length of 2.4 km and located to the west of the M42 motorway, close to Catherine de Barnes Lane. Much of the carriageway would be within cutting with varying depths below ground level, up to a maximum of 10 m.

The Bickenhill Meadows SSSI is located in two units situated either side of the proposed link road cutting. This is designated for its species-rich grassland and includes areas of wet meadows and wet alder woodland. Small streams run through each SSSI unit, and are tributaries of Shadow Brook and Low Brook. Wet conditions need to be maintained in the SSSIs to ensure the preservation of the rare grassland habitats that are housed within. Further investigation has begun to determine whether maintenance of wet conditions in the SSSI units depend on groundwater flows, which could potentially be interrupted by the construction of the cutting. This has included extension of the Ground Investigation for the scheme to include eight additional boreholes within and immediately around the SE SSSI, as well as a further eight boreholes in and immediately around the NW SSSI unit.

On the basis of the preliminary Ground Investigation results, the topography surrounding each SSSI unit, and information gathered from site visits it appears as though the grasslands are primarily rainwater fed. Rainwater appears to accumulate in the variable local-topographic features and drains away only very slowly. As such, rainwater is likely to be the dominant mechanism for recharging groundwater levels in the underlying glacial superficial sands and gravels. The streams flowing through each site are also likely

to be predominantly rainwater fed via their agricultural catchments and road runoff, and may on rare occasions lead to some localised flooding, particularly when the narrow channels are blocked with litter, debris, sediment and plant growth. The watercourses may also contribute to maintaining wet ground conditions in the immediate vicinity of the streams.

Provisional results indicate that groundwater is likely to have a significant contribution to maintaining wet conditions in the SSSI units during dry periods, although plant communities would most likely have formed during the spring/early summer where ground conditions are typically still moist from the preceding winter's rainfall. Groundwater varied between 1.48 and 3.5 m in and around the SE SSSI unit in July 2018, and this is considerably shallower than observed elsewhere in the scheme area. This shallower groundwater corresponds to thicker superficial sand and gravel glacial deposits that have greater capacity to store groundwater. However, the presence of such deposits at the NW unit has yet to be proved (with boreholes scheduled to be drilled in September 2018). It is anticipated that the groundwater levels at both SSSI units are recharged in response to rainfall, but further investigation is required to prove this. This investigation is using dipwells (10 per site) to measure water table depth, and these have been installed at depths of up to 900 mm in both SSSI units. These will be monitored fortnightly (or more regularly in response to heavy rainfall), to determine whether recharge is directly related to rainfall patterns.

The possibility remains that ongoing investigation may prove that the proposed scheme does impact upon the maintenance of wet conditions required by the grassland communities in the SSSI. As such potential mitigation options are required to be considered, and these are discussed further below.

Mitigation Hierarchy

During the site meeting with Natural England on 26/04/18 it was requested that options are presented for the approaches that may be taken in the event that the proposed scheme results in an adverse effect upon the SSSI. In accordance with best practice this would follow the mitigation hierarchy, which seeks to avoid, reduce (i.e. mitigate) or offset (i.e. compensate) for any adverse impact.

At the current stage of design it is acknowledged that it is highly unlikely that the horizontal or vertical alignment of the proposed link road could be altered to avoid potential effects on the SSSI, as the road has already been moved as far east as possible as part of earlier optioneering work to maximise the distance from the NW SSSI unit. Accordingly, the approaches need to focus on options for mitigation and compensation.

A potentially significant adverse effect would comprise alterations to the type or extent of the grassland communities that are interest features of the SSSI. This may occur as a result of changes to the existing hydrological regime. In the event that a significant impact to the interest features of the SSSI is considered likely then options for mitigation or compensation may include the following, which are listed below in Table 2 in order of preference with regards to Natural England's hierarchy of mitigation approach:

Table 2. Mitigation Options for the SSSI Units in hierarchical order.

Option (in order of preference)	Mitigation Type	Mitigation Description
1	Avoid and Reduce	Measures to maintain the existing hydrological regime of the SSSI. This may include the pumping of water at an appropriate time of year to replicate the existing water supply. This is the best outcome for the SSSI as water supply would be maintained.
2	Reduce	Physical changes within the SSSI to extend the existing habitat types. This would involve carefully planned and localised changes to the topography of the SSSI, and would be based on detailed modelling of the existing vegetation communities. As an example, the approach could seek to extend the topographical variations (such as deeper depressions and furrows) that have established the existing pattern of vegetation communities, to compensate for potential reduction in groundwater.
3	Offset	Establish habitats similar to the interest features in land immediately adjacent to the SSSI (or otherwise at another location entirely). The aim would be to create a parcel of land with a varied topography and a related hydrological regime, and to establish grassland using green hay from the SSSI. This is an offsetting solution and so is the worst case for the existing SSSI.

All of the approaches above would be informed by ongoing monitoring of the SSSI grasslands to ensure that they are effective. An options appraisal for these various approaches is provided in Table 3. At the time of writing (September 2018) the options listed apply to both SSSI units. As discussed above, preliminary data indicates that the northwest SSSI unit may be unaffected by the proposed scheme but this conclusion depends on further data from the boreholes that are still to be drilled within the SSSI and the ongoing dipwell monitoring.

A further option has previously been proposed in discussion with Natural England. This was to implement measures to re-store natural flow along streams flowing through the SSSI units by re-routing each stream through the low point of each valley and restoring a more natural planform. However, there are limitations as to what could be done within the application boundary, and after further consideration it is thought that improved drainage could potentially cause the sites to dry out further. As such, the option has not been included in the options appraisal.

For the SE SSSI unit, provisional data indicates the possibility of a channel or trench of superficial deposits extending between the SSSI unit and Catherine de Barnes Lane. The best case mitigation scenario if this is proven is to maintain the existing hydrological regime of the SSSI units using an engineered solution to pump water to an infiltration trench. The remedial measures should be designed to maintain as far as possible the water conditions in the SSSI. In this circumstance, this solution should include the following measures:

- Construction of a low permeability clay bund/seal on the eastern slope of the cutting against the superficial deposits to prevent the reversal of groundwater flow and limit the potential for groundwater to drain into the cutting from the eastern side of the road. If a seal is placed, this should be a minimum 1m thick.
- Installation of a cut-off drain on the western slope of the cutting. The drain should be formed along the base of the superficial deposits to intercept groundwater flowing from the west, which naturally would have flowed towards the SSSI. The drain will only collect groundwater from the superficial deposits and should direct the groundwater to a sealed collection sump at the base of the cutting, which conveys water beneath the carriageway to a sealed pumping sump on the eastern side of the cutting. The sumps should be sealed to prevent the ingress of road runoff and should be separate from the road drainage, the quality of which could impact on the ecology of the SSSI.
- Water accumulating in the sump should be pumped to discharge to a recharge trench located on the upslope side of the SSSI. The recharge trench should comprise a slotted uPVC pipe with

risers at each end, surrounded by coarse gravel laid in an excavation approximately 1m wide and 600mm deep. The depth of the recharge trench is subject to the local ground conditions and should be constructed to ensure there is hydraulic continuity with the superficial deposits around the SSSI. Care will also be required to prevent any preferential flow into the nearby drainage ditch. The water pumped from the sump should discharge to the risers at each end of the trench.

- Regular groundwater level monitoring of the boreholes and dipwells in and around the SSSI should be carried out prior to, during and following construction of the cutting and the implementation of any mitigation measures to assess the effectiveness of the measures.

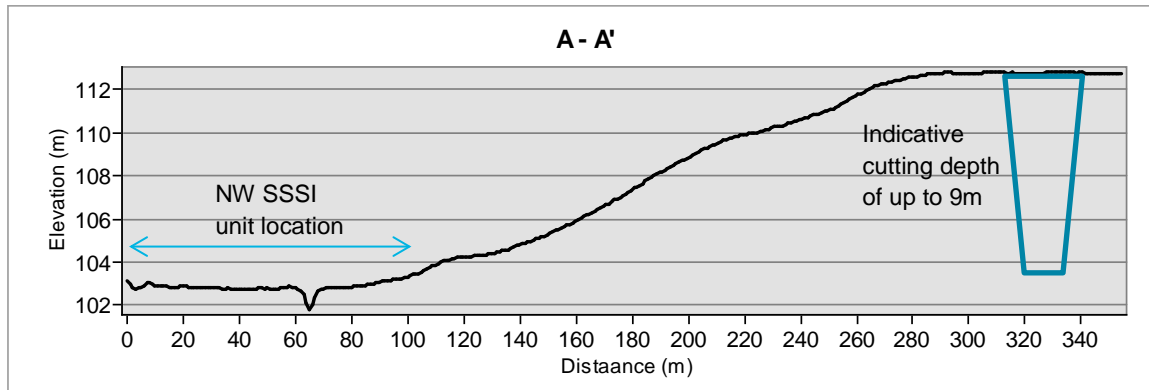
Table 3 Potential Hydrological Impacts on Bickenhill Meadows SSSI – Mitigation Options Appraisal. The various options currently all apply to both SSSI units.

Mitigation Option (in order of preference)	Description	Mitigation Type	Implications				
			Design	Third Party and Land Ownership	Planning and Deliverability	Future Maintenance	Cost
1. Maintain the existing hydrological regime of the SSSI.	This may include the pumping of water to a recharge trench to replicate the existing 'natural' groundwater supply that has been interrupted by the cutting	Reduction of impact	This option would require new infrastructure to collect water from the cutting and to pump it up to a new infiltration trench into the sand and gravel layer to recharge the site. Access would also be required.	The location of new infrastructure is yet to be determined and may require land take currently outside of the application boundary.	The application boundary and scheme description would potentially need to be amended to ensure any infrastructure associated with this measure could be constructed, operated and access provided for long term maintenance purposes.	The new pumping network and soakaway would need to be regularly maintained with access provided.	Capital costs associated with the new infrastructure and operating costs associated with operating and maintaining it.
2. Physical changes within the SSSI to extend the existing habitat types.	This would involve carefully planned and localised changes to the topography of the SSSI, and would be based on detailed modelling of the existing vegetation communities. As an example, the approach could seek to extend the topographical variations (such as deeper depressions and furrows) that have established the existing pattern of vegetation communities, to compensate for potential reduction in groundwater.	Offsetting impact	Unlikely to require any changes to the infrastructure design. A detailed Habitat Enhancement Plan would need to be prepared.	The greatest opportunity would be on the NW site that is owned by BAA. There may be some options for the SE Unit that is owned and managed by WWT, although less so. Other landowners may be affected. Both BAA and WWT (as well as NE) would need to be carefully consulted on the Habitat Enhancement Plan to ensure it can be agreed and delivered.	The current application boundary incorporates the extents of land designated within the boundary of the SSSI, within which it is expected that these measures could be delivered and managed without requiring additional land beyond that already identified. Scheme description would need to be amended to incorporate these measures. Although works may be of a soft nature, the use of some equipment and small plant cannot be ruled out. This would require Assent from NE and permission from the landowners. Experience with BAA to date is that this may not be straight forward and could even be objected to or require acceptance of unreasonable levels of liability.	It would be expected that any changes to the SSSIs would need to be carefully monitored for 3 years +.	Costs associated with the development of the Habitat Enhancement Plan and its implementation including monitoring.
3. Establish habitats similar to the interest	This would include creating a parcel of land with a varied topography and a	Offsetting impact	The conditions of the SSSI would be re-created, ideally from land parcels flanking the brooks in/out	Discussions with landowners would need to be advanced, as their	The application boundary and scheme description would need to be amended to ensure this mitigation	Maintenance of site would be undertaken on an annual basis under a management / legal agreement that would be	Cost associated with the compulsory purchase of land, development of a

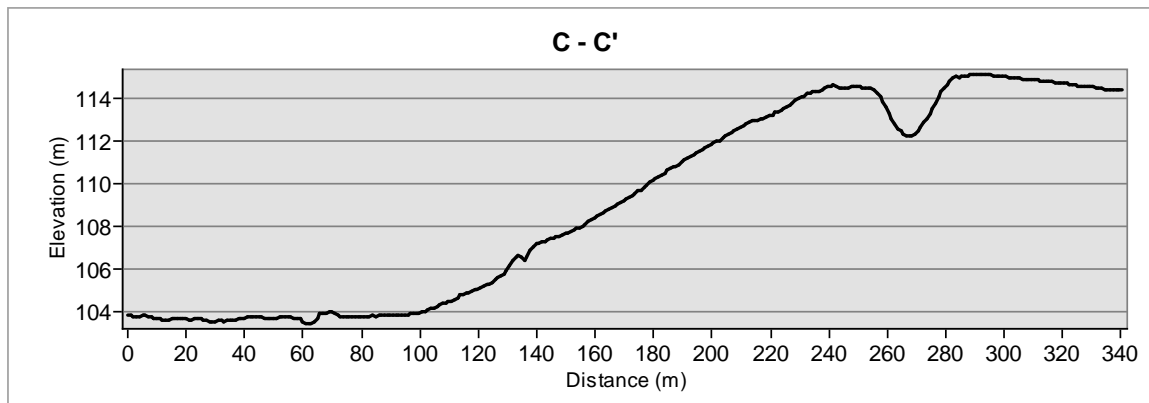
<p>features, either in land immediately adjacent to the SSSI or at a new site.</p>	<p>related hydrological regime, and establishing grassland using green hay from the SSSI.</p>		<p>of the SSSI, while avoiding significant risk of impacts from the proposed road. Requires careful design, alterations to topography and specialised planting in consultation with NE.</p> <p>A detailed Habitat Management Plan would likely be required to demonstrate to the relevant bodies how these habitats would be established and managed in the long term.</p>	<p>land would either need to be secured by way of prior agreed purchase to implement these measures, or via the DCO as essential landtake for mitigation purposes.</p> <p>With regards to the NW Unit, and assuming some tasks will require the use of equipment and plant, discussions with BAA would be required to understand any safeguarding issues that may limit how the work is undertaken.</p>	<p>could be implemented.</p> <p>Although works may be of a soft nature, the use of some equipment and small plant cannot be ruled out. Permission will be required from the landowners. Experience with BAA to date is that this may not be straight forward and could even be objected to or require acceptance of unreasonable levels of liability.</p>	<p>needed in perpetuity. This could be adopted by the land-owner or a third party via the legal agreement</p>	<p>Habitats Enhancement Plan and its implementation and any post works monitoring.</p>
---	---	--	--	---	---	---	--

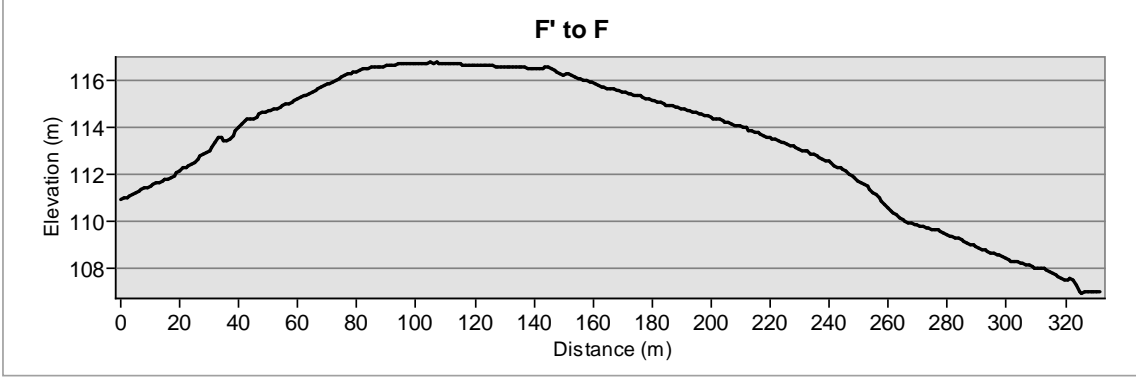
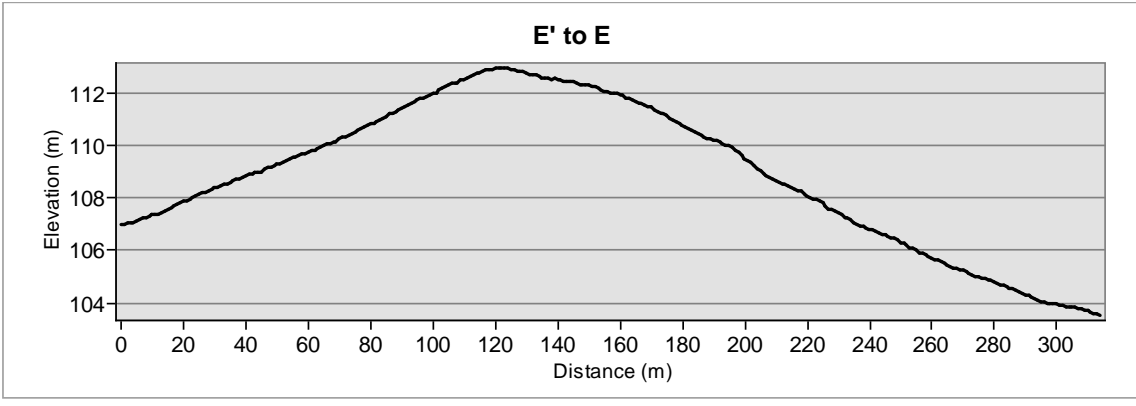
Appendix 1: Sections

NW SSSI unit

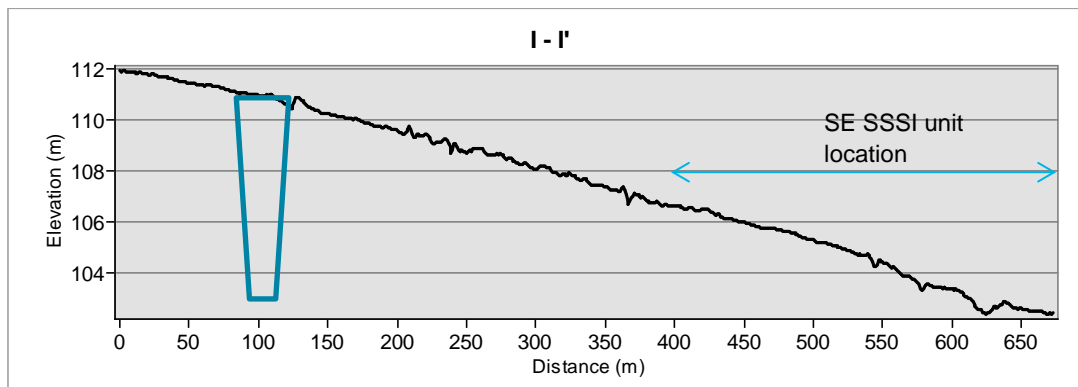
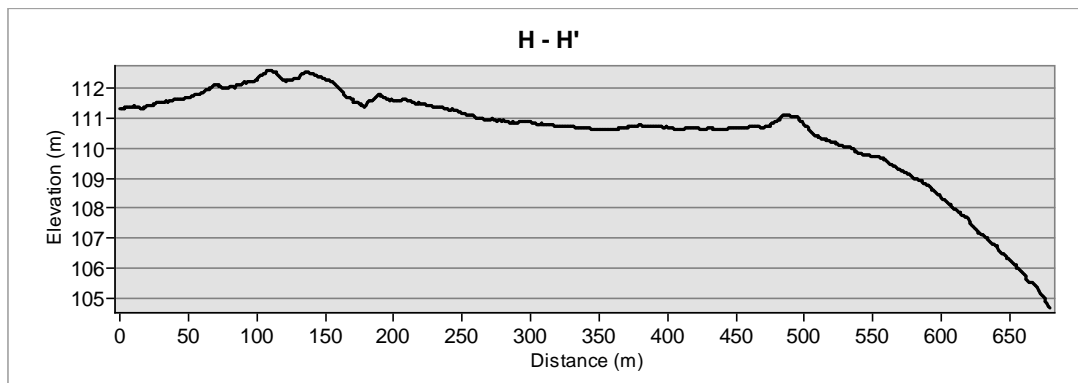
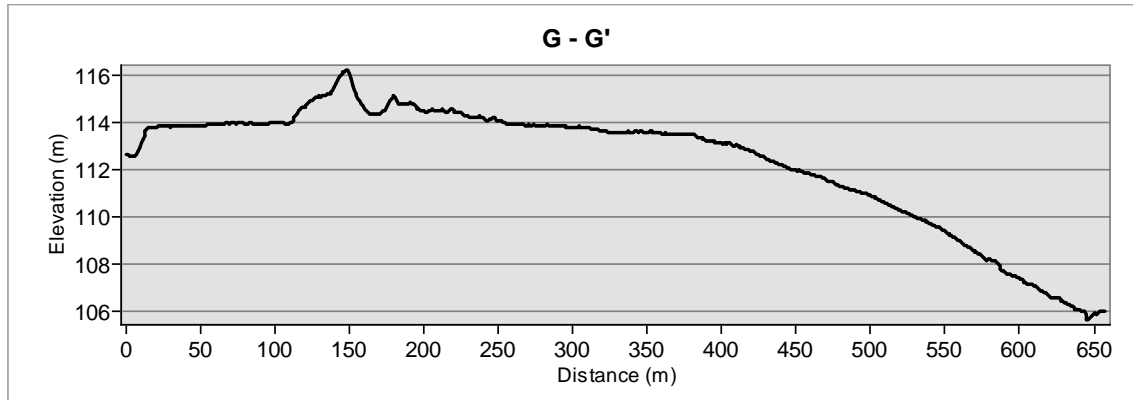


Note. Indicative cutting of up to 9m depth shown in blue.

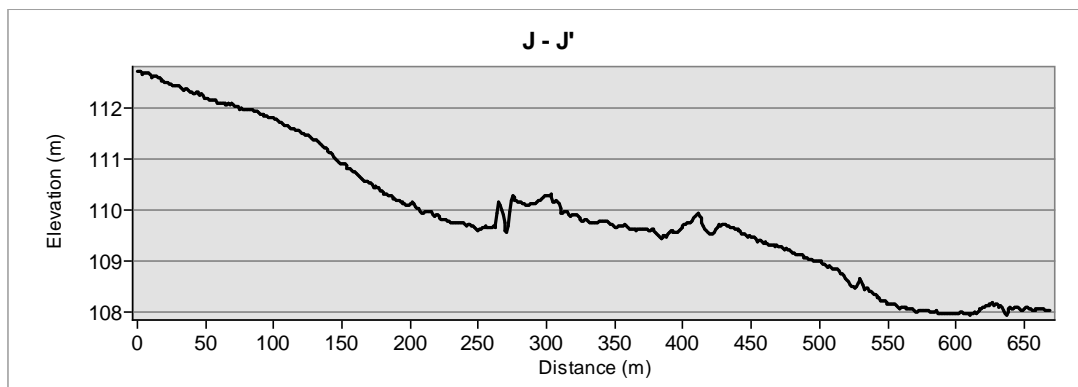


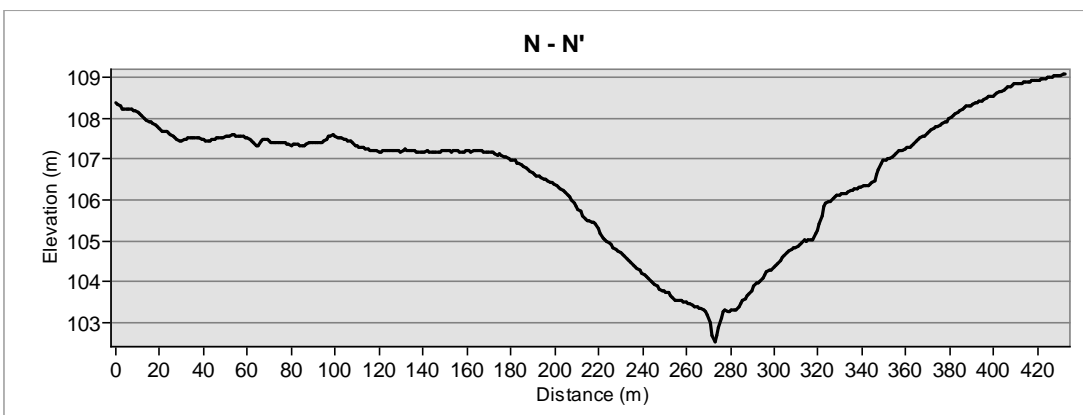
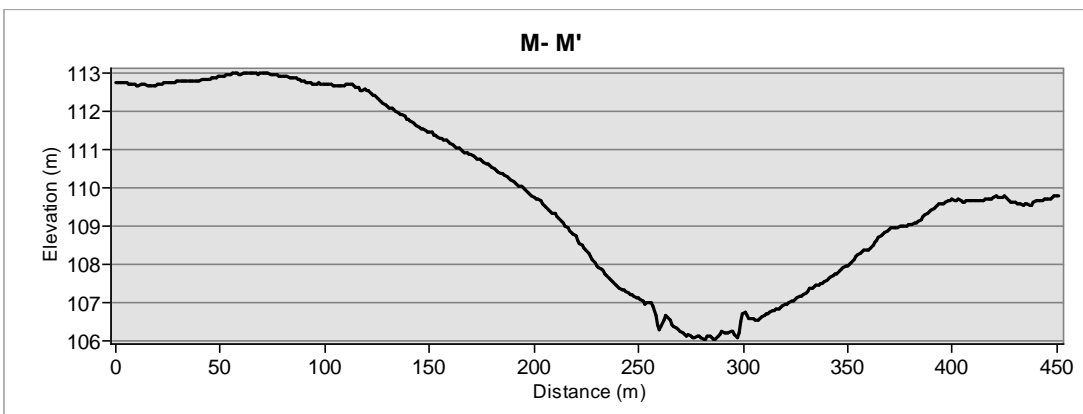
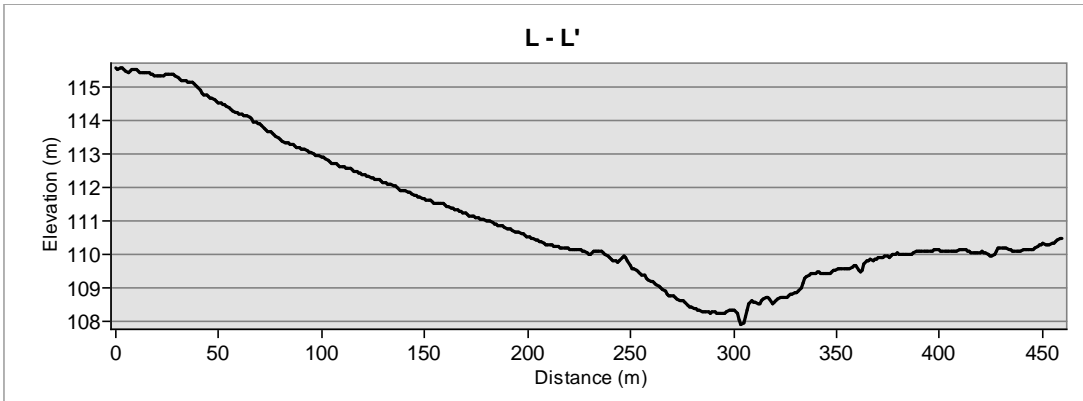
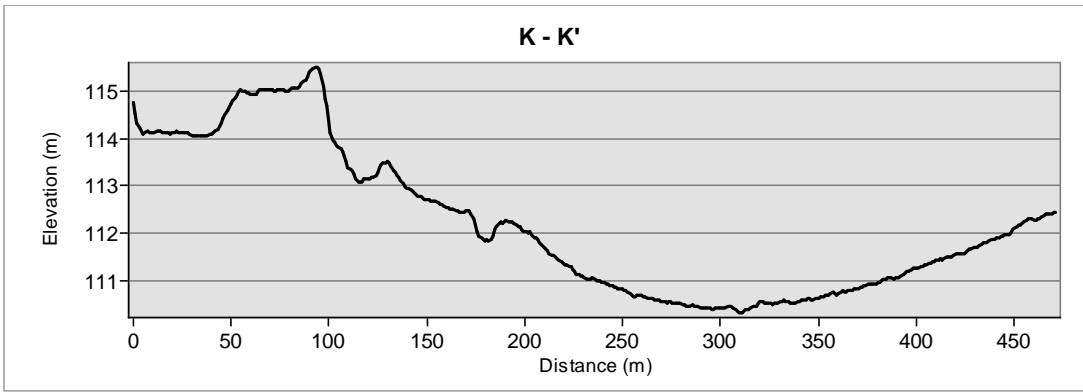


SE SSSI unit



Note. Indicative cutting of up to 8m depth shown in blue in this topographic section.





Appendix 2: Dipwell Details and Soil Descriptions

Table A1 Location, depth, soil description and initial data from the dipwell installation and monitoring

SE SSSI Unit									
Site	Latitude, Longitude	Soil Description / Notes	Depth (m bgl)	Grassland	Manual/Logger	14/08/2018	16/08/2018	31/08/2018	13/09/2018
T1A	52.432467, -1.724967	Top soil silty sand dark brown to light brown, semi-fibrous. Gradual transition to lighter grey sand less fibrous and becoming much drier at 50cm, where it was not possible to penetrate with handheld equipment.	0.50	MG4	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T1B	52.4326, -1.72465	Topsoil is dark grey semi-fibrous fine silt continuing to 35cm depth, then trending to stiff dark grey (mottled with brown) clay without roots which continues to 45cm depth. Sandy clay from 45cm-50cm with some large cobbles up to 10cm diameter. This layer could not be penetrated.	0.90	MG4	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T1C	52.432733, -1.72425	Dark brown silty sand with a few small cobbles and slightly moist to 45-50cm, here it becomes a drier, greyer layer of silty sand. At 80cm becomes dark grey-black slightly mottled moist sand, and at 90cm black sandy clay. Various cobbles (mix of rounded and angular) throughout the 90cm, from 2-7cm diameter.	0.90	MG5	Logger	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T1D	52.432817, -1.72415	Dark brown silty sand with abundant cobbles (mix of rounded and angular), semi-fibrous to 40-50cm. Then transitions to sandy clay with a fewer, larger cobbles. Sand becomes light grey/white from 55cm before transitioning to orange. Becomes more clay dominated and mottled from 80cm.	0.90	MG4/MG5 transition	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T1E	52.43305, -1.7231	Brown sandy silt topsoil to 20cm, before becoming greyish mottled clay with brown specks. Surface of ground much damper here compared to elsewhere with more clay near the surface. Hit light grey pure sand at 55cm turning to orange sand at 60cm. Became moister again at around 75cm.	0.90	MG5	Manual	Dry	Dry	0.88 m bgl	Dry
T2A	52.432583, -1.7251	Grey to brown dry silty sand, semi-fibrous, compact to 35cm. Drier, greyer, semi-fibrous compact coarse sand from 35-46cm	0.50	MG5	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry

T2B	52.432717, - 1.72475	Brown silty sand, very dry and containing cobbles (3-5cm). Extremely compact sand at 45cm, impenetrable with hand tools.	0.45	MG5	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T2C	52.432817, - 1.724333	Dark brown silty sand, very dry and semi-fibrous to 30cm, before transitioning to compact and very solid sand that could not be penetrated.	0.50	MG4	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T2D	52.432933, - 1.724033	Brown silty sand topsoil, dry and semi-fibrous. Distinct layer of large rounded cobbles of 5-12cm diameter at 30-40cm depth. Then becomes dark brown sand at 55cm. Gradually becomes clayey at 70cm, this is blue grey clay mottled with brown strands and very cobbly.	0.90	MG4/MG5 boundary	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T2E	52.433133, - 1.723183	Brown sandy silt, semi-fibrous, dry with big cobbles (rounded and up to 10cm diameter) to 25-30cm where it becomes clayey. Trends to light grey coarse sand at 45cm, still with cobbles (4-5cm diameter). At 65cm transitions to light grey sand with cobbles and then to silvery blue sandy clay from 75cm.	0.90	MG4	Manual	Dry	Dry	0.86 m bgl	Dry

NW SSSI Unit

Site	Latitude, Longitude	Soil Description / Notes	Depth (m bgl)	Grassland	Manual/Logger	14/08/2018	16/08/2018	31/08/2018	
N1A	52.436970, - 1.7336798	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt continuing to 40cm depth, then trending to stiff dark grey silty clay without roots. Small cobbles of maximum 3-4cm in diameter at 45cm depth, then trending to lighter grey clay towards the base of the dipwell at 70cm.	0.70		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N1B	52.436772, - 1.7337987	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt continuing to 35cm depth, then trending to stiff dark grey (mottled with brown) clay without roots which continues to 45cm depth. Sandy clay from 45cm-50cm depth with some large cobbles up to 10cm diameter. This layer could not be penetrated.	0.50		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N1C	52.436503, - 1.7339474	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt with cobbles of 3-4 cm in diameter. Topsoil transitions to red-brown sandy clay at 25cm, which continues through to the base of the dipwell at 90cm. Some cobbles of up to 5cm diameter found throughout the sandy clay.	0.90		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry

N1D	52.436349, - 1.7337130	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt with cobbles of 3-4 cm in diameter. Topsoil transitions to very stiff, mottled grey-brown clay at 30cm. The clay continues but contains angular cobbles of up to 7-8cm diameter from 60cm, with an impenetrable layer (potentially a very large rock) at 70cm depth.	0.70		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N1E	52.436169, - 1.7336258	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt with cobbles of 3-4 cm in diameter. Transitions to extremely stiff thick dark grey-brown clay at 20cm, which continues to the base at 60cm, which was a solid impenetrable layer.	0.60		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N2A	52.436950, - 1.7330327	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt with some angular cobbles of 4-5cm diameter. At 15cm depth it transitions to a stiff, dry, dark brown clay layer. This continues to 60cm depth where there is dark brown sandy clay which is extremely stiff. This continues to the base at 90cm.	0.90		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N2B	52.436527, - 1.7329470	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt. At 25cm depth it transitions to a stiff semi-moist, dark brown clay layer. From 32cm depth there are small infrequent gravel stones of less than 1cm diameter. These gravels are increasingly frequent from 50cm and increase in size to between 2-5cm in diameter. Clay transitions to light grey fine sandy clay from 60cm, with increasingly coarse sand at 75-80cm. From 80cm-90cm the sand content decreases and there is light grey stiff clay.	0.90		Logger	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N2C	52.436663, - 1.7332404	Topsoil is semi-moist, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt. Transitions to moist mottled grey clay at 24cm depth with red lines along root lines. Small gravels appearing from 30cm depth, around 2-3cm in diameter. Larger gravels from 40cm, with a mix varying between 1 and 10cm diameter. More sand gradually mixed with the clay before it transitions to blue sandy clay with gravel at 50cm depth. At 60cm depth there is another blue clay section without sands and gravels, before becoming increasingly sandy again from 75cm. It remains semi-moist blue sandy clay until the base at 90cm.	0.90		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N2D	52.436312, - 1.7330807	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous very fine silt. Transitions to extremely stiff thick dark grey-brown clay at 10cm. This continues to 43cm which was the base of the dipwell due to a hardened layer (which could be rock) that could not be penetrated.	0.43		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry

N2E	52.436105, - 1.7330966	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous very fine silt. Transitions to extremely stiff thick dark grey-brown clay at 15cm. Clay changes to light grey at 60cm, and continues to the base of the dipwell where it was too hardened and compact to break through.	0.66		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
-----	---------------------------	---	------	--	--------	-----	-----	-----	-----

About AECOM

AECOM (NYSE: ACM) is built to deliver a better world. We design, build, finance and operate infrastructure assets for governments, businesses and organizations in more than 150 countries.

As a fully integrated firm, we connect knowledge and experience across our global network of experts to help clients solve their most complex challenges.

From high-performance buildings and infrastructure, to resilient communities and environments, to stable and secure nations, our work is transformative, differentiated and vital. A Fortune 500 firm, AECOM companies had revenue of approximately US\$19 billion during the 12 months ended June 30, 2015.

See how we deliver what others can only imagine at aecom.com and [@AECOM](https://twitter.com/AECOM)

Appendix E - Bickenhill Meadows SSSI *Preliminary Hydrological Investigation Technical Note V6.*

M42 JUNCTION 6 IMPROVEMENT SCHEME

***BICKENHILL MEADOWS SITE OF SPECIAL SCIENTIFIC
INTEREST – HYDROLOGICAL INVESTIGATION TECHNICAL
NOTE (V6)***

Prepared for: HIGHWAYS ENGLAND

Prepared by: AECOM

Project number: 60543032

Quality information

Prepared by

Tim Jones BSc (Hon) PhD
Water Scientist

Checked by

Owen Tucker BSc (Hon) MSc CEnv
MCIWEM Principal Environmental
Scientist
Philip Smart BSc MSc C Geol FGS
Technical Director, Hydrogeology

Approved by

Jamie Gleave MLPM (Hons) CEnv
CSci MIEMA MIEnvSc
Associate Director
Graeme Cowling CEnv
Principal Environmental Consultant

Revision History

Revision	Revision date	Details	Authorized	Position
Version 0	13.02.2018	Original Version	Jamie Gleave	Associate Director
Version 1	09.08.2018	Update – new data	Jamie Gleave	Associate Director
Version 2	15.08.2018	Update – new data	Jamie Gleave	Associate Director
Version 3	20.08.2018 21.08.2018	Update – new data	Jamie Gleave Graeme Cowling	Associate Director Principal Consultant
Version 4	13.09.2018	Update – new data	Jamie Gleave Graeme Cowling	Associate Director Principal Consultant
Version 5	05.10.2018	Update – new data	Jamie Gleave Graeme Cowling	Associate Director Principal Consultant
Version 6	17.10.2018	FINAL - for inclusion within ES	Jamie Gleave Graeme Cowling	Associate Director Principal Consultant

Distribution List

# Hard Copies	PDF Required	Association / Company Name
------------------	--------------	----------------------------

Prepared by AECOM, AECOM House, 179 Moss Lane, Altrincham, WA15 8FH, UK (www.aecom.com)
Project Number: **60543032**

AECOM Limited (hereafter referred to as "AECOM") has prepared this Report for the sole use of Highways England, in accordance with the Agreement under which our services were performed. No other warranty, expressed or implied, is made as to the professional advice included in this Report or any other services provided by AECOM. This Report is confidential and may not be disclosed by the Client or relied upon by any other party without the prior and express written agreement of AECOM.

The information contained in this Report is based upon information provided by others and upon the assumption that all relevant information has been provided by those parties from whom it has been requested and that such information is accurate. Information obtained by AECOM has not been independently verified by AECOM, unless otherwise stated in the Report.

The methodology adopted and the sources of information used by AECOM in providing its services are outlined in this Report. The work described in this Report is based on the conditions encountered and the information available during the said period of time. The scope of this Report and the services are accordingly factually limited by these circumstances.

AECOM disclaim any undertaking or obligation to advise any person of any change in any matter affecting the Report, which may come or be brought to AECOM's attention after the date of the Report.

Certain statements made in the Report that are not historical facts may constitute estimates, projections or other forward-looking statements and even though they are based on reasonable assumptions as of the date of the Report, such forward-looking statements by their nature involve risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from the results predicted.

AECOM specifically does not guarantee or warrant any estimate or projections contained in this Report. Unless otherwise stated in this Report, the assessments made assume that the sites and facilities will continue to be used for their current purpose without significant changes.

Copyright © This Report is the copyright of AECOM and its wholly owned subsidiary, AECOM Limited. Any unauthorised reproduction or usage by any person other than the addressee is strictly prohibited.

FOIA Disclaimer AECOM Limited considers that the following constitutes exempt information on grounds of confidentiality and commercially sensitive information under the terms of the Freedom of Information Act 2000, which shall not be disclosed to third parties. The enclosed information is not to be made available to the public for at least six years from the end of the project, unless specifically agreed otherwise.

Any specific enquiries about what may be commercially sensitive or queries about disclosure should be directed to **ian.bamforth@aecom.com**. We would be grateful to be informed of all requests by third parties for information contained in this document.

Table of Contents

1.	Introduction.....	5
2.	Proposed Link Road.....	6
3.	Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Designation	7
4.	Shadowbrook Meadows Local Nature Reserve	8
5.	Bickenhill Meadows SSSI / Shadowbrook Meadows LNR Site Visit Report.....	8
6.	Ground Condition and Soils.....	13
7.	Topographic Survey.....	15
8.	Ground Investigation	17
9.	Soil Saturation Monitoring.....	19
10.	Ground Investigation Results at the SSSIs.....	21
11.	National Vegetation Classification (NVC) Surveys	22
12.	Conceptual Model	26
13.	Summary and Recommendations	33
14.	Mitigation Hierarchy	34

Appendix A Sections

Appendix B Dipwell Details and Soil Description

Appendix C Conceptual Models

Appendix D Proposed Mitigation Design for SE SSSI Unit

Figures

Figure 1.	M42 Junction 6 Improvements – General Arrangement	6
Figure 2.	M42 Junction 6 design in relation to Bickenhill Meadows SSSI units.....	7
Figure 3.	Location of the Bickenhill Meadows SSSI units, to west of the M42 Junction 6.....	7
Figure 4.	Bedrock deposits in the area around Bickenhill Meadows SSSI.....	14
Figure 5.	Superficial deposits in the area around Bickenhill Meadows SSSI	14
Figure 6.	LiDAR data.....	15
Figure 7.	Contour map to show topography surrounding the two SSSI units.....	16
Figure 8.	Catchment boundaries as determined from GIS catchment analysis.....	17
Figure 9.	Location of Glacial Sands and Gravels along the proposed link road adjacent to SE SSSI	18
Figure 10.	Location of Glacial Sands and Gravels along the proposed link road adjacent to NW SSSI	18
Figure 11.	Ground Investigation locations	19
Figure 12.	Location of dipwells	20
Figure 13.	Contours showing top of Mercia Mudstone and thickness of superficial deposits.....	28
Figure 14.	Long-term rainfall records for Coleshill raingauge	30

Tables

Table 1 Ground Investigation findings for the SE and NW SSSI units and periphery

Table 2 Mitigation options for the SSSI units in hierarchical order

Table 3 Potential hydrological impacts on Bickenhill Meadows SSSI - Mitigation options appraisal

M42 Junction 6 Improvement Scheme – Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Hydrological Investigation

1. Introduction

M42 Junction 6 provides connections between the national motorway network and the A45 Coventry Road, which provides strategic access to Birmingham to the west and Coventry to the east. Current congestion and journey reliability issues on the M42 and at Junction 6 are causing severe delays on parts of the strategic road network, as the junction does not have sufficient capacity to accommodate the predicted growth in traffic associated with future planned development in the area.

The M42 Junction 6 Improvement Scheme (the Scheme) has been developed by Highways England (HE) to provide a solution to improve junction capacity, support economic growth, improve access, and ensure the safe and reliable operation of the network.

The Scheme is currently being subject to a process of Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA), the design of which includes the following key components and works.

- A new junction approximately 1.8 km south of the existing Junction 6 off the M42 (referred to as M42 Junction 5A).
- A new 2.4 km long dual carriageway link road between M42 Junction 5A and Clock Interchange, with a free flow slip road to the A45 Coventry Road.
- Capacity and junction improvements at Clock Interchange.
- New free flow links between the A45 and M42 motorway at M42 Junction 6.
- The realignment and modification of the B4438 Catherine de Barnes Lane, Clock Lane and St. Peters Lane west of the M42 motorway, and of Eastway and the Middle Bickenhill Loop north east of M42 Junction 6.
- Modifications to the location and spacing of emergency refuge areas, overhead gantries and message signing along the M42 motorway.
- Modifications to the Gaelic Athletic Association (Páirc nah Éireann) sports facility.

A Ground Investigation is currently being undertaken to establish the existing ground conditions that would underlie key areas of the Scheme, and to obtain data for use in the EIA.

The proposed link road has been designed to be positioned below the flight path control zones of Birmingham International Airport, and to place much of the dual carriageway in cutting (up to 10m depth) in order to lower the road and thereby provide visual screening and noise attenuation benefits; however, construction of these earthworks has the potential to disrupt groundwater flows in the area.

The EIA process has so far identified that the proposed link road may also have an adverse impact on Bickenhill Meadows Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI), which consists of two separate units located either side of the proposed link road. The SSSI includes areas of wet woodland and wet meadows that support a range of plants and other species. The cutting and associated works are also in close proximity (within 300 m) of streams that flow through each SSSI unit, which may be impacted during the construction and operation phases.

Accordingly, the processes for maintaining the hydrology of the two SSSI units needs to be established in order to identify and understand the potential impacts of the Scheme on the SSSI, such that appropriate mitigation measures for any likely significant effects can be identified and, where possible, incorporated into its design. In particular, the importance of rainfall, groundwater, nearby streams and localised flooding needs to be investigated.

This Technical Note reports the outcomes of a hydrological investigation of the two SSSI units. It considers the soil and geological ground conditions from available data sources, the topography around the SSSI by reviewing LiDAR and contour data, and reports on the observations made during site visits (including one attended by Natural England). Based on preliminary findings, the note also considers the potential effects of the cutting and loss of surface water catchment, and sets out the scope of additional ground and field investigations, as requested by Natural England. The findings of the investigation are reported and developed into a conceptual model of each site, and potential mitigation and compensation measures are also discussed.

2. Proposed Link Road

The current general arrangement for the proposed link road is shown in Figure 1, set within its local context.

From M42 Junction 5A, the link road would initially travel north westwards through open fields to the north of Hampton Lane Farm, where it would cross a number of public rights of way. A roundabout would be constructed (Barber’s Coppice Roundabout) south of the SSSI which would provide a tie-in from the existing Catherine De Barnes Lane (both in a north and southbound direction) to the link road.

As the proposed link road continues north, it would cross Catherine De Barnes Lane approximately 70 m south of the T-junction of Shadowbrook Lane. Approximately 500m north of the crossing point with Catherine De Barnes Lane, a second local roundabout (Bickenhill Roundabout) would be constructed to provide a north and south tie-in with Catherine De Barnes Lane and St Peters Lane. Between these two local roundabouts, Catherine De Barnes Lane would be realigned at its furthest point approximately 20 m west of its current alignment.

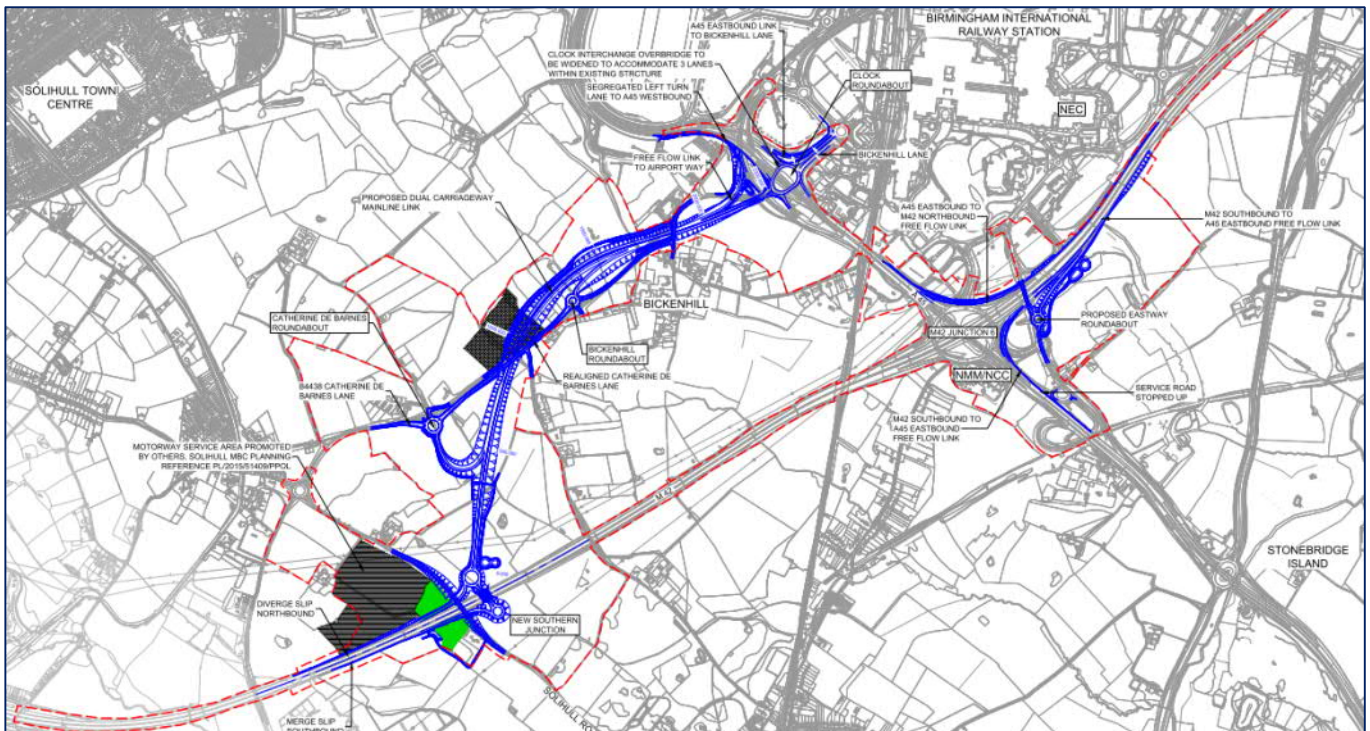


Figure 1: M42 Junction 6 Improvements – General Arrangement
 (source: extract from drawing HE551485-ACM-HGN-M42_GEN_ZZ_ZZ-DR-CH-0012 P02.3)

Figure 2 shows the Scheme in relation in the SSSI units.

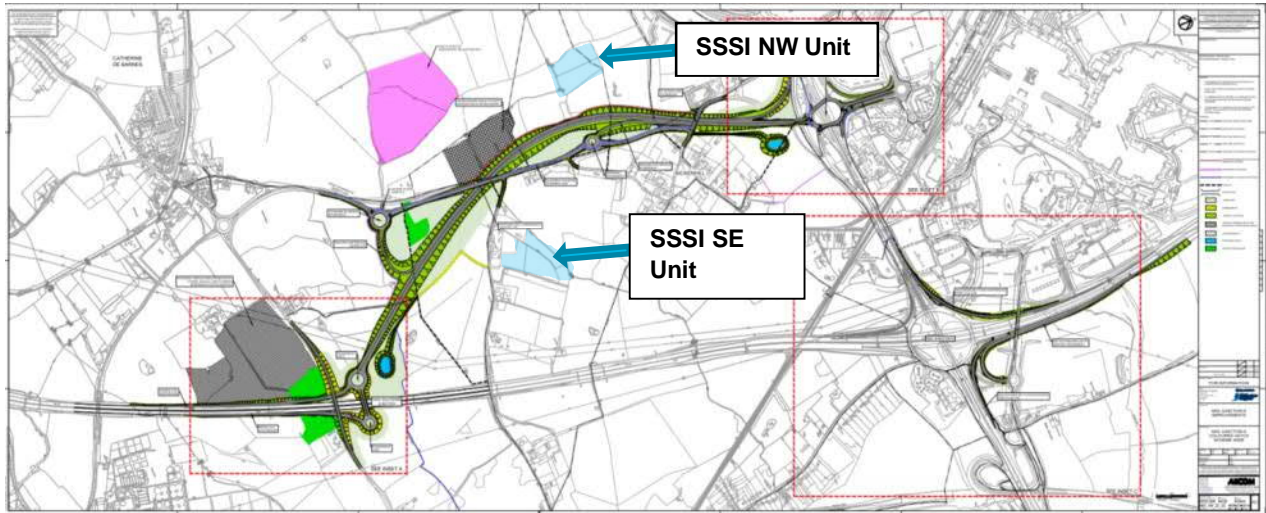


Figure 2: M42 Junction 6 design in relation to Bickenhill Meadows SSSI units (note that this is an earlier design. Figure 1 shows the latest Design Fix (3c)).

3. Bickenhill Meadows SSSI Designation

Bickenhill Meadows SSSI is split between two units, located either side of Catherine de Barnes Lane (centred on approximate national grid references SP182822 and SP188816) as shown in Figure 2 and on Ordnance Survey mapping in Figure 3. The total area designated covers 7.2 hectares and was notified in 1991.

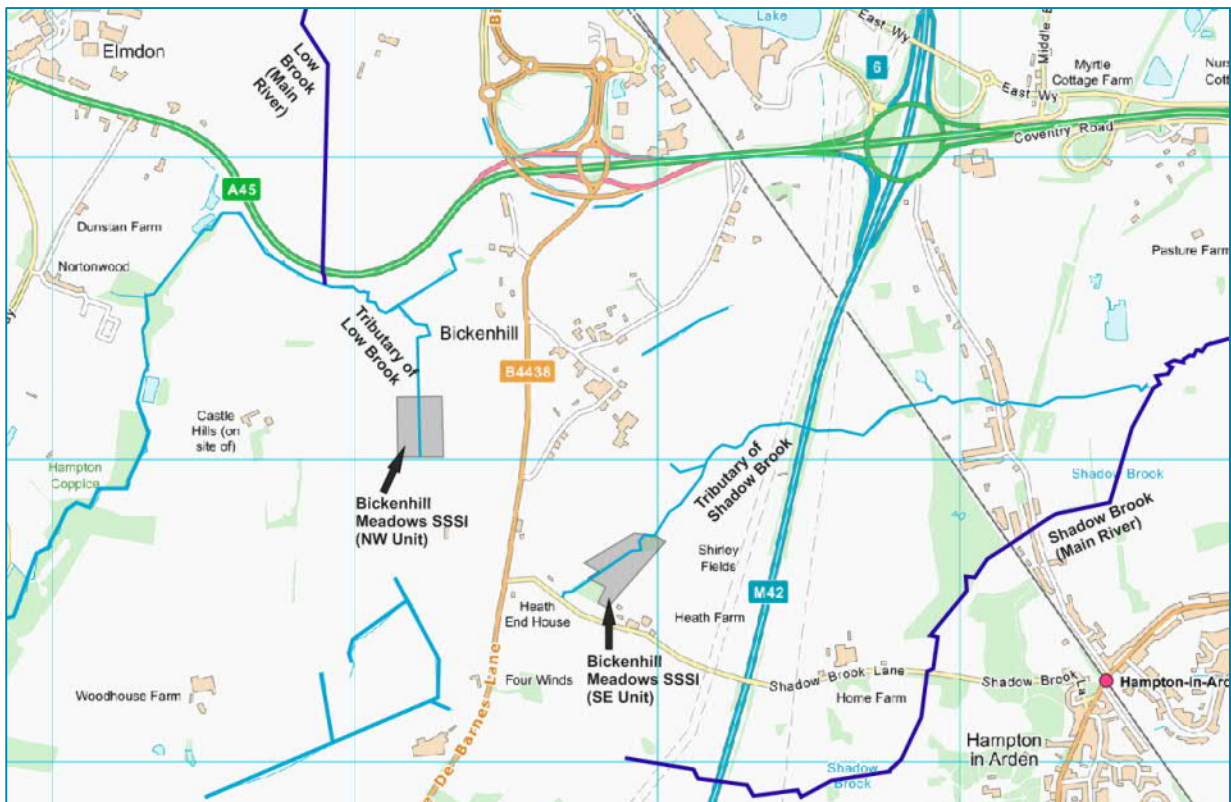


Figure 3. Location of the Bickenhill Meadows SSSI units, to west of the M42 Junction 6. (source: Ordnance Survey © Crown copyright and database rights 2018).

The Natural England citation¹ for the SSSI is as follows.

¹ <https://designatedsites.naturalengland.org.uk/SiteDetail.aspx?SiteCode=S1002847>

Bickenhill Meadows consists of two groups of fields comprising species-rich grassland situated to the south and west of the village of Bickenhill on predominantly neutral soils overlying Keuper Marl.

*The meadows comprise one of the richest grassland floras in the county with good examples of both meadow foxtail (*Alopecurus pratensis*), great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*), flood meadow and common knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*), crested dog's-tail (*Cynosurus cristatus*) meadow and pasture. Both grassland types have declined very severely nationally in the 20th century due to agricultural improvement. The West Midlands Region contains a major part of the national resource of the common knapweed – crested dog's-tail grassland type which is typically associated with level topography, loam or clay soils, moderately free drainage and the retention of traditional farming methods with small fields. There is a complex pattern of vegetation resulting from local variations in topography and drainage, such as the ridge and furrow pattern, evident in some of the fields. This has led to the development of mosaics where the main vegetation types intermingle, as well as to areas where each type can be recognised.*

*Further interest is provided by wetter areas characterised by rushes *Juncus* spp., sedges *Carex* spp. and tall herbs such as meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*) and great burnet. Both groups of meadows have streams and there is a good range of tree and shrub species in the hedgerows around the fields.*

Both units of the SSSI have a status of 'Unfavourable – Recovering'. However, the Natural England condition notes indicate that the southeastern SSSI shows a good cover of desirable species and may move to favourable in the near future.

Natural England's Management Principles for the site includes the following information with regard to drainage, "*For both the damper pastures and meadows, regular and careful maintenance of surface drainage including ditches and drains can be essential to prevent adverse changes in the plant composition of the sward. Deepening of surface drainage should be avoided.*"

From the available information on the SSSI it is clear that the plant species in the wet meadows and woodland areas within the SSSI units require wet ground conditions, although subtle changes in topography and local features (such as the local ditches and spoil heaps from past clearing of them) exert an influence on the botanical communities and distinctive zones of MG4 (wetter) and MG5 (drier) plant communities according to the National Vegetation Classification (NVC). It is also not evident from Natural England's SSSI designation and management principles, or through consultation with Natural England and the Warwickshire Wildlife Trust (WWT), whether the maintenance of wet conditions in the SSSI is primarily dependent on surface water or groundwater inflow from the surrounding areas.

4. Shadowbrook Meadows Local Nature Reserve

The southeastern SSSI unit is wholly encompassed by the larger Shadowbrook Meadows Local Nature Reserve (LNR), which is owned and managed by WWT. The WWT website² describes the site as follows:

"The site contains old meadows and pasture with a stream and wet woodland. The small stream runs through the reserve and sumptuous hedgerows divide the site into two dry meadows, on the eastern side, with two wet meadows to the west. Unfertilised, unsprayed and unploughed, the meadows' diversity has been maintained over centuries by the unaltered, traditional haycutting and grazing regime".

5. Bickenhill Meadows SSSI / Shadowbrook Meadows LNR Site Visit Report

The Bickenhill Meadows SSSI was initially visited on 18/01/18 in dry conditions but following a week of occasional heavy rain showers and some light snow and sleet showers. It was subsequently visited in spring with representatives of Natural England on 26/04/18 in a period of prevailing dry conditions, and again on 02/05/18 following 12 hours of heavy rain showers, which had resulted in some waterlogging of the surface. The northwestern SSSI unit was visited during wintry showers on the 28/02/18 and with

² Warwickshire Wildlife Trust – Shadowbrook Meadows website, <http://www.warwickshirewildlifetrust.org.uk/reserves/shadowbrook-meadows>, accessed 15/8/18.

Natural England on 26/04/18 in fine weather. Numerous further visits have been taken to both units throughout the summer of 2018.

Southeast (SE) SSSI Unit / Shadowbrook Meadows LNR

The southeastern unit consists of four fields and wet woodland at the far north of the site, and (along with the LNR) covers 4.4 hectares. The stream that flows through the centre of the site (from southwest to northeast) is a tributary of Shadow Brook. It meets Shadow Brook to the east of the M42 approximately 2 km downstream at NGR SP 20625 82231. The dry meadows are to the east of the site, and wet meadows are to the west. General views of the wet meadows are shown in Photos 1 to 6 under different conditions.



Photo 1 (top left) and Photo 2 (top right) Wet meadow fields at Bickenhill Meadows SSSI SE Unit / Shadowbrook Meadows LNR in cold/wet conditions; Photo 3 (middle left) Wet meadow fields at

Bickenhill Meadows SSSI SE Unit in warm/dry conditions; Photo 4 (middle right) and Photo 5 (bottom left) Bickenhill Meadows SSSI SE Unit in warm/dry conditions; Photo 6 (bottom right) Bickenhill Meadows SSSI unit southern field after a prolonged period of hot weather.

The topography of the site is generally level, with a gentle rise in elevation away from the tributary of Shadow Brook, which flows through the approximate centre of the site. The wet meadow to the north of the brook is relatively flat and may have been the route of the former watercourse prior to digging of the new brook course to the south and the ephemeral ditch to the north (which collects runoff from the steeper hillside slopes but is essentially a soakaway).

Along the edge of the brook there is a slight rise in the elevation that may be a relic of digging out or maintaining the brook. From here north the land gently falls before rising towards the ditch along the northern boundary of the SSSI. Within this general topographic form are isolated depressions that form part of a complex ridge and furrow pattern extending across the site, and which are a relic of historic ploughing practices. This is very subtle with only small changes in elevation of the order of tens of centimeters, but sufficient enough to result in significant changes in plant communities as depicted by the varying position of MG4 and MG5 plant communities. Ground elevation decreases slightly to the north as the stream flows downslope, but the overall gradient across the site is minor.

To the south of the brook, the ground rises more steeply more the watercourse and the plant communities appear to be less diverse and well developed. A gas main runs east-west across this field, the route indicated by a line of flushes suggesting that soil hydrology has been locally affected. Due to the intervening presence of the brook, the elevation of this field, and the angle of the slope, it is unlikely to be affected by the Scheme.

There is a small pond towards the centre of the southern field of the LNR site (but not within the SSSI) with emergent reed vegetation and which is surrounded by a stock proof fence (see Photo 2). The origins of the pond are not known, but when observed in very wet conditions a 'trickle' of water flowed from the pond and overland to the north to ultimately meet the tributary of Shadow Brook, possibly as a result of any undersoil drainage being blocked.

The source of the tributary of Shadow Brook is mapped by Ordnance Survey as being immediately north of Shadowbrook Lane to the south of the SE SSSI unit. Here lateral ephemeral drainage ditches from the road coalesce and flow north beneath the caravan park site and emerge at the southern border of the SSSI. There is a pond on the opposite (south) side of Shadowbrook Lane to the mapped source of the stream, which collects water from the adjacent road and agricultural drainage from the arable field opposite the LNR. This field includes a small ditch of around 0.5 m width, which flows from Catherine de Barnes Lane in a northeasterly direction towards the LNR and SSSI. Catherine de Barnes Lane marks the watershed boundary, and all surface water in this upper section of the SSSI's catchment is expected to be channeled towards this agricultural ditch and collect in the pond adjacent to Shadowbrook Lane, which is a natural focal point for drainage to collect. Although there was no obvious culvert beneath the road it is believed that runoff finds its way under Shadowbrook Lane either through unknown drainage network or subsurface flow. Significant amounts of standing water have been observed in the ditches either side of Shadowbrook Lane after heavy rainfall in winter and spring and potentially indicate impeded flow beneath the road, presumably due to siltation and blockage by large woody debris and decomposing organic matter. In summary, it appears that the brook is likely to be rain fed, receiving drainage also from surrounding agricultural land and Shadowbrook Lane. There may also be drainage from the small caravan park site under which the brook flows prior to emerging in the SSSI.

Given its small size, intermittent and generally low flows, the brook is expected to suffer from water quality issues typical of an arable catchment, plus drainage from local roads and potentially other sources, such as runoff from the caravan site.

There is also an ephemeral drainage ditch bordering the northwest of the site (Photo 7), which varies between 1 and 1.5m wide. This was largely dry on the majority of site visits, with some ponded water in

places of 1-2 cm depth adjacent to the upper wet meadow. However, when observed after heavy rain there was obvious flow in the ditch, which presumably was sourced from runoff from the adjacent arable field which slopes significantly down to the SSSI. As the ditch enters the alder woodland at the northern extent of the SSSI there was a small amount of flow even during the drier site visits, which drains into the tributary of Shadow Brook (approximate NGR SP 18950 81743), see Photo 8.



Photo 7 (left) Pondered water in agricultural drainage ditch at NW border of SE SSSI Unit; Photo 8 (right) confluence of the tributary of Shadow Brook and the drainage ditch within the alder woodland; Photo 9. Furrows and depressions saturated with water following rainfall in meadow field of SE SSSI Unit.

Within the SE SSSI Unit the tributary of Shadow Brook is very straight and could have initially been an agricultural drainage ditch. It is around 0.5 m wide and water depth was in the region of 3-5 cm when observed on the site visits on the 02/05/18 (Photos 10 and 11). The bed was generally covered by accumulations of fine sediment (and leaf litter in the autumn), although some small accumulations of gravel of 4-5 mm in diameter were also evident.

Towards the centre of the SE SSSI Unit the brook is culverted under a grassed land bridge through a plastic pipe of around 400 mm diameter (Photo 12). Upstream the culvert is partially buried, and there is potential for impoundment of flow during extreme rainfall events, which may result in occasional flooding of the immediate grasslands, although there was no evidence of this. Several blockages across the stream from woody debris and accumulations of leaves were observed during the site visits, which again could cause localised impoundment of flows and encourage local out of bank events. Connectivity to the surrounding floodplain is good in some sections, particularly on the left bank in the northern field. However, the stream is not considered significant enough in size to cause widespread out of bank events across the grasslands and woodland, and Natural England and WWT are not aware of any widespread flooding at the site resulting from out of bank stream flows. However, the brook may locally support groundwater levels in the close vicinity of the channel, and it is possible that soil on either side has been compacted in places due to the past placing of dredgings, and this may influence soil hydrology on the upslope side by helping to maintain wetter ground conditions.

In the northeastern (wet) field of the SE SSSI unit, the ridge and furrow topography gives rise to diverse ecological communities. The furrows tend to be saturated and support grassland species designated as MG4 under the National Vegetation Classification (NVC). MG4 represents a nationally rare flood meadow community. Characteristic species include greater burnet (*Sanguisobra officinalis*) and meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*). The ridges are drier and support MG5 neutral grassland species with assemblages of English crested dog's tail (*Cynosurus cristatus*) and common knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*), amongst others. Subtle changes in colour across the wet meadow, shown in Photo 1, indicate the changes in vegetation across the site.

When the SE SSSI unit was observed following heavy rainfall on 02/05/18 the entire site was extremely wet, with most grassland areas appearing to be fully saturated (Photo 9). All furrows and depressions that were observed during the visit contained surface water, including in the generally drier meadow fields.

This observational evidence indicates that the moisture source for the wet grasslands is most probably rainwater, which is slow to drain away due to the poor permeability of the subsurface layers.



Photo 10 (left) and Photo 11 (centre): Tributary of Shadow Brook within the wet woodland. Photo 12: (right) Culvert exit downstream of the grassed land bridge.

Northwest (NW) SSSI Unit

The NW SSSI unit is a small, roughly square grassland area of 2.7 ha, bordered on all sides by a scrub and woodland margin (Photo 13). A tributary of Low Brook flows from south to north and divides the field approximately in half, with the topography rising away from the tributary gently on both sides initially, becoming steeper further afield. The brook itself is surrounded by intermittent hedgerow vegetation. Immediately south of the site is a historic landfill site of raised elevation, from which groundwater (of unknown quality) may flow out towards the SSSI, as indicated by iron staining seeping from the embankment.

The watercourse appears to emanate from numerous ephemeral drainage ditches which flow around the elevated historic landfill area and coalesce at the south of the site to then flow north through the SSSI. A further drainage ditch flows north along the western boundary of the site. As the watercourse flows north through the SSSI unit it widens out into a very silted marshland area, with little discernable surface water flow (Photo 14), before reverting to a well-defined stream of up to 2.5m wide (Photo 15) which has generally good floodplain connectivity within the SSSI, and emergent macrophytic vegetation in places. The watercourse is not considered of sufficient size to cause significant flooding of the adjacent fields.



Photo 13 (left), Photo 14 (centre) and Photo 15 (right). Bickenhill Meadows SSSI NW Unit.

Vegetation patterns on the eastern side of the SSSI indicate that there may be an insulated wetter area just upslope of the tributary of Low Brook towards the centre of the site. This is indicated by a slightly raised area with a distinct and 'spongy' vegetation assemblage, which is different in character from the surrounding communities of MG4 grasslands (including great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*) and meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*) and MG5 grasslands (including knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*)) that are

found across the eastern field of the site. The wetter ground conditions may also be influenced by dredged material placed in a bund along the eastern bank, which may be compacting the soil below and reducing permeability.

The western field has a generally drier and more uniform character than the eastern field (Photo 16), and is at a slightly greater elevation than the eastern field. The spatial distribution of the MG4 and MG5 grasslands across both fields is a likely consequence of local variability in moisture content in the upper 30-40 cm of soil, with tussocks and ridges across the site providing slightly drier conditions than localised depressions and troughs.



Photo 16 (left) – eastern field within the NW SSSI Unit showing the fringing blackthorn trees.



Photo 17 (right) tributary of Low Brook immediately north of the SE SSSI Unit boundary looking towards Birmingham International Airport.

As the tributary of Low Brook flows out of the SSSI to the north of the site, the watercourse becomes a perfectly straight (artificially straightened), deeply incised drainage channel with a width of around 1 m (see Photo 17). This flows north to Low Brook, which is then culverted beneath the Birmingham International Airport runway.

6. Ground Condition and Soils

According to the British Geological Survey's Geology of Britain website (<http://mapapps.bgs.ac.uk/geologyofbritain3d/>) the bedrock geology beneath both SSSI units is Sidmouth Mudstone Formation (Mercia Mudstone) (Figure 4). No superficial deposits are recorded below the SE SSSI unit, while alluvium (clay, silt, sand and gravel) is mapped around the stream through the NW SSSI unit (Figure 5).

The alluvium deposits at the northwestern SSSI unit are Secondary 'A' aquifer. The Sidmouth Mudstone Formation is classified as Secondary 'B' aquifer. Secondary A aquifers are permeable layers capable of supporting water supplies at a local rather than strategic scale, and in some cases forming an important source of base flow to rivers. Secondary B aquifers are predominantly lower permeability layers which may store and yield limited amounts of groundwater due to localised features such as fissures, thin permeable horizons and weathering.

Borehole records collected from historic ground investigations undertaken during the development of the M42 motorway in the 1970s and 1980s showed that groundwater was generally encountered within 10m of the ground surface adjacent to the M42 at Junction 6. The nearest borehole records for the NW SSSI unit shows a depth to groundwater of 6.75m at the western extent of the SSSI (within 50m of the northwestern corner of the SSSI), as recorded in 1978 (reference SP18SE/511)³, and the borehole log indicates sand and gravel pockets within clay to a depth of 4.7m. Another borehole approximately 130m

³British Geological survey, Geology of Britain website, available at <http://mapapps.bgs.ac.uk/geologyofbritain3d/index.html> (accessed 20/5/18)

to the south of the SSSI had a depth to water of 3m, also in 1978 (reference SP18SE/510)⁴. The borehole log here indicated sandy clay and gravel to a depth of 1.3m, with stiffer clay below to a depth of 5.8m, underlain by mudstone.

Further ground investigations were undertaken to the north of the NW SSSI unit in 2011 in relation to the Birmingham International Airport runway extension and re-routing of the A45⁵. The nearest borehole was located approximately 250m north of the SSSI unit, adjacent to the tributary of Low Brook (i.e. towards the valley bottom). This borehole (reference CP26) indicated slightly gravelly sandy clay with gravelly sand lenses to 2.2m, underlain by Mercia Mudstone, with groundwater struck at 4.2m depth (in October 2011). A borehole approximately 380m north of the SSSI (reference CPRC31) recorded slightly sandy clay to 1.65m underlain by Mercia Mudstone. No groundwater was encountered in October 2011.

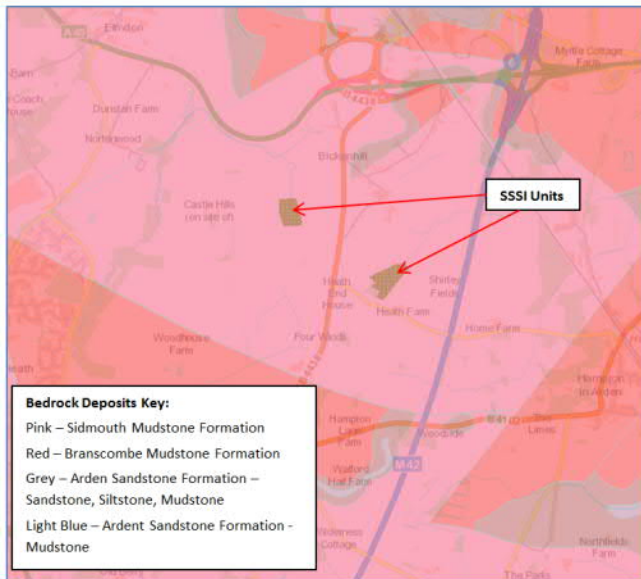


Figure 4. Bedrock deposits in the area around Bickenhill Meadows SSSI (source: British Geological Survey Geindex website, <http://www.bgs.ac.uk/geindex>).



Figure 5. Superficial deposits in the area around Bickenhill Meadows SSSI (source: British Geological Survey Geindex website, <http://www.bgs.ac.uk/geindex>).

There are no historic borehole records in the immediate vicinity of the SE SSSI unit. The nearest is 340m to the east of the site (SP18SE/26B) and was drilled as part of the ground investigation for the M42 in 1970. This borehole had a depth to water of 11.05m. The borehole log indicates that the upper layers consisted of silty clay (weathered mudstone), with lumps of hard mudstone apparent – from 4.45m depth, and weathered mudstone extending to the borehole base at 13.55m.

According to the Environment Agency there are no groundwater abstractions within 3 km of either SSSI unit. Solihull Metropolitan Borough Council has confirmed that there are five known Private Water Supplies within 2 km of the site, although exact locations have not been provided.

No springs are marked on current Ordnance Survey mapping in the immediate vicinity of the SSSI units, or on historical mapping that is available online. The nearest spring is marked ('issues' on Ordnance Survey mapping) approximately 500m to the southeast of the SE SSSI Unit at the source of Shadow Brook. When visited on site on 27/10/17, Shadow Brook was completely dry at its source and along its channel until east of the M42. This suggests that there may be low groundwater levels, or that there may only be an ephemeral groundwater input to the stream at times of high groundwater level conditions. While several pockets of sand and gravel that could contain groundwater are mapped in the area,

⁴British Geological survey, Geology of Britain website, available at <http://mapapps.bgs.ac.uk/geologyofbritain3d/index.html> (accessed 20/5/18)

⁵ Birmingham Airport (December 2011) Factual Report on Ground Investigation for the Proposed Runway Extension at Birmingham Airport,

particularly on higher ground, these do not extend to the SSSIs, although it is not currently known whether this is simply due to a lack of available information. The Ground Investigation for the Scheme will help clarify the full spatial location of the sand and gravel pockets.

Cranfield University's Soilscape website (<http://www.landis.org.uk/soilscape/>) indicates that the soil across the study area, including both SSSI units, is slowly permeable seasonally wet slightly acid base-rich loamy and clayey soils. Habitats typically associated with such soils are seasonally wet pastures and woodlands.

7. Topographic Survey

LiDAR topographic data has been obtained from the UK Government's Open Data website (<https://data.gov.uk/>) for the area covering the two SSSI units. This is shown in Figure 6 overlain onto Ordnance Survey Mapping. The surrounding topography is also shown in contour form in Figure 7. Areas of the highest elevation (shown as pale green shading in Figure 6) are located: i) immediately to the east of the northwestern SSSI unit; ii) at Bickenhill village; iii) at Catherine de Barnes Lane north of the Shadowbrook Lane junction; and iv) close to Four Winds to the south of the SE SSSI unit. Areas of progressively lower elevation are found along the streams that flow through each SSSI (yellow to light brown to dark brown shading).

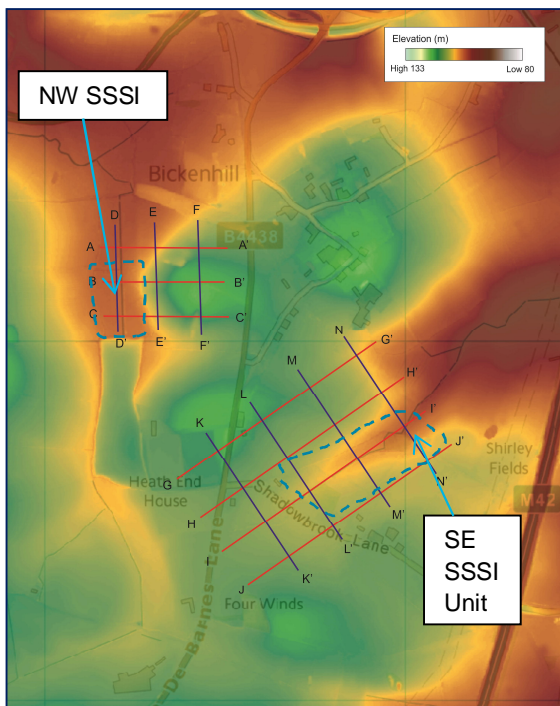


Figure 6. LiDAR data (source: UK open data website) overlain on Ordnance Survey data (crown copyright and database rights 2018 Ordnance Survey). Solid lines indicate locations of topographic sections, as shown in Appendix A. Dashed lines indicate approximate SSSI locations. The figure shows a surface water divide between the two sites running NE-SW.

Around the SE SSSI unit the topography gently declines in elevation from the east, south and west towards the tributary of Shadow Brook, which has gentle valley slopes surrounding it as it flows to the northeast. Similarly, the northwestern SSSI unit has slopes falling away from the east, south and west, with a gentle valley forming to the north as the stream in the SSSI flows towards Low Brook. A series of topographic sections have been derived from the LiDAR data. The section lines are indicated and labelled in Figure 6, and are all presented in Appendix A.

It is clear from the sections that there is a general decline in elevation from east to west towards the NW SSSI unit (sections A-C). This is essentially a valley side to the tributary of Low Brook. As the new dual carriageway would be located to the east of the NW SSSI (see Figures 1 and 2) there is potential for flow pathways between the Scheme and the downslope SSSI. If construction and operational runoff was not properly controlled, and appropriate mitigation measures not put into place, then there could be adverse impacts to habitats and water quality within the SSSI unit from this runoff. However, the Scheme includes

mitigation for all potential adverse impacts from road drainage and spillage incidents during construction and operation.

There is also a decline in elevation from south to north towards the NW SSSI unit (sections D-F). This includes a field directly south of the SSSI unit which is elevated in comparison to the surrounding land, and is a former landfill site.

The topographic long sections for the SE SSSI unit (sections G-J) indicate a general decline in elevation from the south of Shadowbrook Lane towards the SSSI, while the cross sections (sections K-N) indicate gentle valley slopes rising each side of the watercourse. As designs indicate that the new dual carriageway will cross Catherine de Barnes Lane just south of the Shadowbrook Lane junction, and will continue in a southeast direction (Figure 8), there is potential for surface water flows between the Scheme and the SSSI unit. Again, this could have impacts on the habitats in the SSSI if appropriate mitigation for surface water runoff from construction and operation was not implemented; however, various mitigation measures are built into the Scheme design.

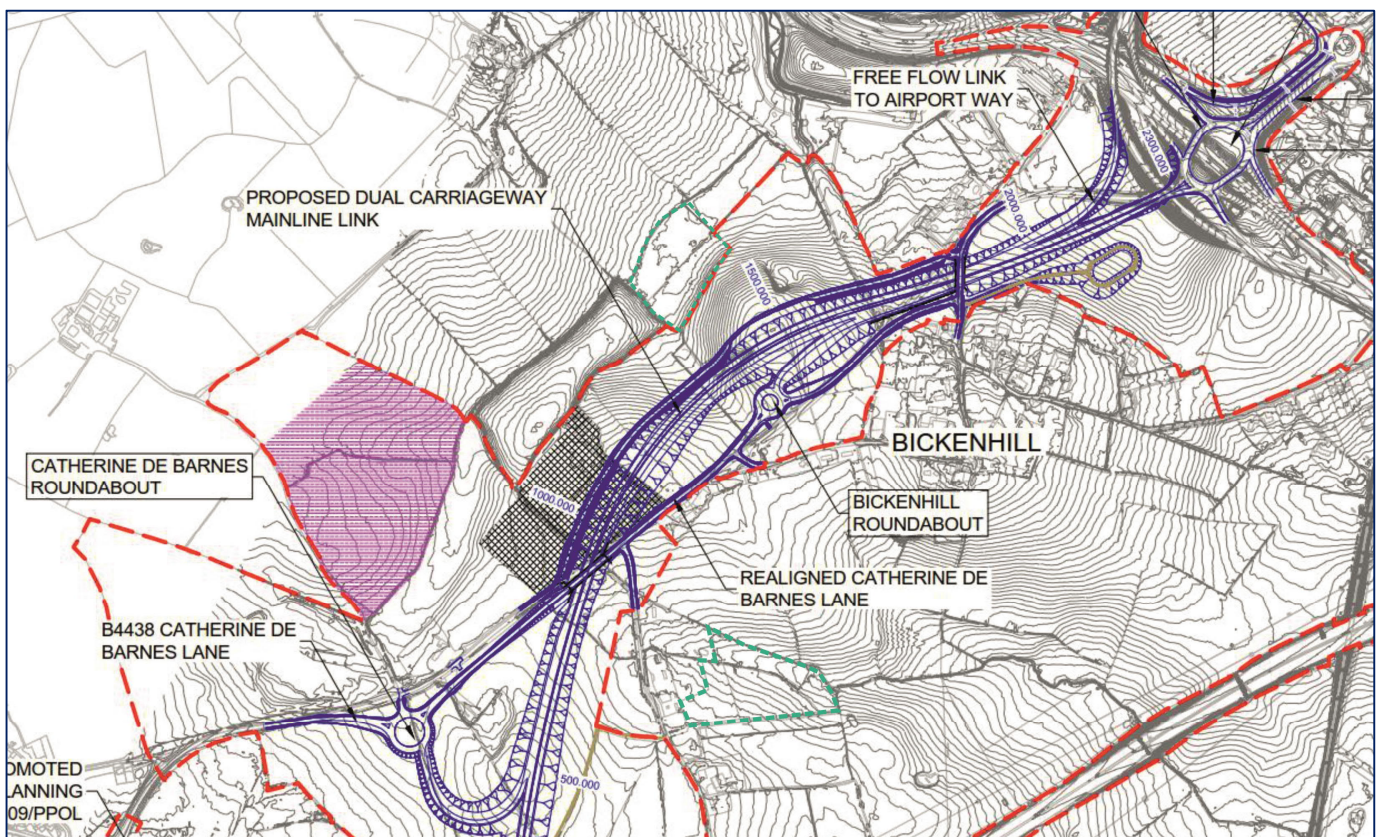


Figure 7. Contour map to show topography surrounding the two SSSI units. SSSI units are outlined in a green dashed line, with the Scheme red line boundary shown in red). Contours were derived from topographic survey undertaken at PCF Stage 2 for the Scheme.

In Figure 8, the surface water catchments for each SSSI unit have been derived from the LiDAR data. The NW SSSI unit has a noticeably larger catchment than the SE SSSI unit, and extends a considerable distance to the southwest where it is interrupted by the Grand Union Canal near Catherine de Barnes. On the basis of the approximate road alignment shown in Figure 8, the proportion of the catchments lost to the Scheme for each SSSI unit would be 4.7% for the NW unit and 21.4% for the SE unit, based on Design Fix 3c.

The site observations and topographic investigation of LiDAR data suggest that surface water flows are important contributors to the habitats in the two SSSI units, particularly in the close vicinity of the channels. However, significant flooding of the units is very unlikely and it is more likely that rainfall combined with the ridge and furrow topography and localised hillslope runoff is the most significant source of water controlling the hydrology of the wet meadows. The role of groundwater flow is uncertain.

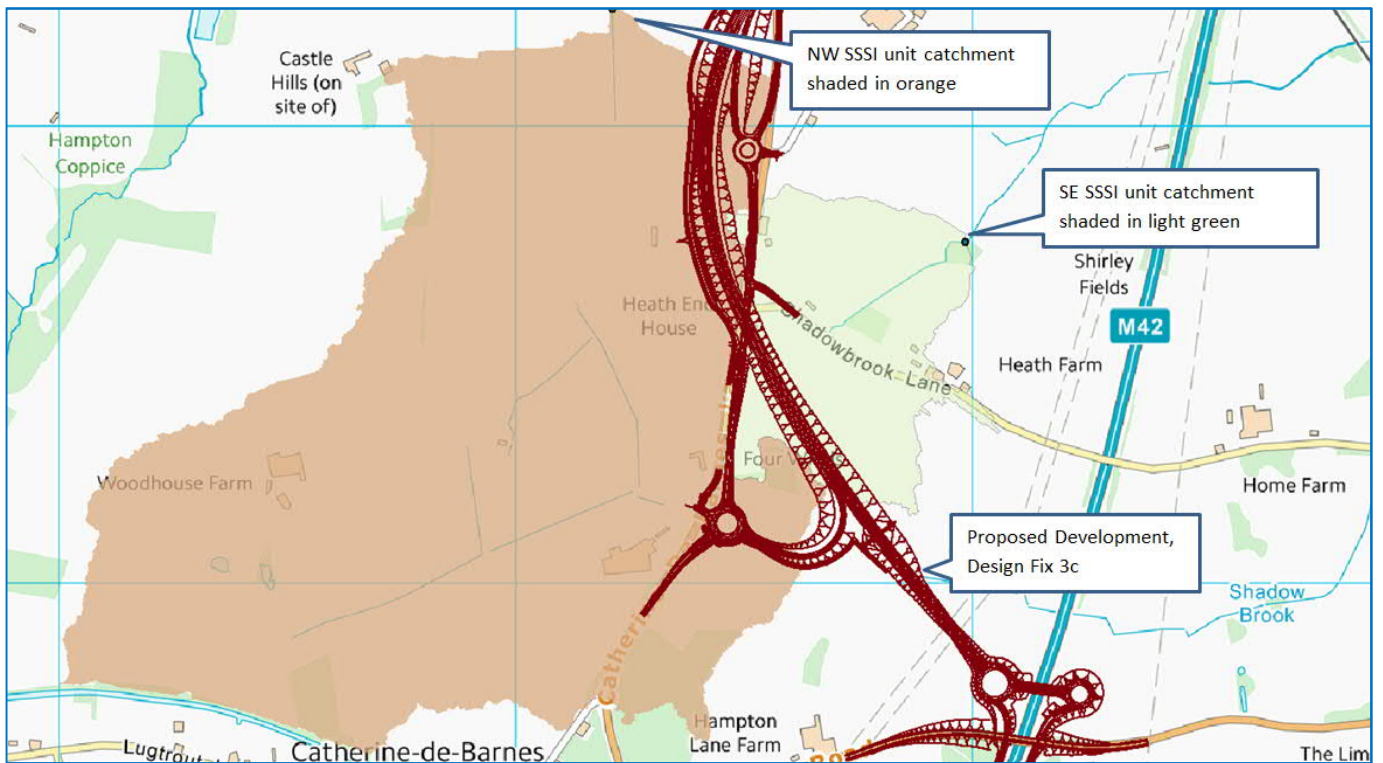


Figure 8. Catchment boundaries as determined from GIS catchment analysis, with the Design Fix 3c road alignment overlain in red.

8. Ground Investigation

The Ground Investigation currently being undertaken as part of the Scheme will provide some understanding of groundwater levels in the vicinity of the SSSI and the extent to which they may intersect with the wet meadows and woodlands. It will also reveal whether glacial sand and gravel deposits extend to, or intersect with, the two SSSI units.

The design of the proposed link road indicates that in places the cuttings will have a depth of up to 10 m below existing ground level. Adjacent to the SE SSSI unit, the cutting would have depths varying between 5 and 8 m below existing ground level, while adjacent to the NW SSSI unit depths would be between 0 and 9 m lower than existing levels. The potential for drawdown of groundwater is thought to be greatest where the cutting will intersect patches of glacial sands and gravel and Arden Sandstone. There are no mapped Arden Sandstone outcrops adjacent to the SSSIs that would be impacted by the cutting (see Figure 4), but there are deposits of glacial sands and gravels as indicated in Figure 9 and 10. Dewatering of these deposits due to the road could impact on lateral groundwater flow towards the SSSIs, and it remains a possibility that they are more extensive than current mapping suggests. While there is potential for drawdown in areas of Mercia Mudstone, the impact is likely to be much reduced in comparison to the areas of sand and gravel deposits.

Given that groundwater in the area has historically been within 10m of the surface, and that in places the cutting is to be up to 10m deep, there is some potential for disruption of groundwater flows. While groundwater flow is not currently considered to be the primary source of water maintaining wet conditions and streamflow in the SSSI units, it is not ruled out as having a contributory role, particularly if the sands and gravels are more spatially extensive than mapped. As such, the relationship between groundwater levels at the site of the proposed road and at the two SSSI units needs to be better understood to determine whether the cutting would have any impact. To achieve this, the Ground Investigation for the Scheme has been extended to take account of the SSSI units.

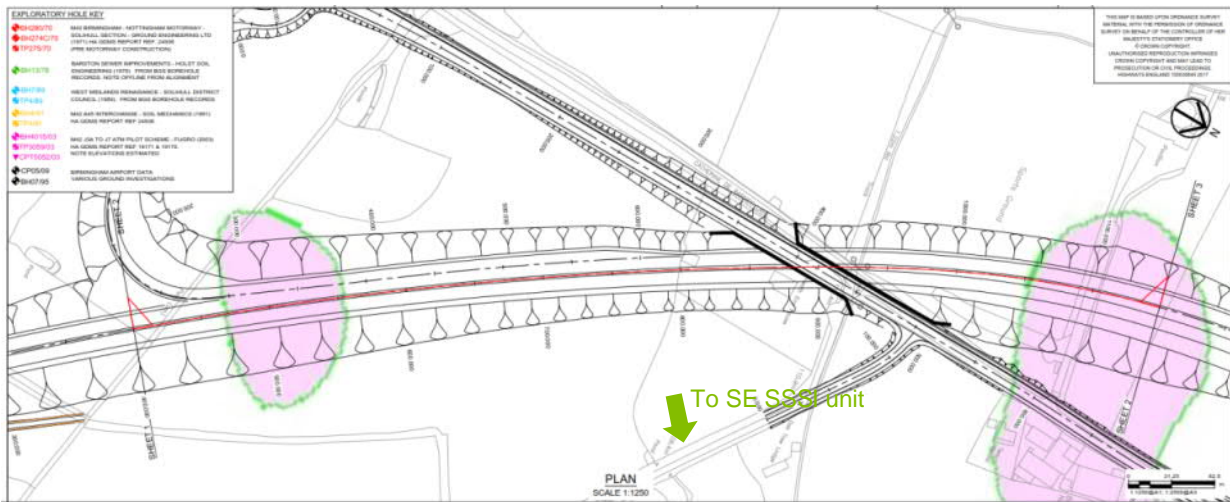


Figure 9. Location of Glacial Sands and Gravels along the proposed link road (shown by Pink shading), in the vicinity of the southeastern SSSI unit.

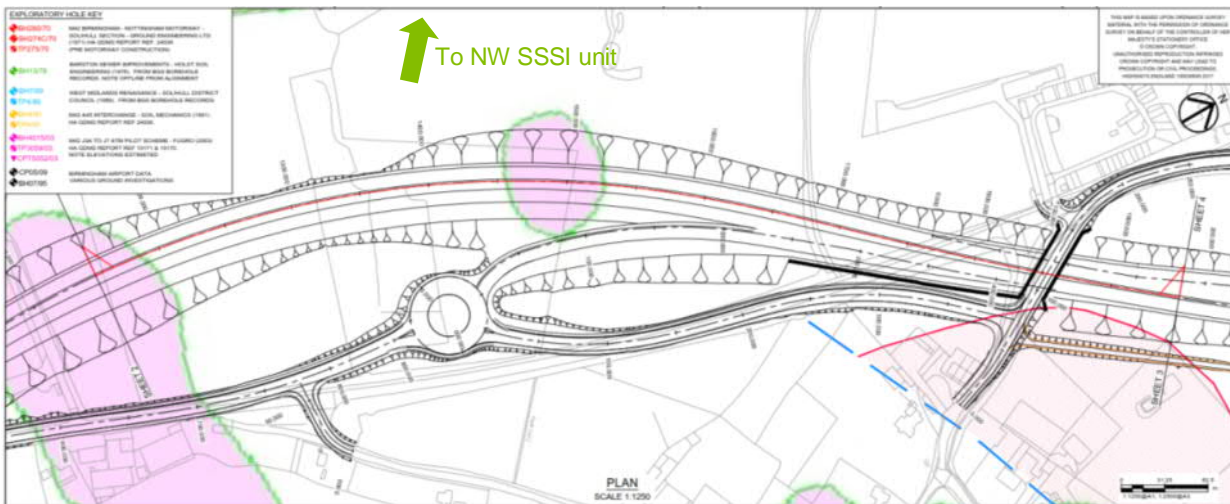


Figure 10. Location of Glacial Sands and Gravels along the proposed link road (shown by Pink shading), in the vicinity of the northwestern SSSI unit.

Figure 11a and 11b show the location of the Ground Investigation works, which were completed in October 2018). The works now include boreholes around the periphery of both SSSI units and within the SSSI units. Those on the periphery of the units are window samples with a standpipe installation to allow monitoring of groundwater levels over time. The standpipes terminate on proving the surface of the Mercia Mudstone Formation. The boreholes within the SSSI units are not long-term installations for monitoring, but have been included to prove the underlying geology and provide a snapshot of groundwater conditions that can be related to the levels around the periphery of the sites.

The proposed monitoring of groundwater levels around the periphery of the SSSIs will help understand the groundwater dependence of the two SSSI units, and hence the likelihood of any adverse impact from the Scheme that would need to be mitigated.

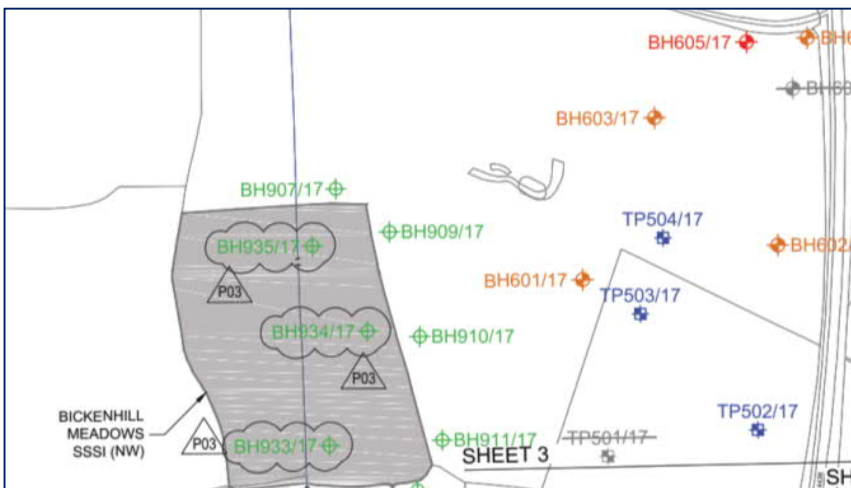
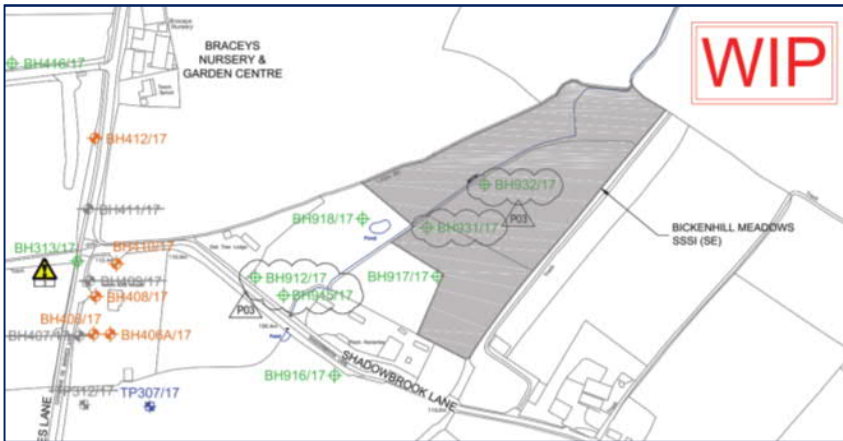


Figure 11a (top) and 11b (bottom) Ground Investigation locations – extended to include the SSSI units. Red – cable percussion boreholes; orange – rotary coring boreholes; green – window sample; blue – trial pit.

9. Soil Saturation Monitoring

During site visits to the SE SSSI unit following heavy rainfall events, it has been apparent that rainfall can periodically accumulate on the ground surface and be slow to drain away. This is particularly the case in depressions and furrows across the site. This supports the assertion that maintenance of wet ground conditions required for many of the grassland species may be rainwater fed to a large extent, perhaps supported by localised out of bank flows very close to the stream, and/or limited groundwater flows from any surrounding glacial sand and gravel deposits. These glacial deposits may act somewhat like a sponge, filling with groundwater in response to rainfall. In the wet meadow at the SE SSSI unit, it appears that the MG4 species are more successful in the saturated furrows across the site, while MG5 species are more successful on the slightly elevated and therefore drier ridges.

To better understand the variability in soil saturation and how long it takes the SSSI sites to drain following heavy rainfall, it was proposed in discussions with Natural England (on site on 26/4/18) to install a series of dipwells on the wet meadow field at the SE SSSI unit and within the NW SSSI unit. Soil water levels and conductivity would then be measured fortnightly within the dipwells over a period of at least 6 months to build an understanding of subsurface moisture conditions, and whether they are indeed largely rainwater fed. While less than six months of monitoring may be available at the point that the Environmental Statement is finalised and the Development Consent Order (DCO) application submitted, the monitoring would continue post submission, with Natural England kept informed with data and technical interpretation. The findings presented in the Environmental Statement would be updated at DCO Examination if necessary, and monitoring could potentially be maintained during construction of the Scheme to assess any impact on the two SSSI units.

Prior to land owner consent being granted for installation of dipwells at the two SSSI units, ground conditions at both sites were inspected visually every fortnight. The streams through both sites had dried up by 1/7/18 and the pond immediately outside the SE SSSI unit had dried up by mid August (13/8/18). At both sites the grass was also straw-like in colour and wilting by late July, and no ground moisture was apparent on any visit between July and early September. As such, if dipwells had already been installed earlier in the summer of 2018, there is a strong likelihood that they would have been dry throughout the period (between mid-May and September) due to the especially dry summer conditions.

Dipwells were installed in the SE SSSI unit on 13-14th August 2018 (see Figure 12a for locations and Photo 18 for an example). A total of 10 dipwells were installed, covering MG4 grassland, MG5 grassland and transitional grassland areas. The dipwells were prefabricated from a perforated plastic pipe of 32 mm diameter. They are sealed above ground to prevent rainwater from filling the pipe. The plastic pipe is perforated at regular intervals along its length on all sides, to allow throughflow of soil water, and to allow equilibration to be achieved with the surrounding water table.



Figure 12a. Locations of dipwells installed in the wet meadow field at the SE SSSI unit

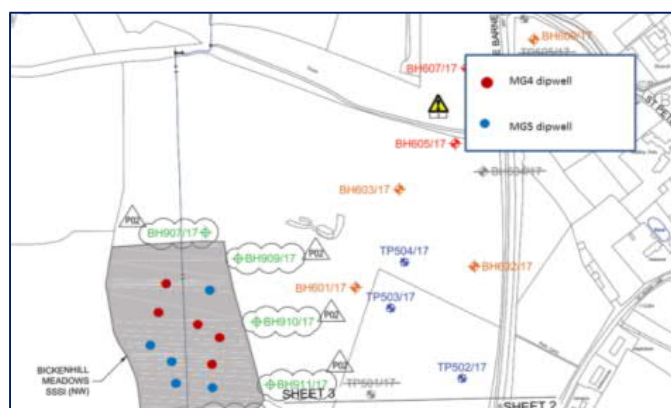


Figure 12b. Locations of dipwells in the NW SSSI unit.

Of the 10 dipwells installed at the SE SSSI unit, 6 were installed to a depth of 90 cm and four to a depth of 50-60 cm (due to difficulty penetrating the substratum with hand held soil augering equipment). Environment Agency Ecohydrological Guidelines⁶ for MG4 grasslands suggest an indicative target mean water table depth range from 35 cm depth in winter to 70 cm depth in summer, and so ordinarily the installed dipwells should be of sufficient depth to monitor the water table for these grasslands. Soil conditions beneath the site were variable, with a mix of upper dark brown sandy silt layers and stiff dark grey clay layers generally encountered to around 50cm depth. Light grey and orange sand layers and gravel layers were commonly found beneath this, including isolated pockets of large cobbles (mix of rounded and angular cobbles, 10-20cm diameter), as well as some layers of blue-grey clay. A full description of the soils encountered during augering at each dipwell as well as further details on location and depth are described in Appendix B.

The dipwells in the NW SSSI unit were installed on 5th-6th September 2018 (see Figure 12b for locations, and an example in Photo 19). Despite sporadic rainfall in the period since the installation of the SE unit dipwells, the ground conditions at the NW unit remained extremely dry with no groundwater encountered during augering of any of the holes. In total, four dipwells were installed to 90 cm depth, two to 70 cm depth, and additional dipwells to 66 cm, 60 cm, 50 cm and 43 cm depth. The shallower depths of some dipwells are a result of impenetrable stiff clay layers being encountered. In general, the top soil at the NW SSSI unit was up to 20cm to 40 cm depth below ground, before trending to extremely stiff, dark grey clay to the base of the dipwells. The main exception were the two dipwells towards the centre of the eastern half of the SSSI (close to the wetter area potentially thought to be a spring), where sand and gravel layers were encountered at depths below 50 cm. Further details are described in Appendix B.

⁶ Environment Agency (2004) Protective and Enhancing Wetlands: Ecohydrological Guidelines for Lowland Wetland Plant Communities.

The dipwells have been monitored fortnightly since installation to capture water table recharge in response to rainfall. The regular measurement of water levels is undertaken using a dip tape inserted into the pipe. Conductivity will be measured using a Hanna Instruments conductivity meter should enough water accumulate in the dipwells to enable measurement. One dipwell at each site has also been fitted with a water level data logger to allow continuous measurement of soil water levels.

Rainfall data from the nearest Environment Agency meteorological stations and/ or the Birmingham Airport Meteorological Station will be obtained to compare with the water level record once a more significant period of monitoring has been undertaken.



Photo 18. Dipwell T2-D at the SE SSSI unit.



Photo 19. Dipwell N2-B on the NW SSSI unit.

10. Ground Investigation Results at the SSSIs

The boreholes shown in the SE SSSI and immediate periphery in Figure 11a were installed in July 2018. The boreholes in the immediate periphery of the NW SSSI unit (Figure 11b) also were installed in July 2018, and those inside the NW SSSI unit in September 2018.

A summary of the preliminary results is given in Table 1.

Table 1 Ground Investigation findings for the SE and NW SSSI units and periphery. [For borehole locations refer to Figure 11a and 11b].

Borehole	Geology Summary	Groundwater strike
SE SSSI		
BH932 (within SSSI)	4m depth - gravelly sand to 0.8m, very sandy clay to 2.25m, sandy clay with weak mudstone fragments to 4m.	Water strike at 2.25m rising to 2.18m after 20 minutes.
BH931 (within SSSI)	3m depth – gravelly sand to 0.8m, sandy slightly gravelly clay to 1.2m, silty clay to 3m.	Water strike at 1.96m rising to 1.8m after 20 minutes.
BH917 (within SSSI)	3m depth – gravelly sand to 0.8m, slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 1.75m, sandy clay to 3.0m	Water strike at 2.19m.
BH918 (within nature reserve but not SSSI)	3m depth – fine to coarse sand with some gravel to 1.15m, sandy clay to 1.5m, gravelly fine to coarse sand to 3m.	Water strike at 1.48m.
BH912 (within nature reserve but not SSSI)	4m depth – gravelly sand to 0.8m, sandy slightly gravelly clay to 1.5m, sand to 1.6m, sandy clay to 2.10m, slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 2.6m including extremely weak mudstone, sandy clay to 4m.	Water strike at 2.6m, rising to 1.74m after 20 minutes.
BH915A (within nature reserve but not SSSI)	6.4m depth – gravelly fine to coarse sand to 0.8m, sandy gravelly clay to 3.10m, sandy clay to 5.0m, fine to coarse sand to 5.6m, sandy clay to 6.1m, clay tending to extremely weak mudstone to 6.4m	Water strike at 3.10m, rising to 1.8m after 40 minutes.
BH916 (SW periphery, outside of SSSI and LNR, opposite side of Shadowbrook Lane)	6.0m depth – gravelly silty sand to 1.8m, slightly gravelly silty clay to 2.5m, sandy silty clay to 3.5m, interlaminated sandy silt to 4.0m, clay to 5.0m, Mercia Mudstone to 6.0m.	Water strike at 4.0m
NW SSSI		
BH933 (within SSSI)	2.65m depth – sandy gravelly clay to 0.2m, very stiff clay to 0.4m, silt clay to 0.9m, sandy gravelly clay to 1.1m, gravelly silty clay to 1.2m, gravelly silt to 1.5m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.65m.	Water strike at 1.40m.
BH934 (within SSSI)	2.0m depth – stiff slightly gravelly clay to 0.2m, sandy gravelly clay to 1.3m and Mercia Mudstone to 2.0m.	No water strike
BH935 (within SSSI)	2.1m depth – slightly gravelly clay to 0.15m, slightly sandy clayey gravel to 0.9m, gravelly sandy clay to 1.10m, grey sandy clay to 1.3m, sand to 1.4m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.1m.	No water strike
BH907 (northern periphery of SSSI)	2.0m depth – slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.6m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.0m	No water strike
BH909 (eastern periphery of SSSI)	2.3m depth - slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.6m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.3m	No water strike
BH910 (eastern periphery of SSSI)	2.7m depth - slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.6m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.7m	No water strike
BH911 (eastern periphery of SSSI)	2.0m depth - slightly sandy slightly gravelly clay to 0.5m, Mercia Mudstone to 2.0m	No water strike

11. National Vegetation Classification (NVC) Surveys

A Phase 2 NVC survey was undertaken of the identified homogenous stands of grassland vegetation within the Bickenhill Meadows SSSI in summer 2018. The survey followed the standard published methodology (Rodwell, 2006)⁷ and comprised recording a minimum of five quadrats in each identified grassland type and at least one in each parcel of each grassland type. Following this, the data sets identified were matched to the published grassland community types using the keys provided in Rodwell (1992)⁸ and using the software TABLEFIT⁹. The survey was undertaken on the 27th June and the 7th August 2018.

⁷ Rodwell, J. S. (2006) National Vegetation Classification; Users' Handbook. Joint Nature Conservation Committee, Peterborough

⁸ Rodwell, J. S. (ed.) 1992. British Plant Communities. Volume 3. Grassland and montane communities. Cambridge University Press.

⁹ Hill (2015) TABLEFIT Version 2; A program to identify types of vegetation by measuring goodness-of-fit to association tables. Centre of Ecology and Hydrology, Wallingford

The vegetation in all the fields on the days of the survey was tall and coarse and because of this appeared uniform with the subtle changes in ground level apparent earlier in the year masked by the dense growth.

The SE SSSI comprises three fields separated by a small watercourse (dry on the day of the survey); two of the fields are on the eastern side and the third on the western side. A fourth field is not within the SSSI but along with the fields in the SSSI is managed as a nature reserve by Warwickshire Wildlife Trust.

The two fields on the eastern side slope down to the watercourse and the vegetation on the day of the survey was grass dominated (tall and lodging in places) and dry (Photo 20 and 21). Yorkshire fog (*Holcus lanatus*) was abundant with other grasses such as cock's foot (*Dactylis glomerata*), common bent (*Agrostis capillaris*), red fescue (*Festuca rubra*), crested dog's tail (*Cynosurus cristatus*) and meadow fescue (*Schedonorus pratensis*). A range of generally common forbs were recorded and included ribwort plantain (*Plantago lanceolata*), common knapweed (*Centaurea nigra*), bird's foot trefoil (*Lotus corniculatus*) and red clover (*Trifolium pratense*). Less common species included yellow rattle (*Rhinanthus minor*) and tormentil (*Potentilla erecta*).



Photo 20 (left) and Photo 21 (right), typical vegetation in the SE SSSI unit eastern fields.

Seven quadrats were recorded in the two fields, as they were uniform in appearance and structure. The data obtained was run through TABLEFIT and the goodness of fit to the NVC community type MG5; *Cynosurus cristatus* - *Centaurea nigra* was around 83% and classed as very good fit. The second best fit was to the MG5a *Lathyrus pratensis* sub-community type.

The field within the SE SSSI unit on the western side of the watercourse was generally flat but with an apparent rise towards the northern boundary; the grasses did not dominate to the degree they did in the dry fields and there were patches of meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*) and great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*) (Photo 22 and 23). Meadowsweet and other wetland species such as wild angelica (*Angelica sylvestris*) seemed to be more frequent towards the watercourse where the vegetation was taller and coarser. Interesting species recorded here were betony (*Stachys officinalis*) and tormentil (*Potentilla erecta*). It has been reported that meadow thistle (*Cirsium dissectum*) is also present but this was not found during the current survey.



Photo 22 (left) and Photo 23 (right), typical vegetation in the SE SSSI unit wet meadow field.

Five quadrats were recorded in this western field and along with the data collected from similar vegetation recorded in the NW section of the SSSI (described below) were run through TABLEFIT. The goodness-of-fit to the NVC community type MG4; *Alopecurus pratensis* – *Sanguisorba officinalis* was around 63% and classed as a fair fit. Any variation in the vegetation from topographical variation was masked by the tall growth and a better understanding of this would be obtained once the field has been cut. This will provide information on the relationship of the community boundaries to topography, depth to water and ditch levels, and enable the communities to be tied with soils information to determine the mechanism whereby any vegetation changes are driven.

The NW SSSI unit comprises two fields separated by a small, ephemeral watercourse, which was dry on the day of the survey. The western field appeared to be uniform in structure and was generally a mix of patches of larger forbs such as great burnet (*Sanguisorba officinalis*) and meadowsweet (*Filipendula ulmaria*), and grasses with a range of smaller forbs including several legumes scrambling through the vegetation (Photo 24 and Photo 25). This field appeared to be more diverse than the corresponding field in the SI SSSI unit and here saw-wort (*Serratula tinctoria*), quaking grass (*Briza media*) and devil's bit scabious (*Succisa pratensis*) were recorded in addition to the more typical and commoner forb species. When visited in August 2018, tufted hair grass (*Deschampsia cespitosa*) was the dominant species in this field.



Photo 24 (left) and Photo 25 (right), typical vegetation in the NW SSSI unit western field.

Five quadrats were recorded in the field and along with the data collected from similar vegetation recorded in the SE SSSI unit were run through TABLEFIT. The goodness-of-fit to the NVC community type MG4; *Alopecurus pratensis* – *Sanguisorba officinalis* was around 63% and classed as a fair fit.

The eastern field of the NW SSSI unit was only visited in August and had much coarser vegetation and the dominant grass across large areas was tufted hair grass (*Deschampsia cespitosa*) but with meadowsweet and great burnet also frequent throughout the field. Sedges appeared to be more common in this field and included hairy sedge (*Carex hirta*), false fox sedge (*Carex otrubae*), common sedge (*Carex nigra*) and tufted sedge (*Carex acuta*). Otherwise it was very similar to the western field (Photos 26 and 27).



Photo 26 (left) and Photo 27 (right), typical vegetation in the NW SSSI unit eastern field.

Part way along the western boundary of the field, there was a distinctive change in vegetation and whilst this will have to be shown by survey, it appeared to be delineated by a low spot, possibly linked to the ditch and was demarked by young alders (*Alnus glutinosa*). The vegetation here was dominated by tall rushes including soft rush (*Juncus effusus*), hard rush (*Juncus inflexus*) and sharp flowered rush (*Juncus acutiflorus*), along with sedges with abundant great hairy willowherb (*Epilobium hirsutum*) and in the wettest areas patches of fool's watercress (*Apium nodiflorum*). This is the area considered to be a potential spring in the preceding discussion (Photo 27 and Photo 28).



Photo 27 (left) and Photo 28 (right), typical vegetation in the distinct wetter area within the NW SSSI unit eastern field.

Five quadrats were recorded in this area and the data was run through TABLEFIT. The goodness-of-fit to the NVC community type OV26; *Epilobium hirsutum* community was around 58% and classed as a fair fit. A similar fit was obtained from the MG9 community; *Holcus lanatus-Deschampsia cespitosa* grassland. This community is found in area where the ground is seasonally waterlogged and can be found in association with MG4 grassland but is not usually as species diverse and is tolerant of less free draining soils.

It is clear from the surveys that the two dry grassland fields in the SE SSSI unit fit closely to the MG5 community type and that for the most part, the wetter field in the SE unit and the two fields in the NW unit fit to the MG4 community type. Within the wetter fields, there may be localised variation and this seems to have been picked up by the walkovers earlier in 2018 but by summer the tall vegetation was masking much of this variation.

12. Conceptual Model

The baseline information described in this Technical Note, along with the extended Ground Investigation results¹⁰, vegetation surveys (described in Section 11) and further observations of subsurface conditions derived during dipwell installation have informed the development of a conceptual model of each SSSI unit. The purpose of the conceptual model is to illustrate the hydrological processes that have been observed or inferred from the collated evidence in order to better understand how the two SSSI units maintain suitable conditions to support the sensitive grassland species contained within. The two conceptual models are presented in Appendix C as Figures C1 and C2. The following provides an explanation to accompany the two conceptual models.

SE SSSI Unit

The SE SSSI unit consists of a wet meadow field to the west, two dry meadow fields to the east, and wet alder woodland in the north of the site. The wet western field and dry eastern fields are separated by a small watercourse with a ditch-like character, which is a tributary of Shadow Brook. A further ditch is located on the northwestern boundary of the site. Both are ephemeral but would flow towards the northeast of the site where they combine and continue north to Shadow Brook. The central ditch was observed to flow between around November 2017 to May 2018, but no regular flow has ever been observed in the western ditch and it is believed to act more like a soakaway with lateral flow only following extremely heavy or persistent rainfall. The ground elevation rises either side of the central ditch, but with greater relief on the eastern side. The low point of the site is in the alder woodland to the north. The western field contains ridge and furrow micro-topography from past agricultural practices, while the eastern field rises steadily away from the watercourse and does not have such obvious ridges or depressions.

The geological logs for the boreholes, probeholes and trial pits on and in the vicinity of the SE SSSI unit show that across much of the area there is a surface layer of sand between 0.8 m and 1.15 m thick. This is typically underlain by a layer of sandy clay, resting on the Mercia Mudstone. In some of the ground investigation boreholes a second thin sand layer has been proved below the sandy clay layer. The results of the Ground Investigation indicate that there is a 'bowl' of mixed superficial deposits that reaches up to 6m thickness below ground level, and which is centred on the Shadowbrook Meadows Nature Reserve, immediately SW of the SSSI. From this central point the superficial deposits extend across the SSSI to the northeast where thicknesses of up to 3m were recorded, and west/southwest into the arable field where thinner deposits of around 1.2m were recorded adjacent to Catherine de Barnes Lane (Figures 13A and 13B).

The superficial deposits are able to support groundwater and therefore provide a local water source to the surrounding grassland communities. Boreholes within the SSSI in the late summer, after a prolonged period of dry weather, indicated groundwater levels between 1.8 and 2.25 m b.g.l, while much shallower levels would be expected in winter and spring. The bowl of superficial deposits is surrounded by, and underlain by, low permeability Mercia Mudstone (where deeper water strikes were generally recorded e.g. over 6m b.g.l adjacent to Catherine de Barnes Lane). Figure 13A shows the likely contours of the surface of the Mercia Mudstone, and indicates that it is present at a shallow depth in the vicinity of the proposed road alignment at approximately 110 m AOD (2m b.g.l). The surface of the Mercia Mudstone falls to the north east and at Shadowbrook Lane is at a level of 102.84m AOD (6.1m b.g.l). Groundwater flows through the more permeable units (i.e. the sand and gravel) in the superficial deposits above the Mercia

¹⁰ Socotec, 2018, Factual Report on Ground Investigation, Report E8005-18

Mudstone, generally following the topography of the land towards the SE SSSI Unit and the northeast. As such, the SSSI receives groundwater flows from the east, south and west, and this ultimately flows towards the north-eastern area of the SSSI in the wet alder woodland. The watercourse flowing through the centre of the SSSI Unit is ephemeral, but may provide a contribution to the supply of water for recharging the thicker superficial deposits beneath the SSSI unit during the late autumn-winter-spring period when it has been observed as flowing. It is likely that the watercourse is in connectivity with the superficial deposits due to the shallow depth below ground level and the possible flow from groundwater back to the watercourse at the downslope extent of the SSSI unit.

The superficial sands, clays and gravels across the SE Unit and the surrounding area are thought to allow drainage through to the Mercia Mudstone, at which point water will tend to flow laterally over these less permeable deposits to the northeast and ultimately out of the SSSI at its lowest point. More constant streamflow has been observed in the watercourse at this location in the SSSI than elsewhere, presumably because it is supported by the lateral groundwater flows at this low point. During the late autumn-winter-spring period the water table is expected to generally be high due to greater amounts of rainfall and low rates of evapotranspiration, resulting in the predominant recharging of groundwater in the superficial deposits at a rate that exceeds flows to the northeast. Due to the permeability of the superficial deposits, surface saturation and surface water ponding is expected to be limited to the periods immediately following heavy rainfall when the infiltration capacity is exceeded. However, a high water table may also encourage saturation of the upper soil layers during rainfall events, especially in the spring when monthly rainfall amounts may be at their lowest.

The watercourse flowing through the centre of the site will also help to prevent over-saturation of the surface layers by draining away excess water. The flows in this ephemeral watercourse are thought to be maintained from a mix of subsurface flow pathways and occasional surface drainage pathways during periods when surrounding soils are fully saturated. It is possible that in extreme rainfall and runoff events, the watercourse may overtop and cause very localised out of bank floods (which are unlikely to spread fully across the wet meadow noting that along part of the ditch is a shallow earth bund likely created when the channel was dug or last cleared out), although this is expected to be a rare occurrence and the WWT were unaware of this ever occurring. The ditch on the northwestern boundary of the SSSI may occasionally flow following receipt of surface water runoff and sub-surface egress from the arable field that rises away to the west of the SSSI. This ditch is usually ponded and may already act as an infiltration trench providing some additional recharge to the wet meadow field through the surface sand layer.

MG4 grasslands are found in the furrows across the western wet meadow field of the SSSI. They are dependent on wet conditions being maintained in the surface layers through winter and spring, but are relatively intolerant of flooding and prolonged saturation. MG5 grasslands are found in drier locations and so are located on the ridges across the wet meadow field and across the eastern dry meadow. It is considered likely that the water table in winter and spring is generally just below the surface, and rises regularly after rainfall to temporarily intersect the furrows, whereas it will rarely intersect the ridges. The water table intersection of furrows will be short-lived as the water drains away through the superficial deposits, although water tables are kept reasonably high throughout the winter and spring by the groundwater recharge that also occurs.

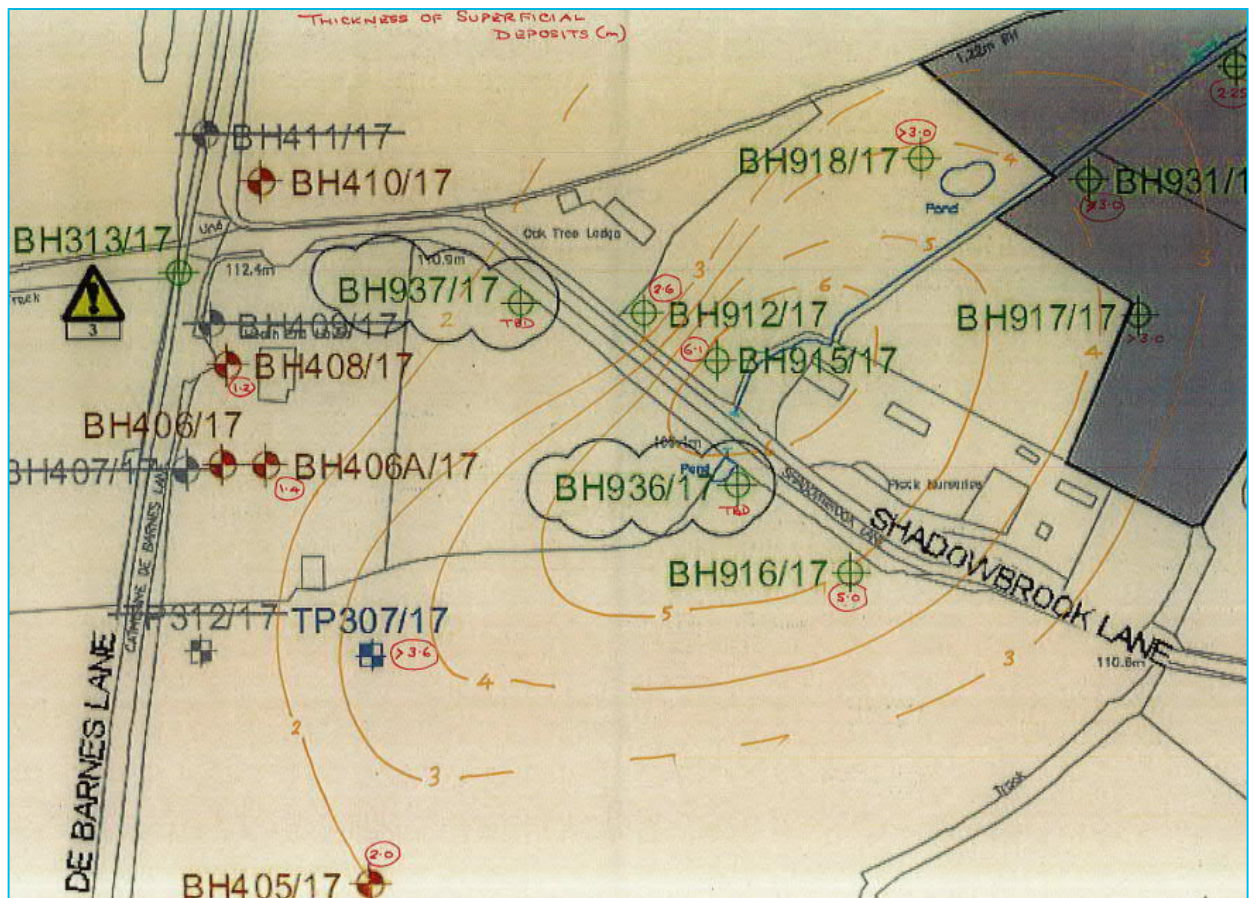
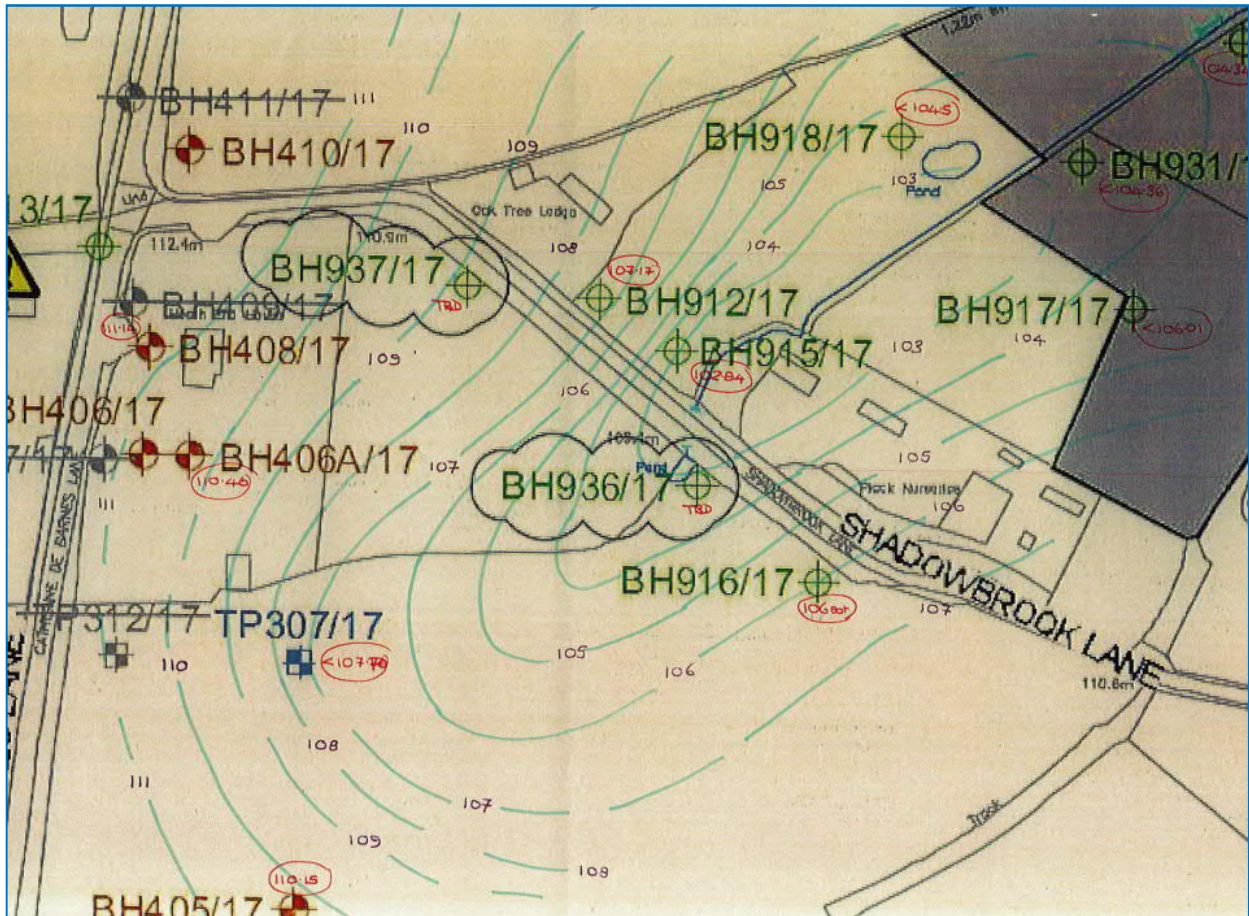


Figure 13A (top) Contours showing top of the Mercia Mudstone (mAOd) and 13B (bottom) Contours showing thickness of superficial deposits(m). Plots are based on available information (October 2018).

The eastern dry meadow field has a greater relief than the western wet meadow field, and so rainwater is encouraged to drain more rapidly away downslope and towards the central watercourse and therefore fails to maintain a sufficiently high water table for MG4 communities. There is also an absence of furrows and depressions which reduces the potential for the hydrological conditions seen on the wet meadow where MG4 communities have developed. As a result, the dry meadow is wholly dominated by MG5 grasslands. A Cadent gas pipeline is orientated southwest to northeast through the dry meadow field. This may cause some interruption of groundwater flows from the east of the SSSI with potential for preferential flow to occur northeast along the pipeline's backfill material. There was some evidence of a change in plant types along the route of this gas main during a site visit in April, although no significant difference in grass species across the Site was observed when the NVC survey was undertaken in the summer, suggesting that the effect may be seasonal and insufficient to provide MG4 plants a sufficient competitive advantage over MG5 species.

In the summer and autumn, when there is typically reduced rainfall and greater evapotranspiration rates, the water table beneath the SSSI is lowered (i.e. to more than 90 cm b.g.l as observed from dipwell monitoring in late summer 2018 and dry ditches). However, although the water table is generally deeper than the furrows in the wet meadow field, the grassland communities may be supported through the drier summer months by deeper groundwater in the superficial deposits rising by capillary action to the root zone. This may be important for sustaining the plant communities across the SSSI, but is less important in determining the mix of species and grassland types.

Potential Impact of the Scheme on the Hydrology of the SE SSSI Unit

The geometry and orientation of the 'bowl' of superficial deposits (Figures 13A and 13B) that underlie the SE SSSI unit thin out in a westerly direction towards the Proposed Link Road. Along the Proposed Link Road, the superficial deposits are generally less than 2 m thick and consist principally of clay rather than the more permeable sands and gravels. There is no evidence that the cutting will intersect significant thicknesses of sand or gravel, which could provide groundwater recharge to the SSSI. The majority of the cutting will intersect the low permeability Mercia Mudstone. As it is considered that the cutting will not intersect permeable superficial deposits which could provide groundwater to the SSSI, it is concluded that the cutting will have no significant impact on groundwater flows to the SE SSSI Unit.

While interception of groundwater inflows by the cutting is considered insignificant, the route of the Proposed Link Road will result in the severance of approximately 21%¹¹ of the surface water catchment to the SE SSSI Unit. This severed area currently drains to the ditch in the arable field southwest of the SSSI and is thought to flow beneath Shadowbrook Lane and into the watercourse that flows northeast through the SSSI. However, the connectivity between the surface water catchment upstream of Shadowbrook Lane and that downstream of this road could not be established through non-intrusive survey. Any culvert may be buried beneath silts and this would limit surface water flows across Shadowbrook Lane. As such, direct rainwater is considered the most significant source of water to recharge the superficial deposits beneath the SSSI unit. Nevertheless, given the size of the surface water catchment that would be potentially cut off, it is possible that interruption of flows along this watercourse when it is flowing (which has been observed in winter and spring) could have an influence on groundwater levels beneath the SE SSSI Unit. Reduction in recharge from the watercourse to the surrounding ground would depress groundwater levels and potentially encourage more rapid draining of the soil layers and reduced surface water ponding. In wet springs this may not be significant, but in drier years it is possible that the lower water table could encourage MG5 grass species in place of MG4 species.

Long term rainfall records for the region obtained from the Environment Agency's Coleshill rain gauge at SP 21102 86956 are shown in Figure 14A and 14B for the 16 year period between 1998 and 2014. The rainfall total for water years (Figure 14A) ranges from 424 mm to 886 mm per year, with an average of 705 mm per year. There is clearly significant year-on-year variability in rainfall inputs to the SSSIs and

¹¹ Catchment area based on the latest design 3c (October 2018).

their catchment, and as such it is anticipated that the loss of 21% of the surface water catchment would fall within this range of natural fluctuations in water availability from rainfall.

Although, the loss of a proportion of surface water catchment may not reduce water availability significantly in a typical year, over the longer term it could reduce the resilience of the SSSI unit by exacerbating the impact of the reduced catchment area. However, despite there being some particularly dry years, such as 1998-1999, 2004-2005 and 2010-2011, in the rainfall record (Figure 14A), these have not occurred in consecutive years (at least between 1998 and 2014) suggesting that. In addition, although Figure 14B shows that the number of days of heavy rainfall greater than 30 mm / day has declined between 1997 and 2014, the longer term averages (monthly and yearly) appear less affected and remain stable implying no obvious long term trend of declining rainfall (Figure 14B).

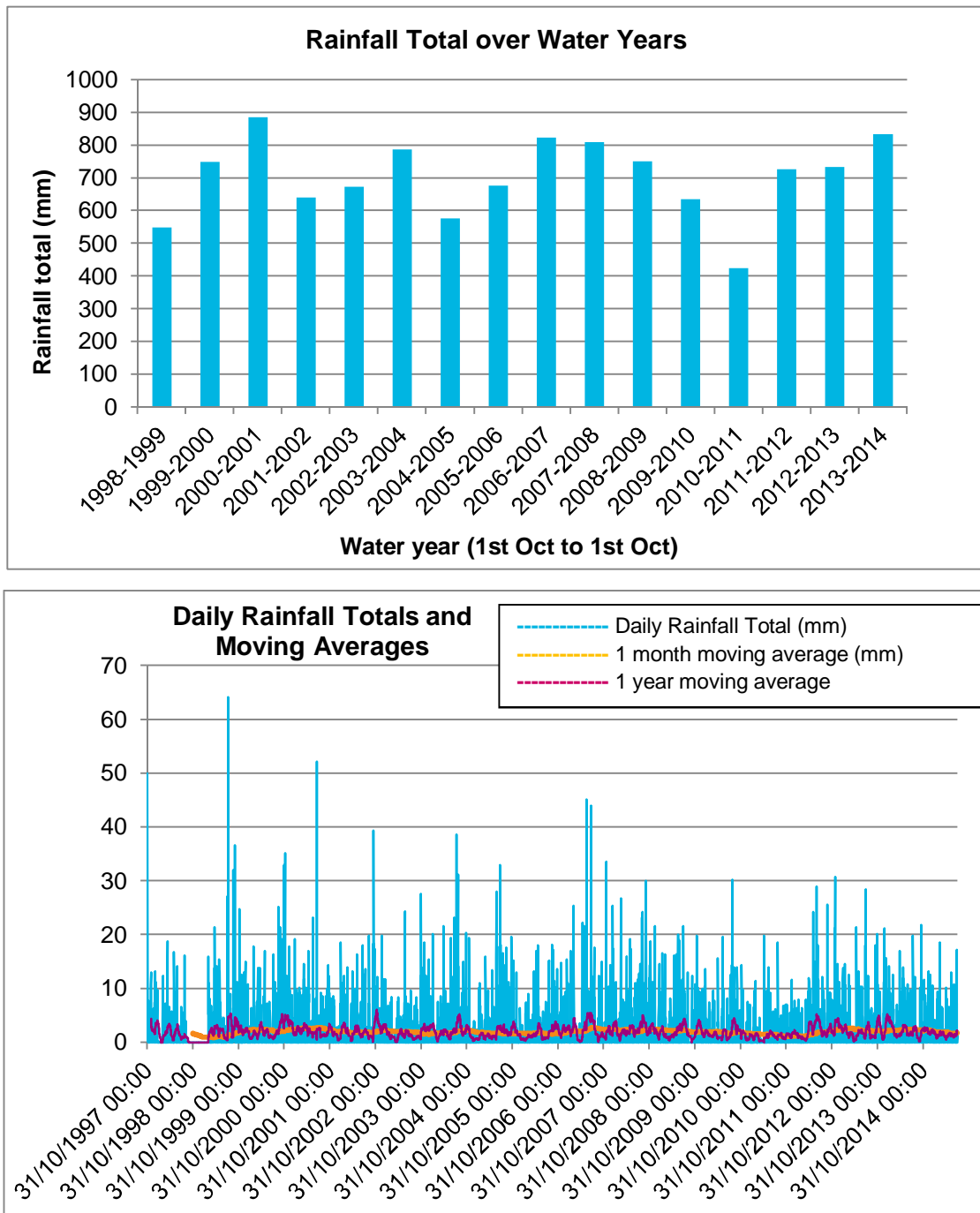


Figure 14A (top) Rainfall total for water years at Coleshill raingauge (1998-2014); and 14B (bottom) Daily rainfall totals and moving averages at Coleshill raingauge (1998-2014). Data provided by the Environment Agency.

To mitigate the potential impact of cutting off a portion of the surface water catchment, it is proposed that flows in the watercourse upstream of the Proposed Link Road are intercepted and pumped to the SSSI side. Water would be intercepted by a collection drain that would drain via gravity beneath the road to a sump on the eastern side, and then be pumped from the sump into the northern ditch close to Shadowbrook Lane. The collected surface water would then follow the existing northern ditch along the SSSI boundary where water would soak away to recharge the superficial deposits beneath the SSSI Unit. Check dams constructed using natural materials would be provided along the ditch to encourage water to pool and drain to ground and recharge the water table. Excess water would flow to the northeast and back into the central watercourse, as it does currently. By recharging the superficial deposits beneath the Site using this ditch there is reduced potential for water to bypass the SSSI and thus is likely to provide greater benefits, especially in drier years. Appendix D presents the proposed mitigation design. Using this approach, no significant loss of water to the SE SSSI unit is predicted. Furthermore, given the uncertainty over whether surface water from the south of Shadowbrook Lane can cross beneath the road to the northern side and into the SSSI, the mitigation solution may actually improve the water supply to the SE SSSI Unit.

NW SSSI Unit

The NW SSSI unit consists of two grassland meadow fields separated by an ephemeral watercourse with a ditch-like character that flows north through the site to eventually reach Low Brook. The elevation of both fields rises relatively rapidly away from the watercourse and both contain a series of ridges and furrows which support both MG4 and MG5 grasslands.

The Ground Investigation indicates that Mercia Mudstone is located at a shallow depth of between 0.5 and 0.6 m b.g.l to the east of the Site between the Proposed Link Road and the SSSI boundary, but is slightly deeper beneath the SSSI itself (i.e. up to 1.4 m b.g.l). Similar to the SE SSSI Unit, the Ground Investigation thus implies that there is also a 'bowl' of thicker superficial deposits across the NW SSSI Unit surrounded by shallower Mercia Mudstone, but that the thickness of the superficial deposits is much less than what is found at the SE SSSI Unit. The shallow Mercia Mudstone around the periphery of the NW SSSI Unit and between it and the cutting for the Proposed Link Road suggests that there is not a significant groundwater pathway that would be interrupted by the Scheme.

In the winter and spring, because the Mercia Mudstone is relatively shallow and has a low permeability, it will not require much rainfall to cause a high water table to develop in the overlying deposits beneath the NW SSSI Unit. The greater amount of stiff clay substrate across this SSSI Unit also impedes infiltration and encourages frequent saturation of the near surface soil layers, particularly in hollows and depressions. There may be pockets of sands and gravels with improved drainage, but in general infiltration is expected to be slow. Due to the thinner superficial deposits rainwater recharge onto these slowly permeable upper substrate layers is considered to be the principal mechanism supporting the higher water table during the winter and spring. As in the SE SSSI Unit, MG4 grasses occupy the depressions and furrows across the Site, which are periodically, but not permanently, saturated. MG5 grass species tend to occupy the more elevated and drier ridges which are less regularly saturated.

The ephemeral central watercourse helps prevent over-saturation of the grassland communities by draining away excess water, although there is a relatively pronounced artificial bund along sections of the bank on both sides, which will block overland flow and sub-surface flow (by compacting the soil beneath and making it less permeable). A particularly wet area is located behind the bund towards the centre of the eastern field, and this has a distinct vegetation community (classified as NVC OV26/MG9), including young alders and rushes. This area has a discrete substrata with more sands and gravels noted during dipwell installation than at adjacent locations. The combination of the more permeable substrata and the adjacent bund downslope means that this area acts like a sump, retaining groundwater and surface water runoff and resulting in a different vegetation community than elsewhere on the SSSI Unit. There is no evidence that this feature is supported by a spring, that it extends outside the boundary of the SSSI, or that it is supported by groundwater flows from further east. As the Proposed Link Road cutting to the east

is predominantly in the impermeable Mercia Mudstone, it is predicted that the Scheme will not influence the hydrogeology of this localised feature.

In the summer and autumn when there are higher evapotranspiration rates and lower amounts of rainfall, the water table within the SSSI will be depressed towards the Mercia Mudstone. With no significant groundwater flow contributing to this SSSI Unit, the water table is reliant on rainfall recharge. Sub-irrigation and capillary rise through the thin superficial deposits above the Mercia Mudstone may provide some moisture to the root zone, but the water table is likely to be low throughout this period, other than the area with the OV26/MG9 plant communities.

Potential Impact of the Scheme on the Hydrology of the NW SSSI Unit

Due to the shallow Mercia Mudstone deposits between the Proposed Link Road and the SSSI, there is no significant groundwater pathway between the two that would be disturbed by construction of the cutting. A maximum of 5% of the surface water catchment to the east would be cut off by the proposed development, but this area is not well connected to the site other than through limited surface and sub-surface flows, and is not likely to significantly influence the flows along the central watercourse which drains from the south/southwest. The Site is also underlain only by relatively thin superficial deposits, containing more clay than found across the SE SSSI Unit, which also suggests that rainfall is the predominant factor controlling hydrological conditions on the Site, suitable for the formation of the grass communities that are found.

There is also no evidence that the particularly wet area with distinct vegetation in the eastern field has a hydrogeological connection that extends beyond the SSSI, or that any disruption would be caused to this feature by the proposed road cutting. Instead, this feature appears to be a consequence of an isolated pocket of more abundant sand and gravel holding water that is impounded by the artificial bund, which inhibits drainage to the watercourse.

Overall, it is considered that based on the available data it is unlikely that the Scheme would have any significant adverse effects on the hydrology of the NW SSSI Unit, and thus no mitigation measures are needed to protect the hydrology of this SSSI unit from the road construction. However, it is recommended that the monitoring of surface saturation conditions by the network of dipwells is continued.

Limitations

The conceptual models presented here are based on the best available data at the time of writing in October 2018. Monitoring of groundwater levels is ongoing for the boreholes that are located around the periphery of the SSSIs, and for the dipwells that have been installed within the SSSIs. It is anticipated these will support the initial interpretations which indicate that rainwater recharge is the dominant mechanism driving water table levels in both SSSI units, albeit with the hydrology of the SE SSSI also being supported by surface water recharge from the central and northwestern watercourses. Initial monitoring data gathered to date currently reflects only the summer and early autumn seasons only, when water tables have been low following a summer of particularly dry conditions. If additional monitoring requires any changes to the interpretation in this technical note a revision will be issued.

Two further boreholes are still to be installed between the SE SSSI and the Proposed Link Road cutting, and these will enable the geometry of the 'bowl' of superficial deposits at the site to be finalised. As described above, the disruption of groundwater flows is expected to be insignificant at the SE SSSI Unit based on current data, and so mitigation is focused on mitigating the loss of surface water catchment in order to replicate the natural recharge that surface water provides. As above, if additional monitoring requires any changes to the interpretation in this technical note a revision will be issued.

13. Summary and Recommendations

The Scheme comprises a new dual carriageway link road to link a new junction south of M42 Junction 6 to Clock Interchange to the southwest of the Birmingham National Exhibition Centre. This would be an approximate length of 2.4 km and located to the west of the M42 motorway, close to Catherine de Barnes Lane. Much of the carriageway would be within cutting with varying depths below ground level, up to a maximum of 10m.

The Bickenhill Meadows SSSI is located in two units situated either side of the proposed link road cutting. The SSSI is designated for its species-rich grassland and includes areas of wet meadows and wet alder woodland. Small streams run through each SSSI unit, and are tributaries of the Shadow Brook and Low Brook, respectively. Wet ground conditions need to be maintained in the SSSIs, especially in the spring, to ensure the preservation of the important grassland habitats that the SSSI is designated for.

An investigation has been undertaken, and monitoring is continuing, to determine the importance of direct rainfall, surface water runoff and groundwater flows in maintaining the hydrological conditions needed to support the designated grasslands, and to predict how the construction of the new link road in a cutting could potentially impact the two SSSI Units. This has included extension of the Ground Investigation for the scheme to include eight additional boreholes within and immediately around the SE SSSI, as well as a further eight boreholes in and immediately around the NW SSSI unit. Dipwell monitoring has also commenced to monitor water table levels at each SSSI unit and how these change over time.

On the basis of the data gathered at the time of writing in October 2018, a conceptual model has been produced for each SSSI Unit to illustrate how the hydrology of each site functions and how the grassland communities are maintained.

The NW SSSI unit appears to be most dependent on direct rainwater recharge to maintain its water table at a suitably high level in the winter and spring to support MG4 grass species. Low permeability Mercia Mudstone is at shallow depth around the periphery of the site and prevents any significant groundwater flow between the Proposed Link Road and the SSSI. Superficial deposits are also thinner than across the SE SSSI Unit with greater amounts of lower permeable clay and limited sands and gravels, which help to reduce infiltration and maintain surface saturation. Around 5% of the surface water catchment will be cut off by the development, but this portion of the catchment is not well connected to the SSSI Unit (as the main flow pathway would be subsurface flow) and so is unlikely to significantly alter the flow in the watercourse that flows occasionally through the Site. As no significant adverse effects on the Unit's hydrology are predicted no mitigation measures are proposed, although as a precautionary measure ongoing monitoring of vegetation and surface saturation conditions using dipwells will be continued.

The SE SSSI unit has deeper superficial deposits which stretch out in a wide 'bowl' around the site. There will be groundwater movement within the granular layers in these thicker superficial deposits, which will generally flow into the SSSI from the south, north, and west and then out towards the northeast. The water table at the Site is maintained through winter and spring by a combination of this groundwater flow, rainwater recharge and potentially recharge flows along the central watercourse. Analysis of the thickness and spatial extent of the superficial deposits indicates that they thin out towards the Proposed Link Road cutting. There is no evidence that the proposed cutting will intersect significant thicknesses of sand or gravel in the thin superficial deposits at this location, which could be contributing to groundwater recharge of the SSSI. The majority of the cutting will instead intersect the low permeability Mercia Mudstone, and so it is concluded that the cutting will have no significant adverse impact on the hydrogeological conditions of the SSSI.

More significant is the loss of around one fifth of the surface water catchment to the west of the Proposed Link Road. While the amount of water lost could be within that expected with natural climatic variability 'year on year', it cannot be confirmed that this would not have consequences for the sensitive grassland species in a given year or over a number of consecutive 'drier' years in terms of depressing the water table to the extent that surface conditions become drier, especially in the spring. As such, a mitigation

approach has been proposed whereby the water lost from the surface water catchment is collected adjacent to the Proposed Link Road and conveyed to the existing ditch that runs along the northwest border of the SSSI. Water would then seep from this ditch into the surface sand layers and drain through to the SSSI, thereby maintaining the full water supply to the grassland communities. Using this ditch rather than the central ditch is likely to allow greater recharge of the superficial deposits which it is considered will help the SSSI be more resilient during drier years.

It is proposed that the vegetation communities are monitored at both sites during construction and during initial operation to ensure that there is no detrimental impact resulting from the scheme. This will be augmented by the continued monitoring of water table levels. Should any adverse effects be discovered then further mitigation would need to be implemented. Further details on mitigation are described below.

14. Mitigation Hierarchy

During the site meeting with Natural England on 26/04/18 it was requested that options are presented for the approaches that may be taken in the event that the Scheme results in an adverse effect upon the SSSI. This may be the case at the SE SSSI unit due to the loss of approximately 21% of the surface water catchment. In accordance with best practice the mitigation options would follow the mitigation hierarchy, which seeks to avoid, reduce (i.e. mitigate) or offset (i.e. compensate) for any adverse impact.

At the current stage of design it is acknowledged that it is highly unlikely that the horizontal or vertical alignment of the proposed link road could be altered to avoid potential effects on the SSSI, as the road has already been moved as far east as possible as part of earlier optioneering work to maximise the distance from the NW SSSI unit. Accordingly, the approaches need to focus on options for mitigation and compensation.

A potentially significant adverse effect would comprise alterations to the type or extent of the grassland communities that are the interest features of the SSSI. This may occur as a result of changes to the existing hydrological regime. In the event that a significant impact to the interest features of the SSSI is considered likely then options for mitigation or compensation may include the following, which are listed below in Table 2 in order of preference with regards to Natural England’s hierarchy of mitigation approach:

Table 2 Mitigation Options for the SSSI Units in hierarchical order

Option (in order of preference)	Mitigation Type	Mitigation Description
1	Avoid and Reduce	Measures to maintain the existing hydrological regime of the SSSI. This may include the pumping of water across the cutting to replicate the existing natural water supply to the SSSI. This is the best outcome for the SSSI as water supply would be maintained.
2	Reduce	Physical changes within the SSSI to extend the existing habitat types. This would involve carefully planned and localised changes to the topography of the SSSI, and would be based on detailed modelling of the existing vegetation communities. As an example, the approach could seek to extend the topographical variations (such as deeper depressions and furrows) that have established the existing pattern of vegetation communities, to compensate for potential reduction in groundwater and surface water inflows.
3	Offset	Establish habitats similar to the interest features in land immediately adjacent to the SSSI (or otherwise at another location entirely). The aim would be to create a parcel of land with a varied topography and a related hydrological regime, and to establish grassland using green hay from the SSSI. This is an offsetting solution and so is the worst case for the existing SSSI.

All of the approaches above would be informed by ongoing monitoring of the SSSI grasslands to ensure that they are effective. An options appraisal for these various approaches is provided in Table 3. At the time of writing (October 2018) the options listed apply to both SSSI units. As discussed above, the

conceptual model indicates that the northwest SSSI unit would likely be unaffected by the Scheme, but ongoing monitoring will be continued.

A further mitigation option was previously proposed in discussion with Natural England. This was to implement measures to re-store natural flow along streams flowing through the SSSI units by re-routing each stream through the low point of each valley and restoring a more natural planform. However, there are limitations as to what could be done within the application boundary, and after further consideration and appraisal of the conceptual model it is thought that improved drainage could potentially cause the sites to dry out further. As such, the option has not been included in the options appraisal.

For the SE SSSI unit, the conceptual model indicates that a bowl of superficial deposits extends between the SSSI unit and the Proposed Link Road, but that the new cutting will not intersect significant superficial deposits that would hold significant groundwater. However, a significant portion of the surface water catchment would be intersected by the new road. The preferred mitigation scenario is to maintain the existing hydrological regime of the SSSI unit using an engineered solution to pump water to an existing ditch on the northwestern boundary of the SSSI.

The remedial measures should be designed to maintain as far as possible the water conditions in the SSSI. In this circumstance, this solution should include the following measures:

- Installation of a collection drain to capture the surface water from the portion of catchment that is being cut off by the Scheme (i.e. collecting surface flows between the Proposed Link Road and Catherine de Barnes Lane to the west). The collected water would drain via gravity beneath the road to a sump, and then be pumped from the sump to the northwestern ditch, adjacent to Shadowbrook Lane. Approaches for extending residence time of water in the ditch would be considered (e.g. baffles), thereby allowing the water to drain through to the sand layer within the SSSI; and
- Regular groundwater level monitoring of the boreholes and dipwells in and around the SSSI should be carried out prior to, during and following construction of the cutting and the implementation of any mitigation measures to assess the effectiveness of the measures.

Table 3 Potential Hydrological Impacts on Bickenhill Meadows SSSI – Mitigation Options Appraisal

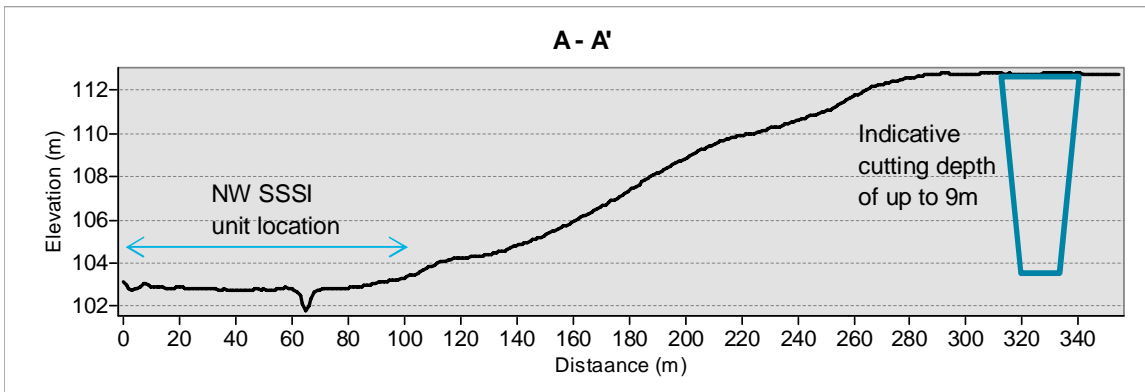
Mitigation Option (in order of preference)	Description	Mitigation Type	Implications				
			Design	Third Party and Land Ownership	Planning and Deliverability	Future Maintenance	Cost
<p>1. Maintain the existing hydrological regime of the SSSI.</p>	<p>This may include the pumping of water to the SSSI units. For the SE unit the ditch on the northwestern border of the site would be used to maintain existing 'natural' water supply that has been interrupted by the cutting</p>	<p>Reduction of impact</p>	<p>This option would require new infrastructure to collect water from the catchment area that has been lost and to pump it up to an existing ditch running alongside the SSSI. Access would also be required.</p>	<p>The location of new infrastructure is yet to be determined and may require land take currently outside of the application boundary.</p>	<p>The application boundary and scheme description would potentially need to be amended to ensure any infrastructure associated with this measure could be constructed, operated and access provided for long term maintenance purposes.</p>	<p>The new pumping network and soakaway would need to be regularly maintained with access provided.</p>	<p>Capital costs associated with the new infrastructure and operating costs associated with operating and maintaining it.</p>
<p>2. Physical changes within the SSSI to extend the existing habitat types.</p>	<p>This would involve carefully planned and localised changes to the topography of the SSSI, and would be based on detailed modelling of the existing vegetation communities. As an example, the approach could seek to extend the topographical variations (such as deeper depressions and furrows) that have established the existing pattern of vegetation communities, to compensate for potential reduction in groundwater and surface water inflows.</p>	<p>Offsetting impact</p>	<p>Unlikely to require any changes to the infrastructure design. A detailed Habitat Enhancement Plan would need to be prepared.</p>	<p>The greatest opportunity would be on the NW site that is owned by BAA. There may be some options for the SE Unit that is owned and managed by WWT, although less so. Other landowners may be affected. Both BAA and WWT (as well as NE) would need to be carefully consulted on the Habitat Enhancement Plan to ensure it can be agreed and delivered.</p>	<p>The current application boundary incorporates the extents of land designated within the boundary of the SSSI, within which it is expected that these measures could be delivered and managed without requiring additional land beyond that already identified.</p> <p>Scheme description would need to be amended to incorporate these measures.</p> <p>Although works may be of a soft nature, the use of some equipment and small plant cannot be ruled out. This would require Assent from NE and permission from the landowners. Experience with BAA to date is that this may not be straight forward and could even be objected to or require acceptance of unreasonable levels of liability.</p>	<p>It would be expected that any changes to the SSSIs would need to be carefully monitored for 3 years +.</p>	<p>Costs associated with the development of the Habitat Enhancement Plan and its implementation including monitoring.</p>

Table 3 Potential Hydrological Impacts on Bickenhill Meadows SSSI – Mitigation Options Appraisal

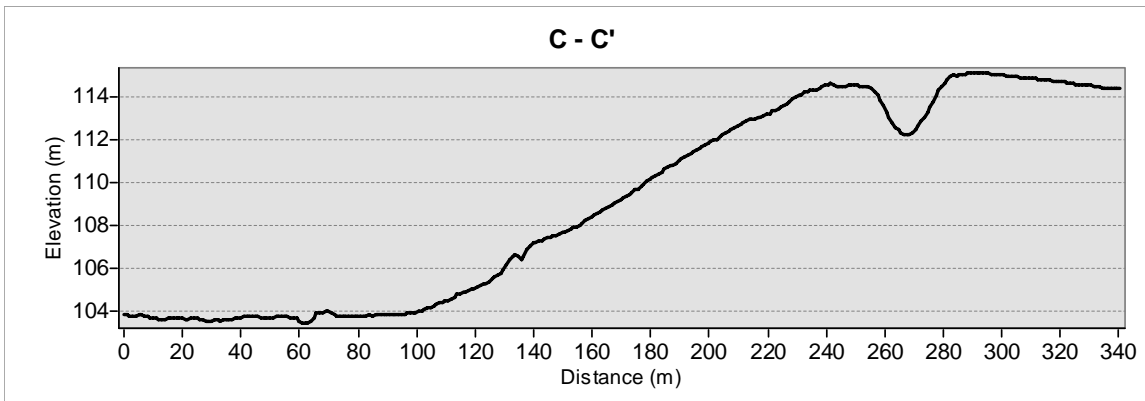
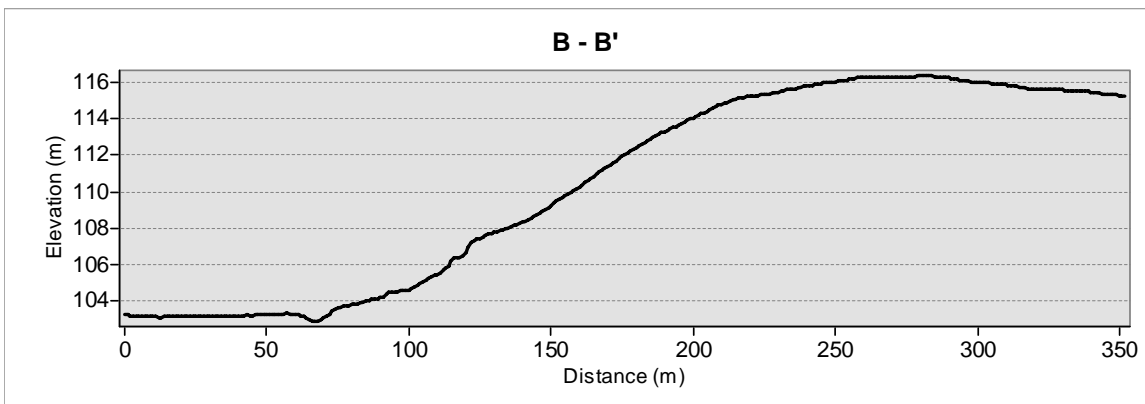
Mitigation Option (in order of preference)	Description	Mitigation Type	Implications				
			Design	Third Party and Land Ownership	Planning and Deliverability	Future Maintenance	Cost
<p>3. Establish habitats similar to the interest features, either in land immediately adjacent to the SSSI or at a new site.</p>	<p>This would include creating a parcel of land with a varied topography and a related hydrological regime, and establishing grassland using green hay from the SSSI.</p>	<p>Offsetting impact</p>	<p>The conditions of the SSSI would be re-created, ideally from land parcels flanking the brooks in/out of the SSSI, while avoiding significant risk of impacts from the proposed link road. Requires careful design, alterations to topography and specialised planting in consultation with NE.</p> <p>A detailed Habitat Management Plan would likely be required to demonstrate to the relevant bodies how these habitats would be established and managed in the long term.</p>	<p>Discussions with landowners would need to be advanced, as their land would either need to be secured by way of prior agreed purchase to implement these measures, or via the DCO as essential land take for mitigation purposes.</p> <p>Utilising the NW Unit, and assuming some tasks will require the use of equipment and plant, discussions with BAA would be required to understand any safeguarding issues that may limit how the work is undertaken.</p>	<p>The application boundary and scheme description would need to be amended to ensure this mitigation could be implemented.</p> <p>Although works may be of a soft nature, the use of some equipment and small plant cannot be ruled out. Permission will be required from the landowners. Experience with BAA to date is that this may not be straight forward and could even be objected to or require acceptance of unreasonable levels of liability.</p>	<p>Maintenance of site would be undertaken on an annual basis under a management / legal agreement that would be needed in perpetuity. This could be adopted by the land-owner or a third party via the legal agreement</p>	<p>Cost associated with the compulsory purchase of land, development of a Habitats Enhancement Plan and its implementation and any post works monitoring.</p>

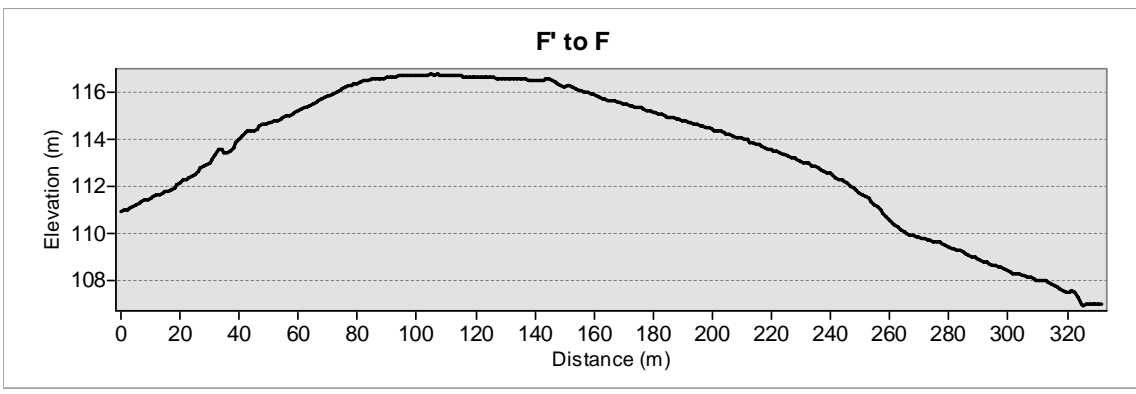
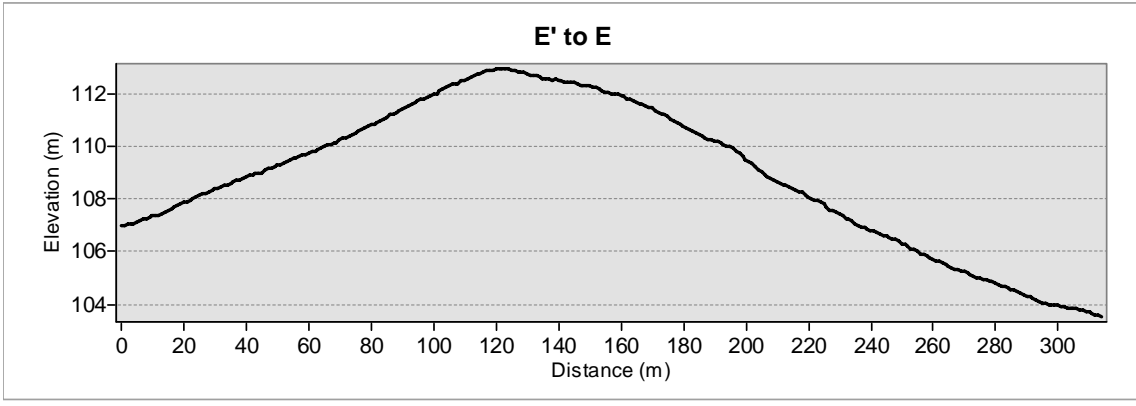
Appendix A: Sections

NW SSSI unit

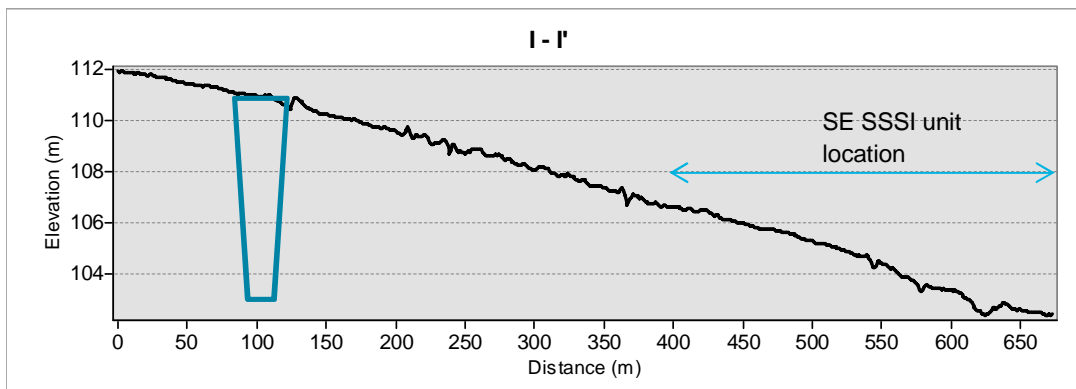
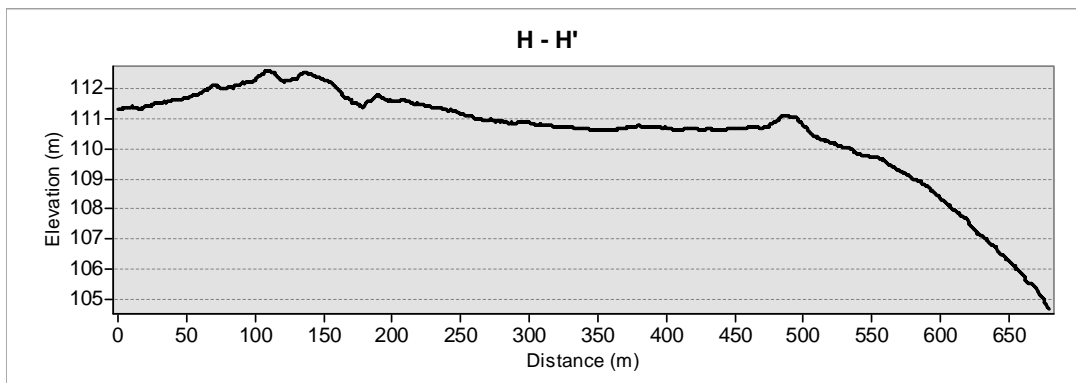
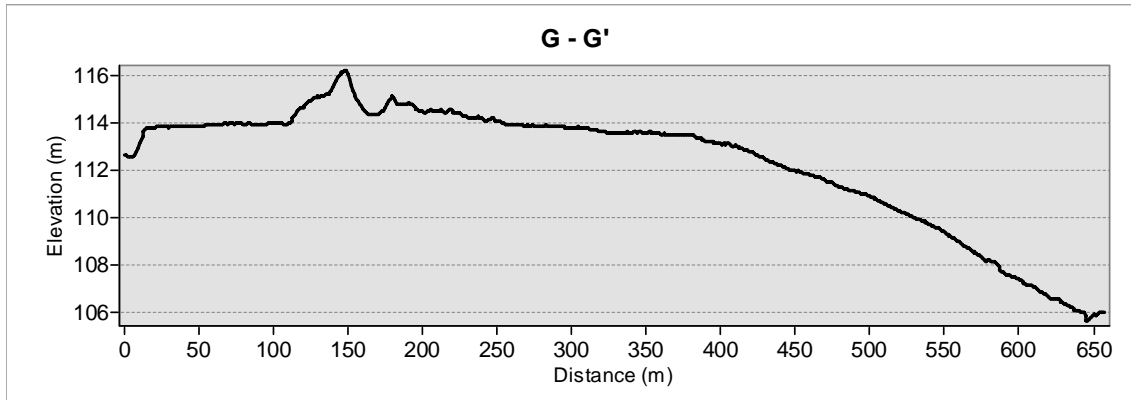


Note. Indicative cutting of up to 9m depth shown in blue.

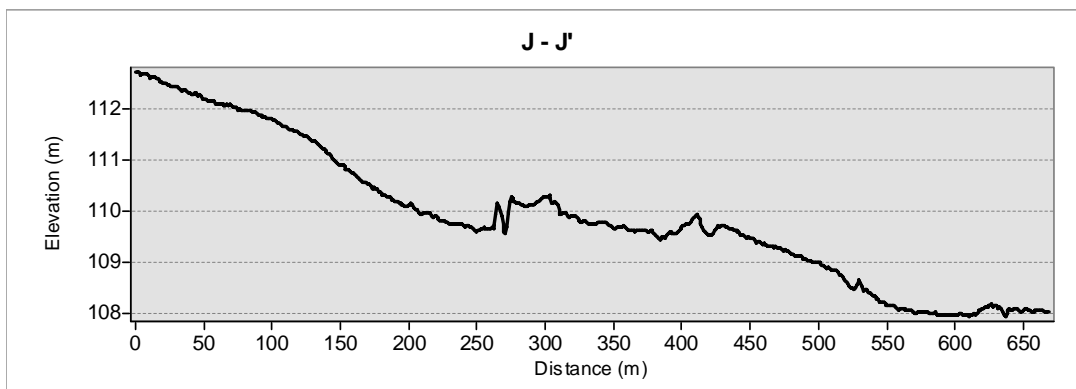


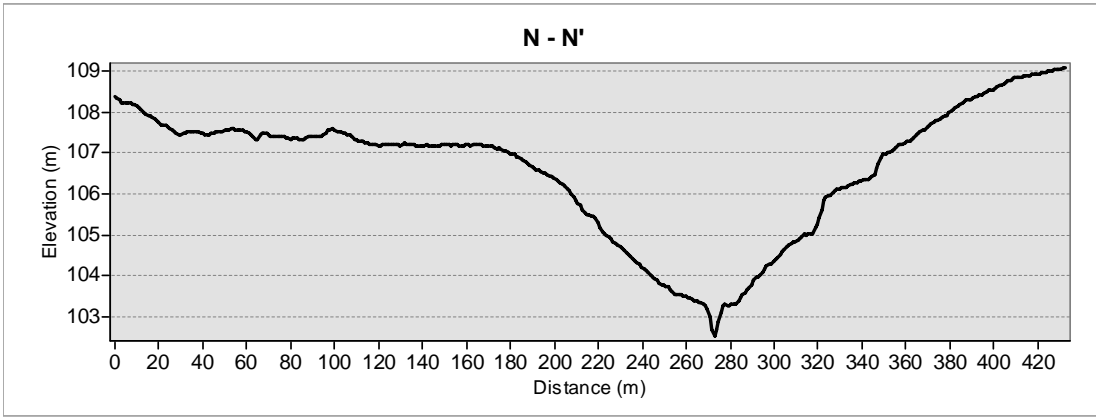
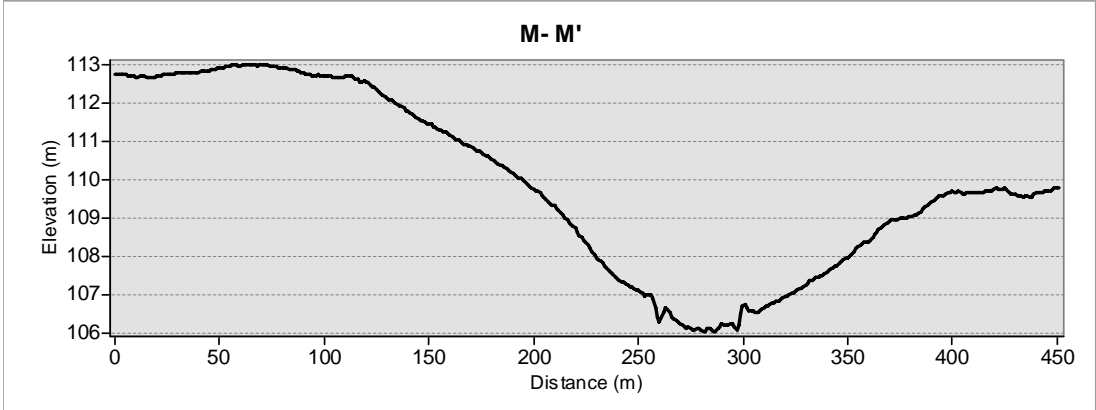
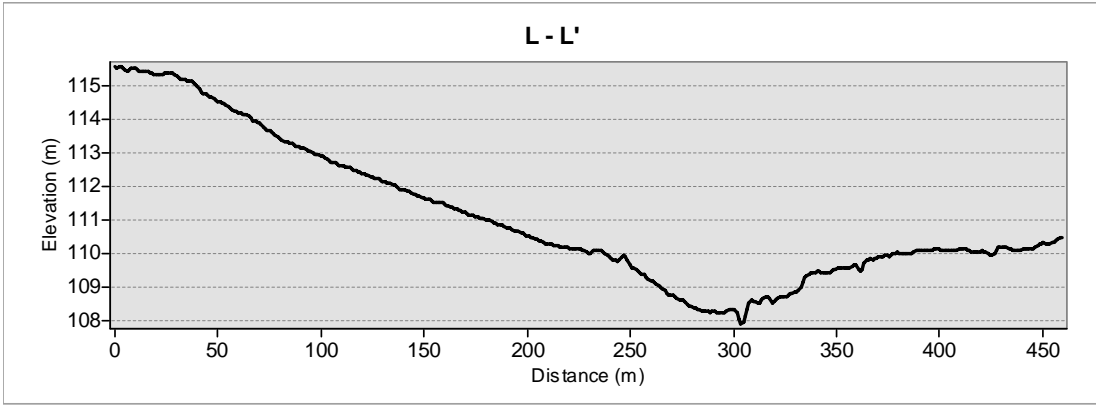
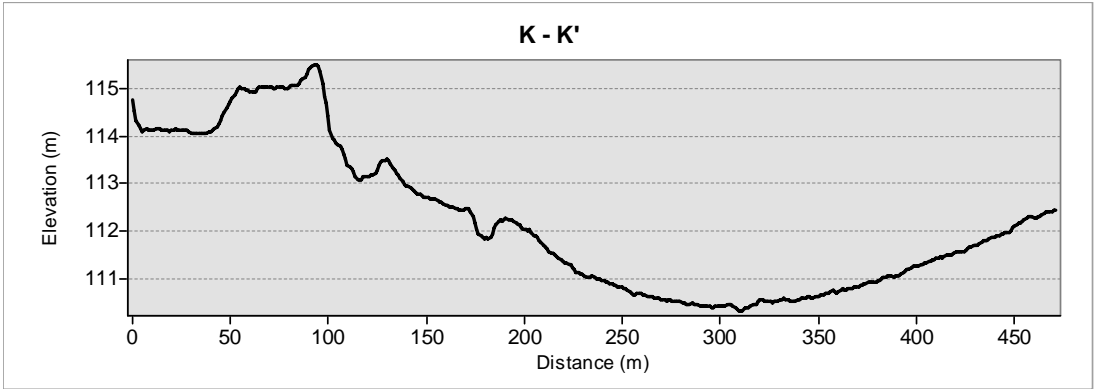


SE SSSI unit



Note. Indicative cutting of up to 8m depth shown in blue in this topographic section.





Appendix B: Dipwell Details and Soil Descriptions

Table A1 Location, depth, soil description and initial data from the dipwell installation and monitoring

SE SSSI Unit									
Site	Latitude, Longitude	Soil Description / Notes	Depth (m bgl)	Grassland	Manual/Logger	14/08/2018	16/08/2018	31/08/2018	13/09/2018
T1A	52.432467, -1.724967	Top soil silty sand dark brown to light brown, semi-fibrous. Gradual transition to lighter grey sand less fibrous and becoming much drier at 50cm, where it was not possible to penetrate with handheld equipment.	0.50	MG4	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T1B	52.4326, -1.72465	Topsoil is dark grey semi-fibrous fine silt continuing to 35cm depth, then trending to stiff dark grey (mottled with brown) clay without roots which continues to 45cm depth. Sandy clay from 45cm-50cm with some large cobbles up to 10cm diameter. This layer could not be penetrated.	0.90	MG4	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T1C	52.432733, -1.72425	Dark brown silty sand with a few small cobbles and slightly moist to 45-50cm, here it becomes a drier, greyer layer of silty sand. At 80cm becomes dark grey-black slightly mottled moist sand, and at 90cm black sandy clay. Various cobbles (mix of rounded and angular) throughout the 90cm, from 2-7cm diameter.	0.90	MG5	Logger	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T1D	52.432817, -1.72415	Dark brown silty sand with abundant cobbles (mix of rounded and angular), semi-fibrous to 40-50cm. Then transitions to sandy clay with a fewer, larger cobbles. Sand becomes light grey/white from 55cm before transitioning to orange. Becomes more clay dominated and mottled from 80cm.	0.90	MG4/MG5 transition	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T1E	52.43305, -1.7231	Brown sandy silt topsoil to 20cm, before becoming greyish mottled clay with brown specks. Surface of ground much damper here compared to elsewhere with more clay near the surface. Hit light grey pure sand at 55cm turning to orange sand at 60cm. Became moister again at around 75cm.	0.90	MG5	Manual	Dry	Dry	0.88 m bgl	Dry
T2A	52.432583, -1.7251	Grey to brown dry silty sand, semi-fibrous, compact to 35cm. Drier, greyer, semi-fibrous compact coarse sand from 35-46cm	0.50	MG5	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry

Table A1 Location, depth, soil description and initial data from the dipwell installation and monitoring - continued

SE SSSI Unit									
Site	Latitude, Longitude	Soil Description / Notes	Depth (m bgl)	Grassland	Manual/Logger	14/08/2018	16/08/2018	31/08/2018	13/09/2018
T2B	52.432717, -1.72475	Brown silty sand, very dry and containing cobbles (3-5cm). Extremely compact sand at 45cm, impenetrable with hand tools.	0.45	MG5	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T2C	52.432817, -1.724333	Dark brown silty sand, very dry and semi-fibrous to 30cm, before transitioning to compact and very solid sand that could not be penetrated.	0.50	MG4	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T2D	52.432933, -1.724033	Brown silty sand topsoil, dry and semi-fibrous. Distinct layer of large rounded cobbles of 5-12cm diameter at 30-40cm depth. Then becomes dark brown sand at 55cm. Gradually becomes clayey at 70cm, this is blue grey clay mottled with brown strands and very cobbly.	0.90	MG4/MG5 boundary	Manual	Dry	Dry	Dry	Dry
T2E	52.433133, -1.723183	Brown sandy silt, semi-fibrous, dry with big cobbles (rounded and up to 10cm diameter) to 25-30cm where it becomes clayey. Trends to light grey coarse sand at 45cm, still with cobbles (4-5cm diameter). At 65cm transitions to light grey sand with cobbles and then to silvery blue sandy clay from 75cm.	0.90	MG4	Manual	Dry	Dry	0.86 m bgl	Dry

NW SSSI Unit									
Site	Latitude, Longitude	Soil Description / Notes	Depth (m bgl)	Grassland	Manual/Logger	14/08/2018	16/08/2018	31/08/2018	
N1A	52.436970, -1.7336798	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt continuing to 40cm depth, then trending to stiff dark grey silty clay without roots. Small cobbles of maximum 3-4cm in diameter at 45cm depth, then trending to lighter grey clay towards the base of the dipwell at 70cm.	0.70		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N1B	52.436772, -1.7337987	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt continuing to 35cm depth, then trending to stiff dark grey (mottled with brown) clay without roots which continues to 45cm depth. Sandy clay from 45cm-50cm depth with some large cobbles up to 10cm diameter. This layer could not be penetrated.	0.50		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry

Table A1 Location, depth, soil description and initial data from the dipwell installation and monitoring - continued

NW SSSI Unit									
Site	Latitude, Longitude	Soil Description / Notes	Depth (m bgl)	Grassland	Manual/Logger	14/08/2018	16/08/2018	31/08/2018	13/09/2018
N1C	52.436503, -1.7339474	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt with cobbles of 3-4 cm in diameter. Topsoil transitions to red-brown sandy clay at 25cm, which continues through to the base of the dipwell at 90cm. Some cobbles of up to 5cm diameter found throughout the sandy clay.	0.90		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N1D	52.436349, -1.7337130	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt with cobbles of 3-4 cm in diameter. Topsoil transitions to very stiff, mottled grey-brown clay at 30cm. The clay continues but contains angular cobbles of up to 7-8cm diameter from 60cm, with an impenetrable layer (potentially a very large rock) at 70cm depth.	0.70		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N1E	52.436169, -1.7336258	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt with cobbles of 3-4 cm in diameter. Transitions to extremely stiff thick dark grey-brown clay at 20cm, which continues to the base at 60cm, which was a solid impenetrable layer.	0.60		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N2A	52.436950, -1.7330327	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt with some angular cobbles of 4-5cm diameter. At 15cm depth it transitions to a stiff, dry, dark brown clay layer. This continues to 60cm depth where there is dark brown sandy clay which is extremely stiff. This continues to the base at 90cm.	0.90		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N2B	52.436527, -1.7329470	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt. At 25cm depth it transitions to a stiff semi-moist, dark brown clay layer. From 32cm depth there are small infrequent gravel stones of less than 1cm diameter. These gravels are increasingly frequent from 50cm and increase in size to between 2-5cm in diameter. Clay transitions to light grey fine sandy clay from 60cm, with increasingly coarse sand at 75-80cm. From 80cm-90cm the sand content decreases and there is light grey stiff clay.	0.90		Logger	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry

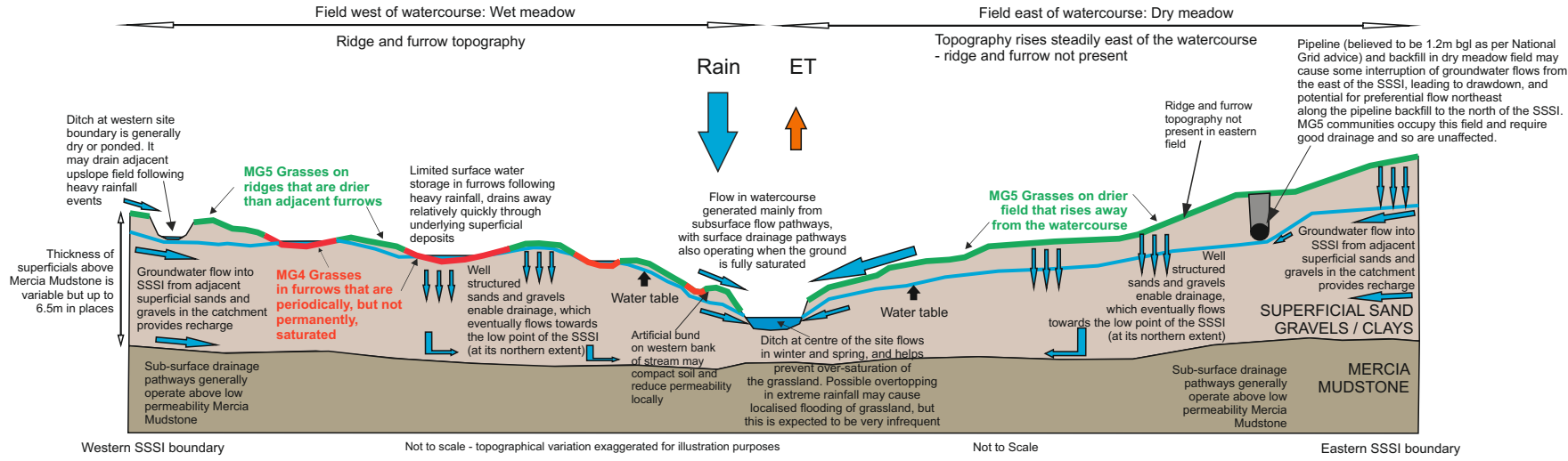
Table A1 Location, depth, soil description and initial data from the dipwell installation and monitoring - continued

NW SSSI Unit									
Site	Latitude, Longitude	Soil Description / Notes	Depth (m bgl)	Grassland	Manual/Logger	14/08/2018	16/08/2018	31/08/2018	13/09/2018
N2C	52.436663, -1.7332404	Topsoil is semi-moist, dark brown semi-fibrous fine silt. Transitions to moist mottled grey clay at 24cm depth with red lines along root lines. Small gravels appearing from 30cm depth, around 2-3cm in diameter. Larger gravels from 40cm, with a mix varying between 1 and 10cm diameter. More sand gradually mixed with the clay before it transitions to blue sandy clay with gravel at 50cm depth. At 60cm depth there is another blue clay section without sands and gravels, before becoming increasingly sandy again from 75cm. It remains semi-moist blue sandy clay until the base at 90cm.	0.90		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N2D	52.436312, -1.7330807	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous very fine silt. Transitions to extremely stiff thick dark grey-brown clay at 10cm. This continues to 43cm which was the base of the dipwell due to a hardened layer (which could be rock) that could not be penetrated.	0.43		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry
N2E	52.436105, -1.7330966	Topsoil is dry, dark brown semi-fibrous very fine silt. Transitions to extremely stiff thick dark grey-brown clay at 15cm. Clay changes to light grey at 60cm, and continues to the base of the dipwell where it was too hardened and compact to break through.	0.66		Manual	n/a	n/a	n/a	Dry

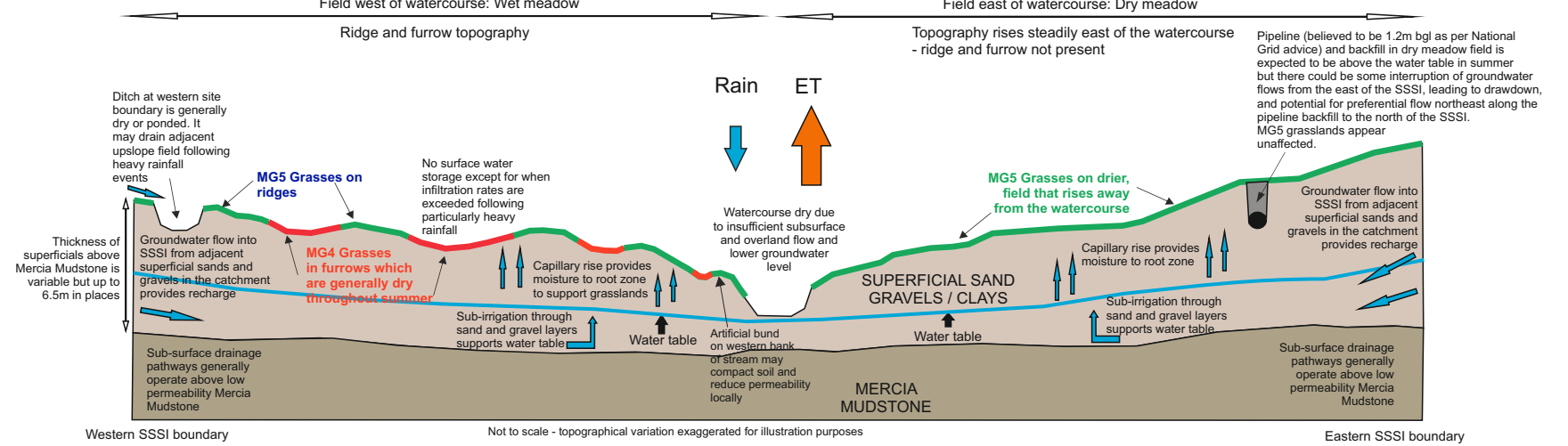
Appendix C: Conceptual Models

A. SE SSSI CONCEPTUAL MODEL

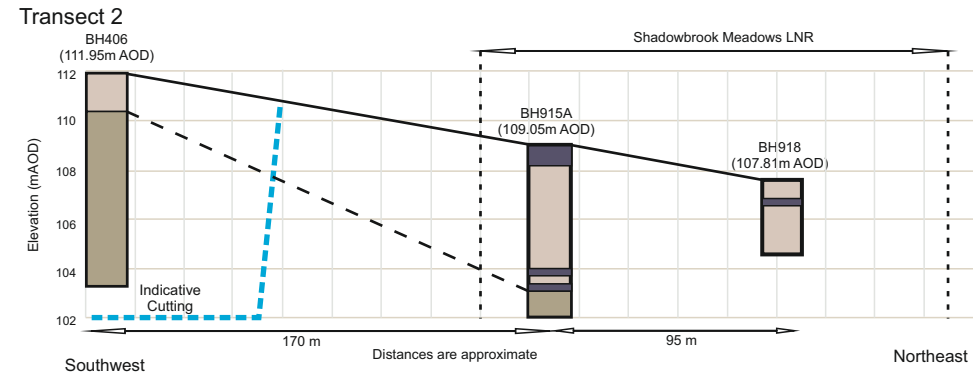
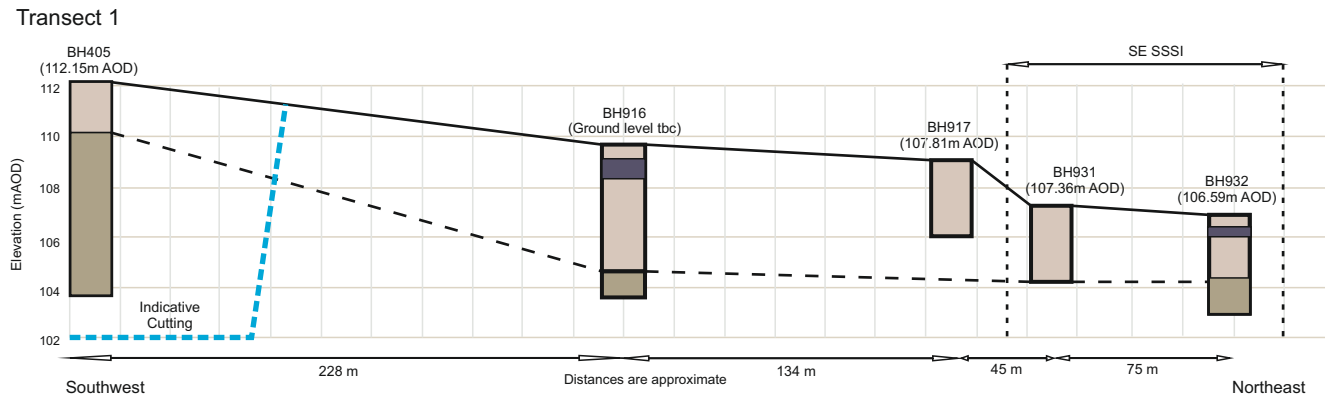
WINTER / SPRING



SUMMER / AUTUMN



B. SE SSSI GEOLOGY CROSS SECTIONS



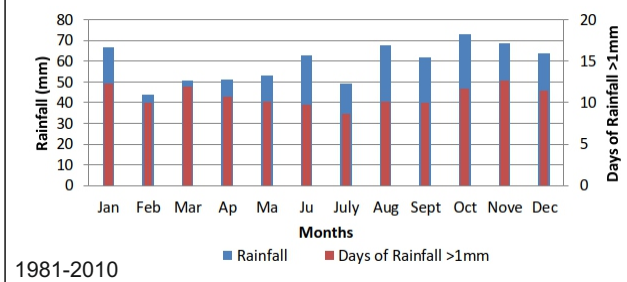
WET MEADOW - SE SSSI



CENTRAL DITCHCOURSE - SE SSSI



C. COLESHILL RAINFALL



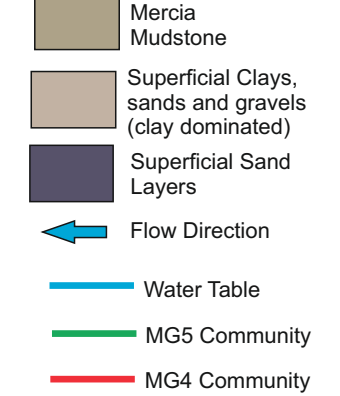
D. CATCHMENT LOSS



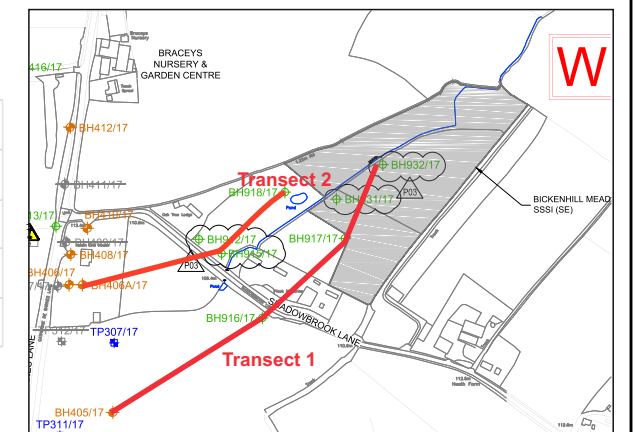
E. DIPWELL MONITORING LOCATIONS



CONCEPTUAL MODEL & CROSS SECTION LEGEND



GI & TRANSECT LOCATIONS



Purpose of Issue
PURPOSE OF ISSUE

Client
Highways England
Major Projects
Rge Cube
199 Wharfside Street
Birmingham
B1 1RN

Working on behalf of
**highways
england**

Project Title
M42 JUNCTION 6

Drawing Title
**BICKENHILL MEADOWS
SE SSSI UNIT
CONCEPTUAL MODEL**

Designed TJ
Drawn TJ
Checked OT
Approved GC
Date 03/10/18

Internal Project No 60543032
Scale @ A3 NA
Suitability Zone X

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN PREPARED PURSUANT TO AND SUBJECT TO THE TERMS OF AECOM'S APPOINTMENT BY ITS CLIENT. AECOM ACCEPTS NO LIABILITY FOR ANY USE OF THIS DOCUMENT OTHER THAN BY ITS ORIGINAL CLIENT OR FOLLOWING AECOM'S EXPRESS AGREEMENT TO SUCH USE, AND ONLY FOR THE PURPOSES FOR WHICH IT WAS PREPARED AND PROVIDED.

AECOM
Victoria Square House
Victoria Square
Birmingham
B2 4AJ

AECOM Infrastructure & Environment UK Limited
Registered in England Registered number: 880328
Registered office: Midpoint, Alencon Link,
Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 7PP

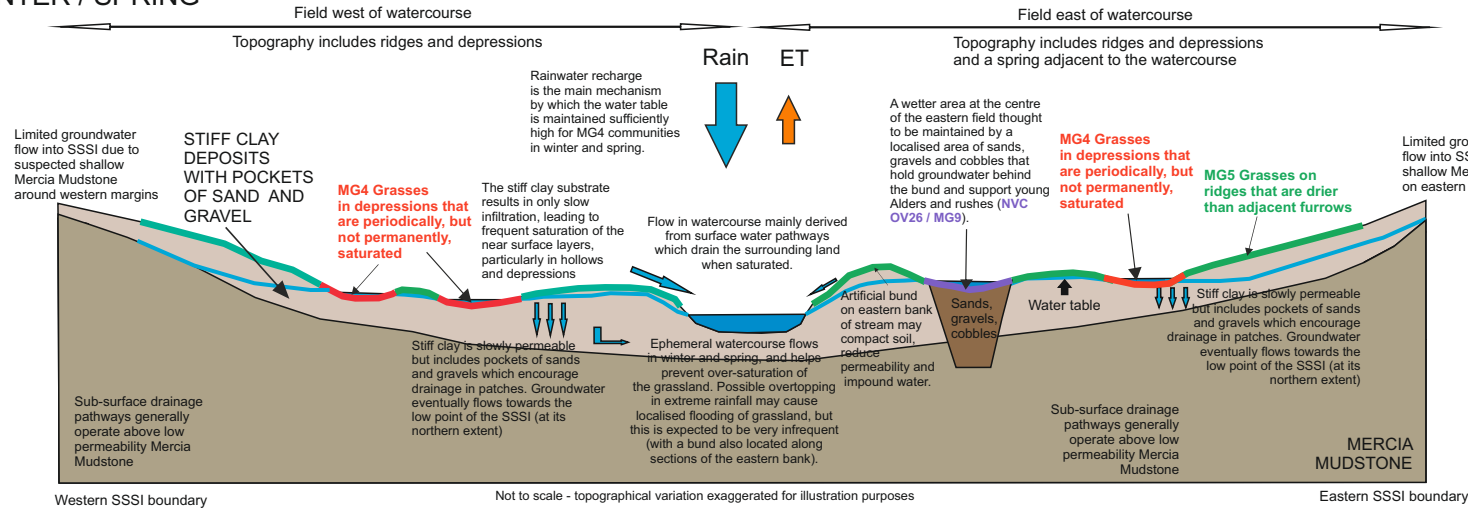
Drawing Number
Highways England Pin | Originator | Volume
HE551485 -ACM -EGN

Location
M42_SW_ZZ_ZZ | Type | Role | Number
DR_HD_001

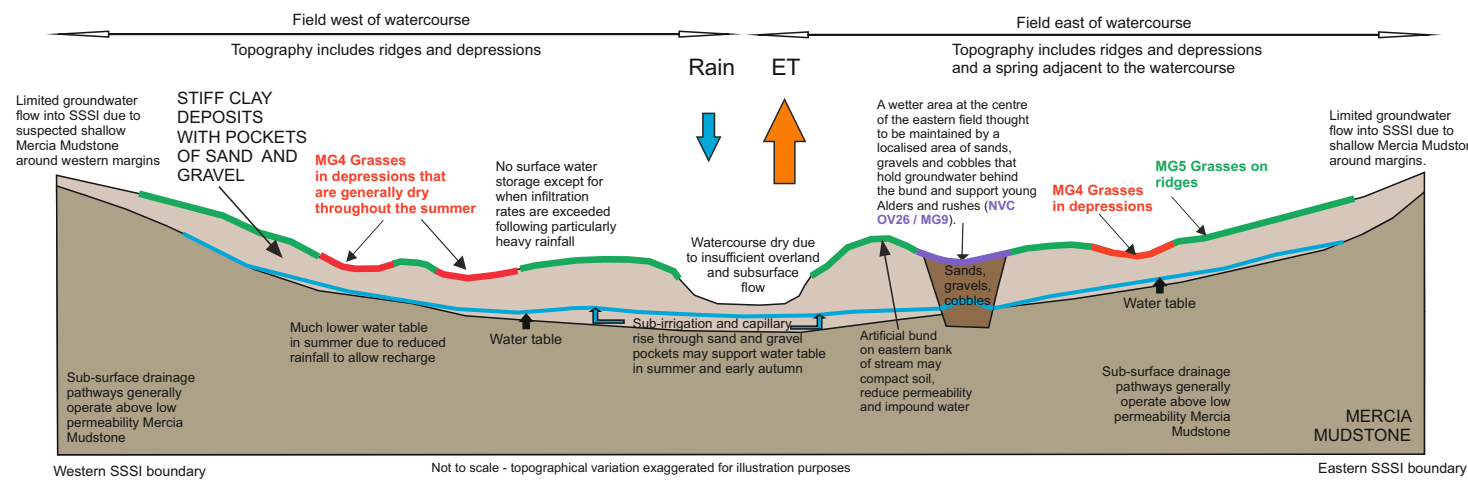
Rev
P01

A. NW SSSI CONCEPTUAL MODEL

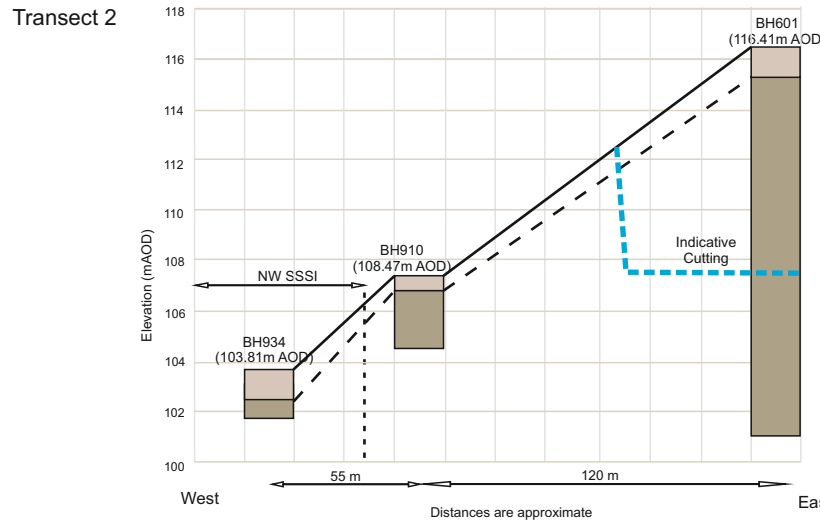
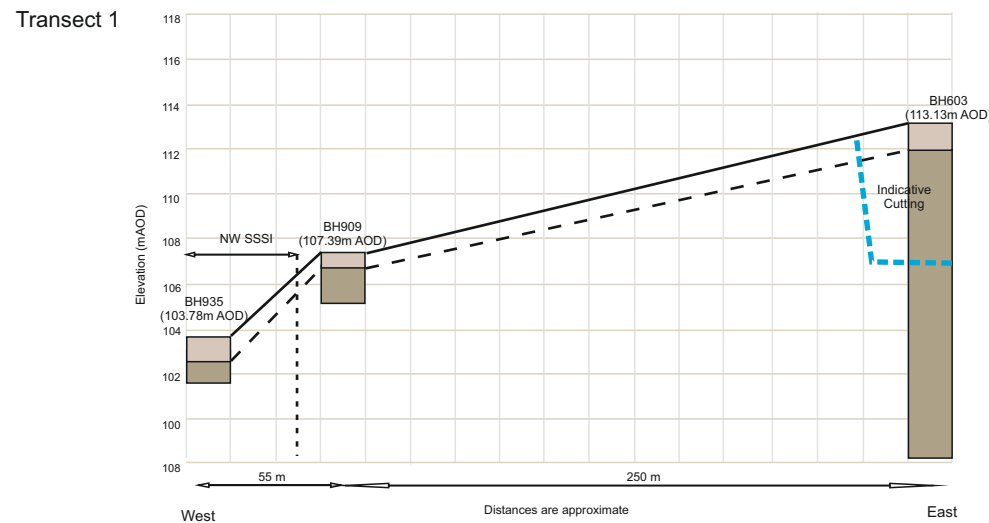
WINTER / SPRING



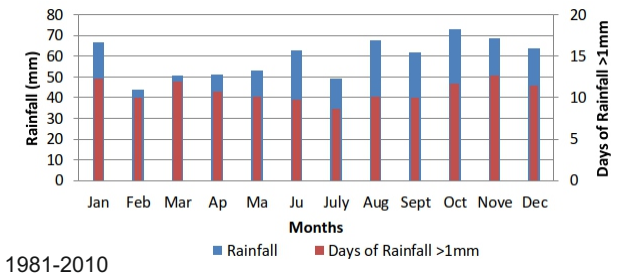
SUMMER / AUTUMN



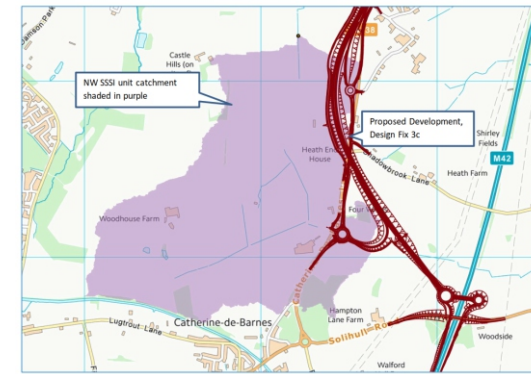
B. NW SSSI GEOLOGY CROSS SECTIONS



C. COLESHILL RAINFALL



D. CATCHMENT LOSS



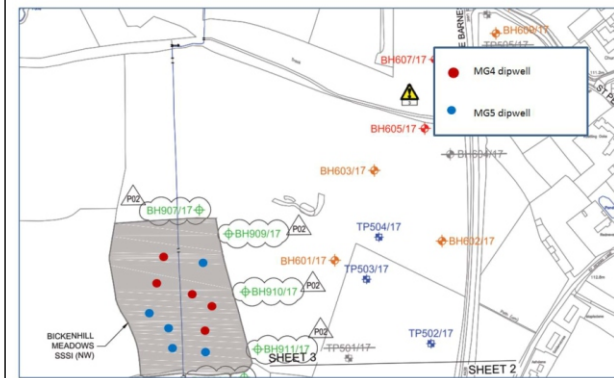
NW SSSI - EASTERN FIELD



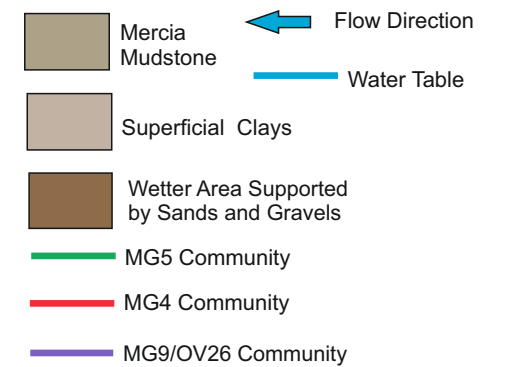
NW SSSI - CENTRAL DITCHCOURSE



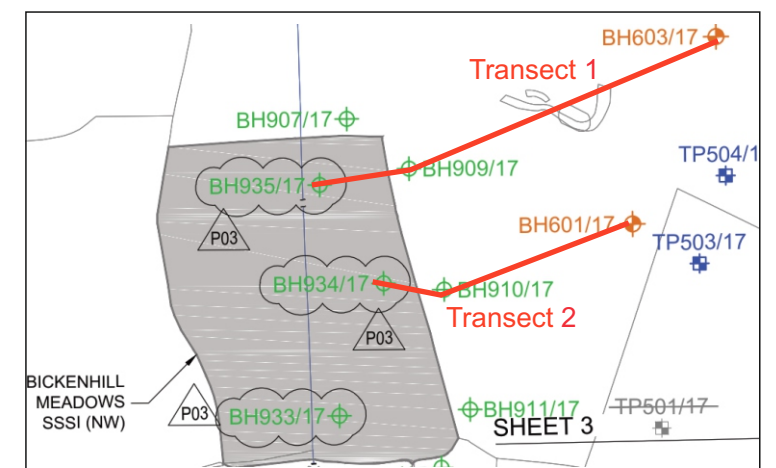
E. DIPWELL MONITORING LOCATIONS



CONCEPTUAL MODEL & CROSS SECTION LEGEND



GI & TRANSECT LOCATIONS



PURPOSE OF ISSUE	Project Title
Client: Highways England Major Projects Rge Cube 199 Wharfside Street Birmingham B1 1RN	M42 JUNCTION 6
Working on behalf of highways england	

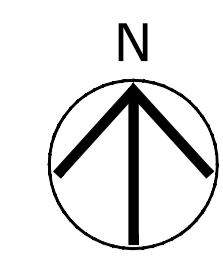
Drawing Title
BICKENHILL MEADOWS NW SSSI UNIT CONCEPTUAL MODEL

Designed TJ	Drawn TJ	Checked OT	Approved GC	Date 03/10/18
Internal Project No 60543032		Suitability		
Scale @ A3 NA		Zone X		
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN PREPARED PURSUANT TO AND SUBJECT TO THE TERMS OF AECOM'S APPOINTMENT BY ITS CLIENT. AECOM ACCEPTS NO LIABILITY FOR ANY USE OF THIS DOCUMENT OTHER THAN BY ITS ORIGINAL CLIENT OR FOLLOWING AECOM'S EXPRESS AGREEMENT TO SUCH USE, AND ONLY FOR THE PURPOSES FOR WHICH IT WAS PREPARED AND PROVIDED.				

AECOM Victoria Square House Victoria Square Birmingham B2 4AJ	AECOM Infrastructure & Environment UK Limited Registered in England Registered number: 880328 Registered office: Midpoint, Alencon Link, Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 7PP
Drawing Number Highways England Pin Originator Volume HE551485 -ACM -EGN	Rev P01
Location M42_SW_ZZ_ZZ	Type Role Number DR_HD_002

Appendix D: Proposed Mitigation Design for SE SSSI Unit

This map is based upon Ordnance Survey material with the permission of Ordnance Survey on behalf of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office © Crown copyright. Unauthorised reproduction infringes Crown copyright and may lead to prosecution or civil proceedings. Highways England 100030649 2018



SAFETY, HEALTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION BOX
 IT IS ASSUMED THAT ALL WORKS ON THIS DRAWING WILL BE CARRIED OUT BY A COMPETENT CONTRACTOR WORKING, WHERE APPROPRIATE, TO AN APPROPRIATE METHOD STATEMENT.
 THIS DRAWING IS TO BE USED ONLY FOR THE PURPOSE OF ISSUE THAT IT WAS ISSUED FOR AND IS SUBJECT TO AMENDMENT.
 EXCEPTIONAL RISKS RELATING TO THE WORKS ASSOCIATED WITH THIS DRAWING ARE IDENTIFIED BELOW.

CONSTRUCTION

MAINTENANCE / OPERATION / DECOMMISSIONING / DEMOLITION

NOTES
 1. THIS DRAWING IS TO BE READ IN CONJUNCTION WITH ALL OTHER RELEVANT DOCUMENTATION.
 2. DO NOT SCALE FROM THIS DRAWING, USE ONLY PRINTED DIMENSIONS.
 3. ALL DIMENSIONS IN METRES. ALL CHAINAGES, LEVELS AND COORDINATES ARE IN METRES UNLESS DEFINED OTHERWISE.
 4. THIS DRAWING IS TO BE READ IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE PROJECT HEALTH & SAFETY FILE FOR ANY IDENTIFIED POTENTIAL RISKS.

Sealed Collection Sumps

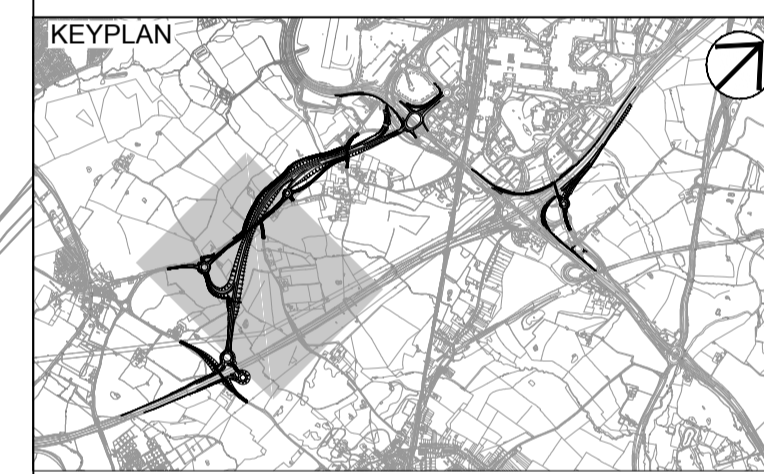
1. Installation of a cut-off drain located near the base of the slope but above the road drainage to intercept surface water runoff from the west of the road that would otherwise have flowed towards the SSSI. The intercept water would collect in a sealed sump at the base of the cutting, which conveys water beneath the carriageway to a sealed pumping sump on the eastern side of the cutting. The sumps should be sealed to prevent the ingress of road runoff and should be separate from the road drainage, the quality of which could impact on the quality of the SSSI.

2. Water accumulating in the sump should be pumped to discharge to an existing trench located immediately north west of the SSSI.

3. Existing ditch to be retained acting as a recharge trench. This existing ditch would return water to the wet meadow field within the SSSI. No physical works to the ditch is currently envisaged.

LEGEND

	EXTENT OF SCHEME
	EXTENT OF SSSI
	ASSUMED SSSI DRAINAGE CATCHMENT
	APPROXIMATE CATCHMENT AREA CUTOFF BY NEW ROAD
	CUTOFF DRAIN
	SEALED SUMP
	PUMPED WATER
	EXISTING DITCH



Revision Details	By	Date	Suffix
	Check		

Purpose of issue

FOR INFORMATION

Client
 Highways England
 The Cube
 199 Wharfside Street
 Birmingham
 B1 1RN
 0

Working on behalf of

Project Title
M42 JUNCTION 6 IMPROVEMENTS

Drawing Title
BICKENHILL MEADOWS SSSI PUMPING SOLUTION SKETCH OPTION 2

Designed PC	Drawn OM	Checked	Approved	Date 12/09/18
----------------	-------------	---------	----------	------------------

Internal Project No.
60543032

Suitability
S2

Scale @ A1
1:2000

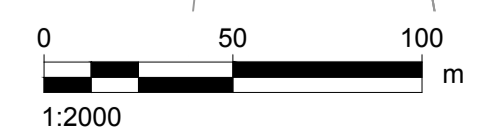
Zone
M42

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN PREPARED PURSUANT TO AND SUBJECT TO THE TERMS OF AECOM'S APPOINTMENT BY ITS CLIENT. AECOM ACCEPTS NO LIABILITY FOR ANY USE OF THIS DOCUMENT OTHER THAN BY ITS ORIGINAL CLIENT OR FOLLOWING AECOM'S EXPRESS AGREEMENT TO SUCH USE, AND ONLY FOR THE PURPOSES FOR WHICH IT WAS PREPARED AND PROVIDED.

AECOM
 Royal Court
 Basil Close
 Chesterfield
 Tel: 01246 209221
 Fax: 01246 209229
 www.aecom.com

AECOM
 AECOM Infrastructure & Environment UK Limited
 Registered in England Registered number: 880328
 Registered office: Scott House, Alencon Link,
 Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 7TP

Drawing Number Highways England PIN HE551485 -ACM -HGN -	1 Originator	1 Volume	Rev P01
M42_GEN_ZZ_ZZ -DR-SK-0075	1 Type	1 Role	1 Number



Plot Date: 11 October 2018 09:43:32
 File Name: C:\P\WORKING\AECOM\EU\MATTHEW.HARDY\3747\HE551485-ACM-HGN-M42_GEN_ZZ_SK-CH-0075

About AECOM

AECOM (NYSE: ACM) is built to deliver a better world. We design, build, finance and operate infrastructure assets for governments, businesses and organizations in more than 150 countries.

As a fully integrated firm, we connect knowledge and experience across our global network of experts to help clients solve their most complex challenges.

From high-performance buildings and infrastructure, to resilient communities and environments, to stable and secure nations, our work is transformative, differentiated and vital. A Fortune 500 firm, AECOM companies had revenue of approximately US\$19 billion during the 12 months ended June 30, 2015.

See how we deliver what others can only imagine at aecom.com and [@AECOM](https://twitter.com/AECOM)

Appendix F - Natural England and Warwickshire Wildlife Trust Presentation (14.03.19)

Regional Investment Programme

M42 Junction 6 Improvement

Natural England & WWT Meeting

14th March 2019

M42 J6 Improvement

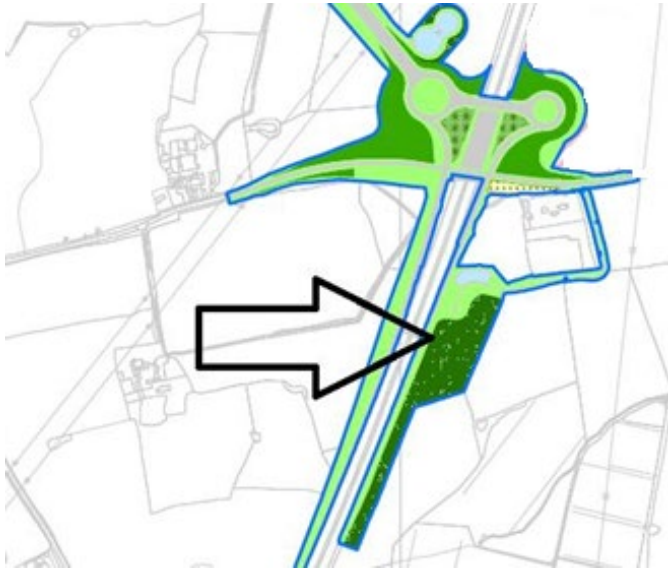
Agenda

- Introductions
- Aspbury's Copse Ancient Woodland
- Bickenhill Meadows SSSI
- Biodiversity Offsetting
- Any other business

M42 J6 Improvement Meeting Objectives

- Agree cross party position on ancient woodland.
- An understanding and agreement of the current SSSI solution.
- Update on Biodiversity Offsetting.
- Expectations within a Statement of Common Ground.

M42 J6 Improvement Aspbury's Copse Ancient Woodland



- Loss of 0.46 ha of ancient woodland as presented within the DCO.
- No less than 3:1 compensation planting area ratio.
- Approximate 1.9 ha area within the order limits for Scheme specific compensation planting.

M42 J6 Improvement

Part 1 Hydrological Investigation Update



M42 J6 Improvement

Bickenhill Meadows SSSI – where we were at DCO submission (TNv7)

NW SSSI

- Separate wet (predominantly MG4) and dry (MG5) grassland compartments
- Dependent on direct rainfall (surrounded by shallow Mercia Mudstone)
- Loss of ~5% surface water catchment, but this is poorly connected to the site
- No adverse effect on hydrology predicted, no mitigation required
- Ongoing monitoring using dipwells and vegetation surveys



M42 J6 Improvement

Bickenhill Meadows SSSI – where we were at DCO submission (TNv7)

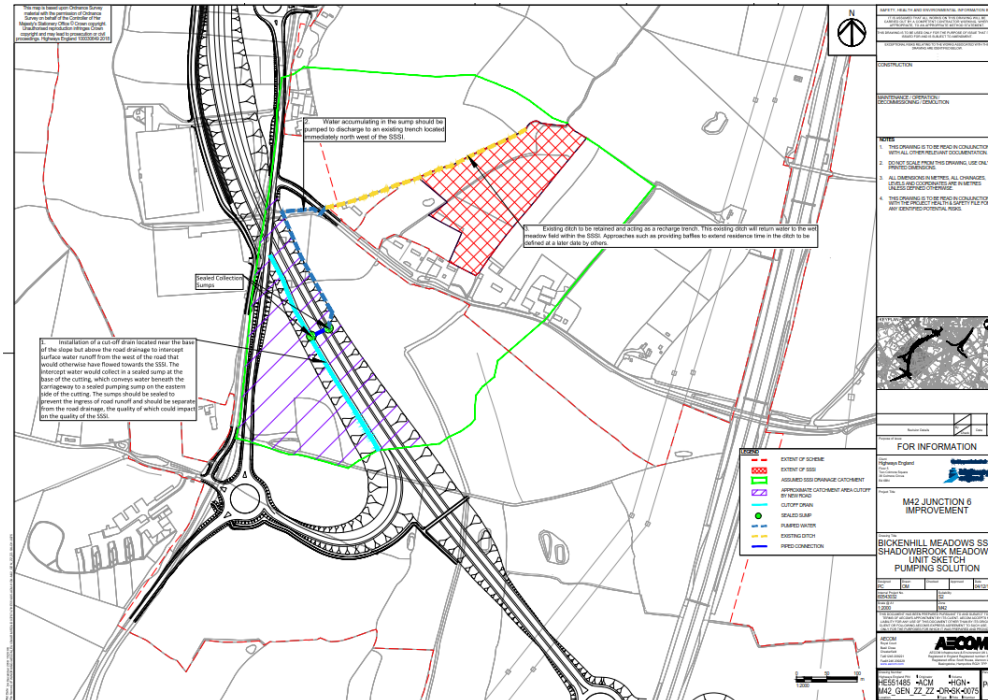
SE SSSI

- SSSI is located at the base of the catchment area
- Separate compartments, comprising MG4/MG5 and MG5 communities
- Recharge likely dependent on combination of rainwater, groundwater flow, infiltration from the northern ditch & potentially central watercourse
- Superficial deposits thin out towards the new mainline link road cutting
- No evidence that the cutting will intersect sands/gravels containing significant groundwater – limited impact on hydrogeology;
- More significant may be the loss of 21% of the surface water catchment
- Loss falls within that expected with natural climatic variability, but ‘year on year’ impact is not known



M42 J6 Improvement

Bickenhill Meadows SSSI – where we were at DCO submission (TNv7)

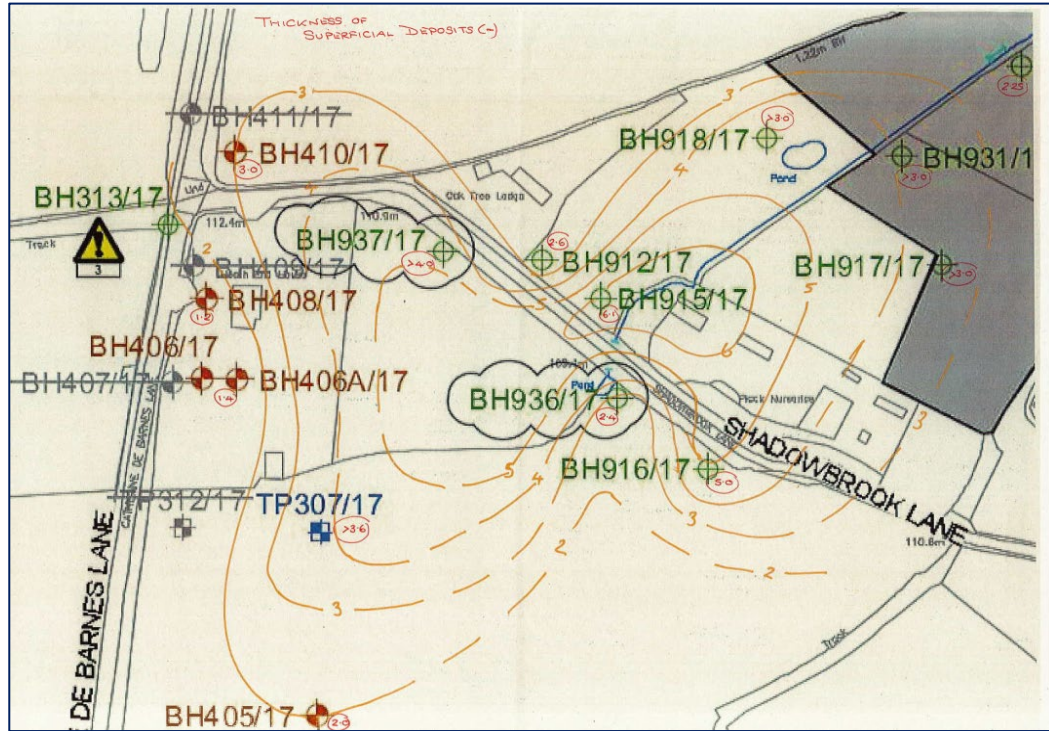


- Mitigations options considered:
- Run-off from local roads
 - Collection and pumping of water to the SSSI
 - Borehole pumping
 - Potable water supply

A pumped solution was accepted as a workable approach and is included in the DCO as a 'fall back' option. However, all parties would prefer a more passive, sustainable solution.

M42 J6 Improvement

SE SSSI Unit – Further analysis (TN v8)



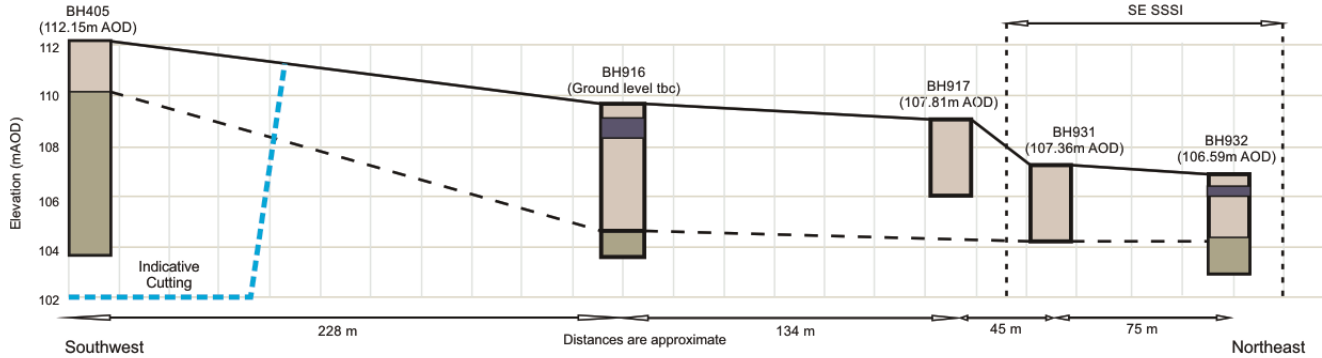
Recap:

‘Bowl’ of superficial deposits centered on the WWT Nature Reserve / Shadowbrook Lane, where it is >6m thick and containing upper sand layers important for infiltration. At the proposed cutting superficial deposits only 1-2m thick and lacks upper sand layers (i.e. limited storage and infiltration potential). Thus, the cutting is unlikely to cut off a significant supply of groundwater.

M42 J6 Improvement

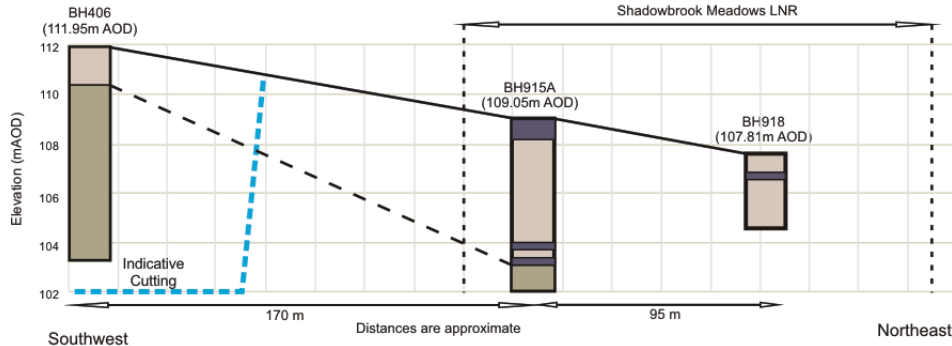
SE SSSI Unit – Further analysis (TNv8)

Transect 1



Infiltration would be most significant where there are superficial sand layers.

Transect 2

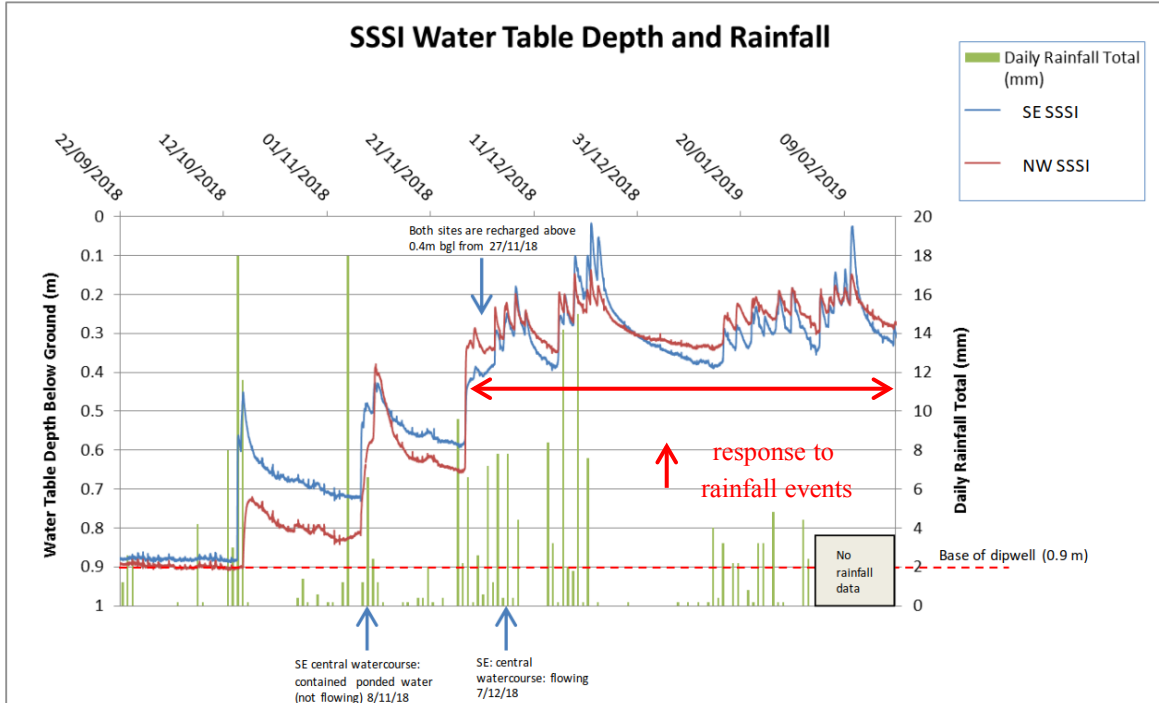


The superficial deposits in the vicinity of the cutting do not include sand layers, and so infiltration is not expected to be significant. Sand layers are only located closer to the SSSI in the area that is not 'cut-off' by the Scheme.

M42 J6 Improvement

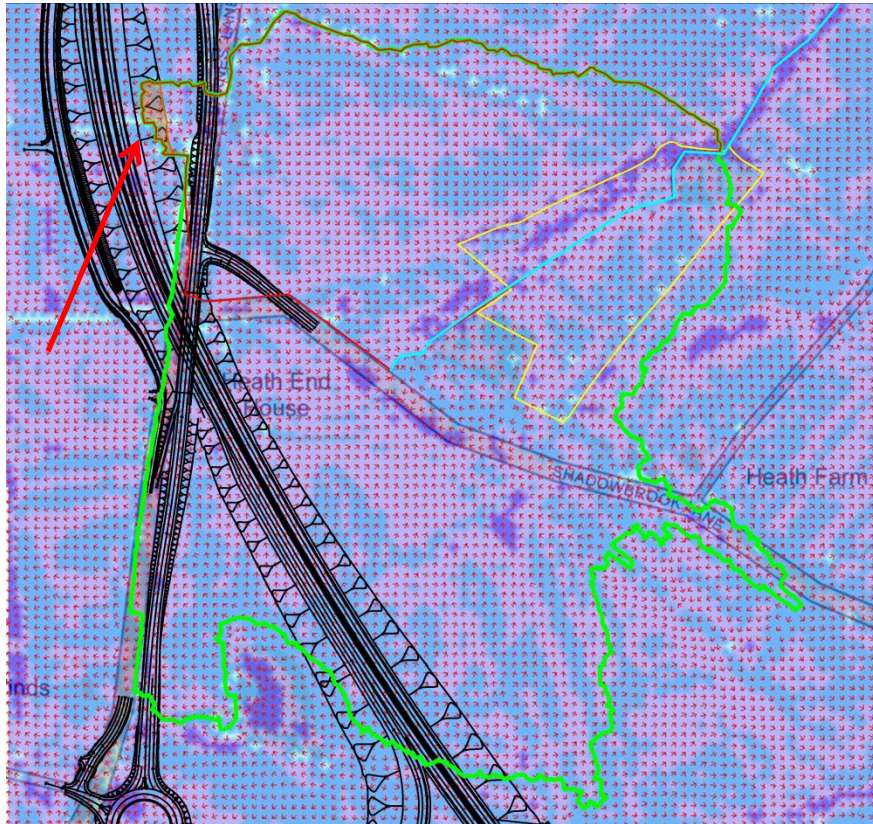
SE SSSI Unit – Further analysis (TNv8)

- 6 months dipwell monitoring incl. WL loggers in each unit.
- Positive response to rainfall events.
- Upper sand layers support rainfall recharge.
- GW recharge completed by early Dec. despite v dry summer (soil moisture deficit).
- SE SSSI maintaining GWL <0.4 m bgl.
- Recharge appears to have occurred before central stream was continuously flowing (although some impact from Shadowbrook Lane culvert).
- No clear difference in MG4/MG5 grassland water table levels
- No obvious pattern between water table depth and electrical conductivity or pH within data obtained to date. The monitoring continues.



M42 J6 Improvement

SE SSSI Unit – Further analysis (TNv8)



21% SW catchment loss relates to the 'whole' unit (incl. drier MG5 fields less sensitive to soil moisture/GWL). Using Microdrainage software the 'direct' wet meadow catchment has been defined – reduction of 'direct' catchment area is ~2%.

Topo. low point through the centre of the wet meadow as indicated by estimated water depths:

- Central stream likely historically realigned.
- Most water from the north reaches the low point and would flow towards the NE end of the SSSI unit.
- Reduces OF & infiltration from the north to the central ditch.
- Flow vectors suggest poor connectivity to central ditch (localised topo plus historic soil compaction?)

M42 J6 Improvement SE SSSI Unit – TN v8)

Rainfall Runoff Volume Analysis – Average Year:

Areas	Existing Vol	Proposed Vol	Difference Vol	% Difference (without mitigation)	Proposed Vol (+Mitigation)	Difference Vol	% Difference (with mitigation)
Total Catchment Area	55401	43854	11547	21	50468	4934	9
North of central watercourse (area draining directly to SE (northern) Wet Meadow)	19433	19085	347	2	25699	6266	24
South of central watercourse (area draining to watercourse and directly to SE (southern) Dry Meadow)	35969	24769	11200	31	24769	11200	31

Total catchment loss (21%) = ~11500 m³ per annum ave. yr. However, this area is poorly connected to the wet meadow.

The 2% loss of the better connected 'direct' wet meadow catchment = ~350 m³ per annum ave. yr.

These are indicative estimates based on assumptions and thus are to be used to guide mitigation.

Reduction in catchment to the drier MG5 field to the south is 31% (but this area does not require mitigation – no MG4).

M42 J6 Improvement

SE SSSI Unit – Further analysis summary (TNv8)



1. 21% total catchment loss. However, this includes only ~2% of the 'direct' catchment to SE Unit.
2. Groundwater recharge appears driven by rainfall events and likely completed prior to central stream flowing continuously.
3. Of the total catchment area lost, this is unlikely to be a significant source of groundwater due to thin superficial deposits and lack of sand layers important for infiltration.
4. Low risk of draw down into cutting due to lack of sand layers.

M42 J6 Improvement Part 2 Mitigation Options



M42 J6 Improvement Options Considered

- 5 Options were evaluated underpinned by 2 operational techniques, these consisted of:
 - Employing a pumped drainage system; and
 - A ‘passive’ system composed of a gravity fed drainage systems.
- Option A – Conveyance of surface water runoff from a portion of the severed catchment area using a pumped system.
- Option B – Conveyance of surface water runoff from the attenuation features at Junction 5 A to the catchment area using a pumped system.
- Option C - Re-profiling the drainage of a portion of Catherine-de-Barnes Lane to drain surface water runoff towards the SSSI catchment area.
- Option D – Re-profiling Shadowbrook Lane carriageway to discharge surface water runoff towards the catchment area.
- Option E – Re-profiling the full extents of the realigned Catherine-de-Barnes Lane to drain surface water runoff towards the SSSI catchment area.

M42 J6 Improvement Options Parameters

- Options were restricted by the opportunities available due to the extent of the catchment being cut off and availability of 'free space' to convey water from elsewhere.
- Opportunities to raise ground levels and carriageway levels was restricted due to Birmingham Airports requirements to maintain their specified flight path safeguarding surface.

M42 J6 Improvement Options Discounted

Option D - Re-Profiling Shadowbrook Lane

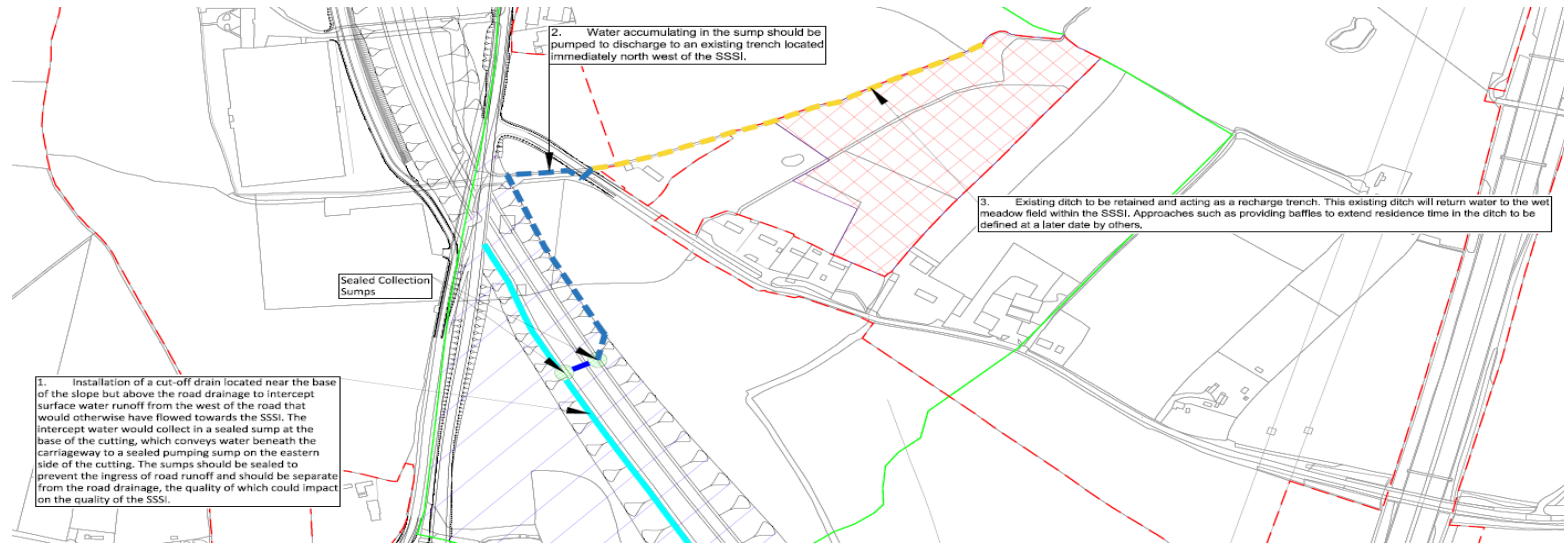
- Subsequent to a site visit in January 2019, it was apparent that although Shadowbrook Lane sits within the catchment towards the SSSI, it was not clear where the surface drainage is discharged. The site visit confirmed that drainage runoff from Shadowbrook Lane contributes to the SSSI catchment area.
- Any further improvements to Shadowbrook Lane would not add any value to the SSSI catchment.

Option E - Re-Profiling the full extent of Catherine-de-Barnes

- This option was discarded once it was recognised that the re-profiling of Catherine-de-Barnes Lane would require raising its level in an area already restricted by the Birmingham Airport Safeguarding surface for flights approaching the nearby Airport. The proposed design is currently located as close as possible to the safeguarding surface and any increase to the road surface will incur protruding through the surface and raising objections from the Airport on grounds of safety to their flights.

M42 J6 Improvement Options Evaluated – Option A

Diverting surface water runoff from a portion of the severed catchment area via use of a pumped system



M42 J6 Improvement

Option A

- This option is part of the original proposal as stipulated in the Environmental Statement.
- Proposal consists of sealed collection pumps at the bottom of the cut slope within both verges of the new mainline link road.
- Surface water runoff from severed area of catchment will be conveyed beneath the carriageway link road and pumped to ground level before discharging into the ditch running to the north of the SSSI.

M42 J6 Improvement

Option A

Advantages

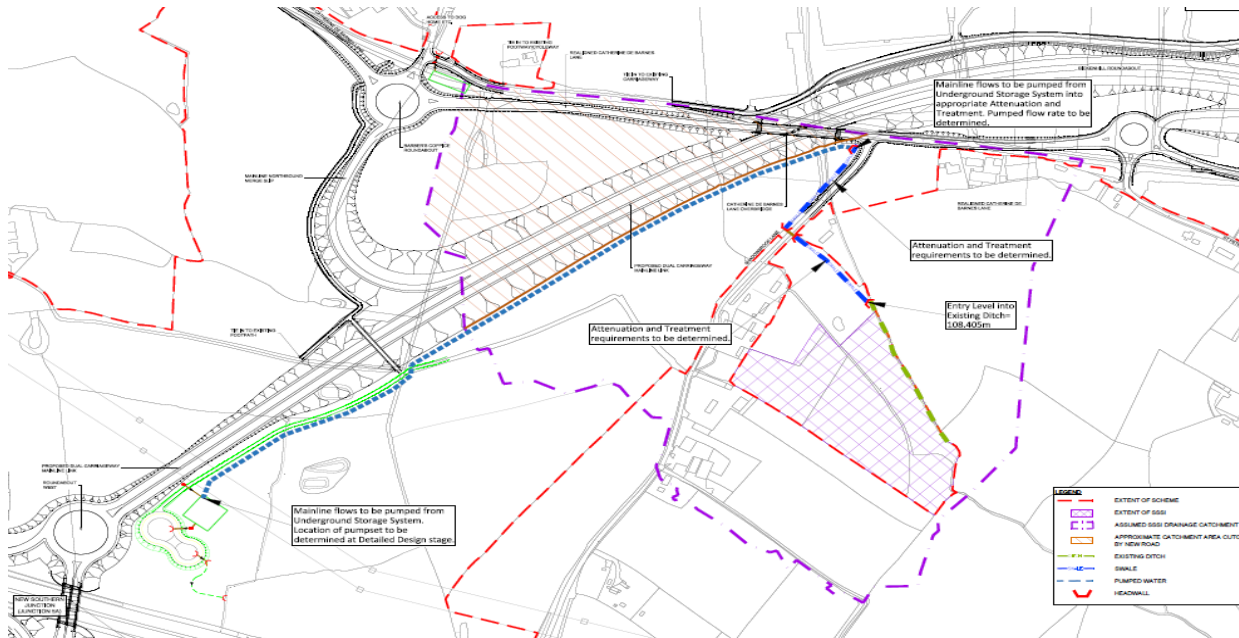
- Water discharged into the ditch does not require any additional treatment.
- This option replenishes approximately 11% of the overall catchment area lost.

Disadvantages

- Recharging the SSSI via a pump station and rising main will not reflect the natural recharge process. This will incur risks of excess or under supply of water.
- Risks associated with pump failure will lead to significant damage to grassland features in the SSSI.
- Significant investment in O&M procedures and management will be required to maintain the pumped system and ensure sufficient backstops are in place to avoid pump failures.

M42 J6 Improvement Option B

Conveying surface water runoff from the outfall for the catchment area which drains approximately 1500m of the dual carriageway link road via a pumped system



M42 J6 Improvement

Option B

- This proposal consists of locating the pump adjacent to the attenuation features north-west of Junction 5A.
- The pump will convey water from the attenuation features towards the SSSI catchment area.
- The attenuation features are designed to store highway drainage runoff from the mainline dual carriageway network and Junction 5A including a 1.5km length of dual carriageway and face of earthworks cut slopes.

M42 J6 Improvement

Option B

Advantages

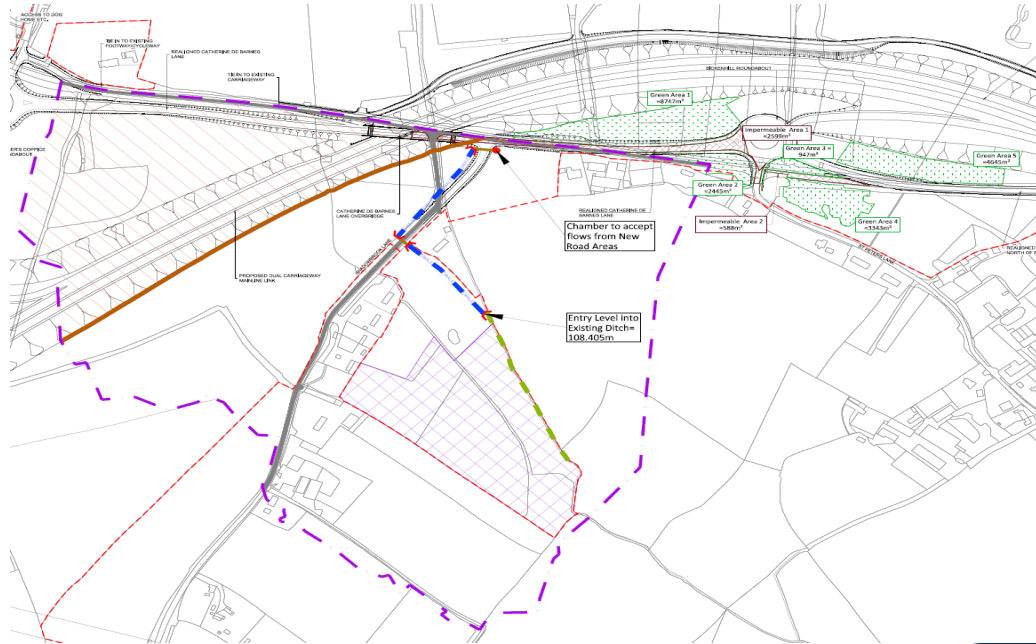
- This option will fully replenish the overall catchment area (21%) lost due to mainline link road.

Disadvantages

- Recharging the SSSI via a pump station and rising main will not reflect the natural recharge process. This will incur risks of excess or under supply of water.
- Risks associated with pump failure will lead to significant damage to grassland features in the SSSI.
- Significant investment in O&M procedures and management will be required to maintain the pumped system and ensure sufficient backstops are in place to avoid pump failures.

M42 J6 Improvement Option C

Re-profiling the section of Catherine-de-Barnes lane between Catherine-de-Barnes Lane South overbridge and Bickenhill Roundabout to drain surface water runoff towards the SSSI catchment area by gravity.



M42 J6 Improvement Option C

- The proposal consists of modifying the drainage features on the re-aligned Catherine-de-Barnes Lane between Catherine-de-Barnes Lane Overbridge south and Bickenhill Roundabout.
- Surface water runoff from this section of carriageway will be discharged towards the SSSI catchment area.
- Surface water runoff from additional green field areas surrounding the Bickenhill Roundabout will be conveyed via a variety of swales and pipe systems to discharge water towards the SSSI catchment area.

M42 J6 Improvement

Option C

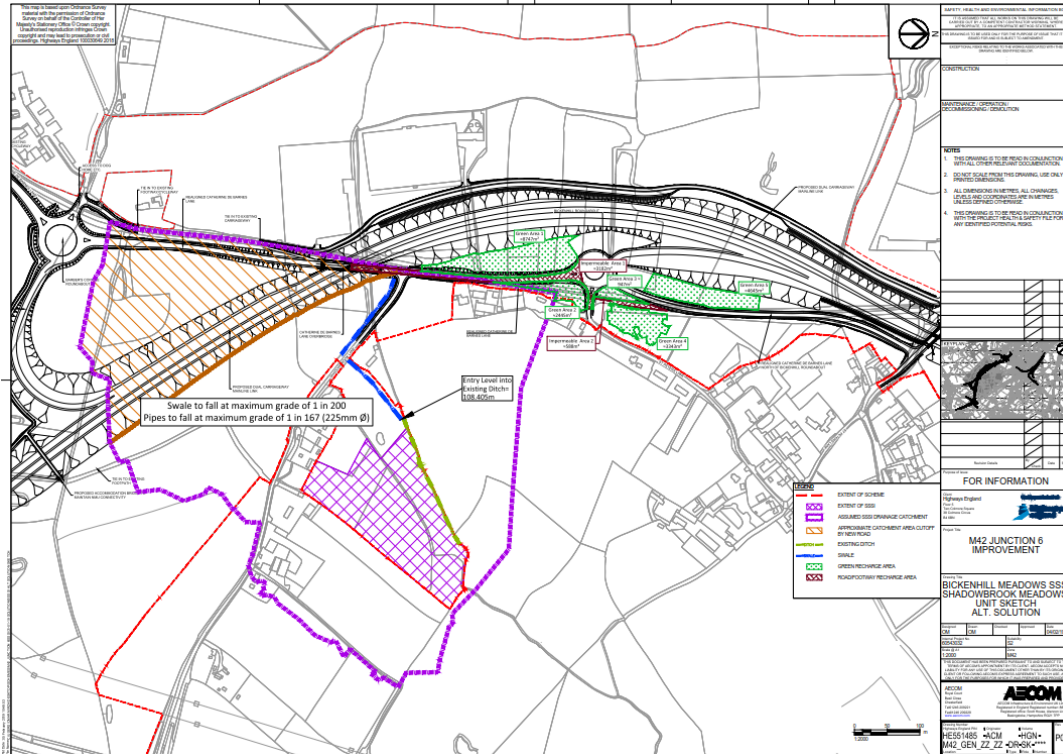
Advantages

- This is a gravity fed solution taking advantage of conveying surface water runoff through a network of drainage pipes and swales.
- This option will require very little investment in operations and maintenance procedures.
- Will require significantly less costs during construction and operations against pumped solutions.
- This option will provide an increase of 12% in surface water runoff against the 2% of 'active catchment' area lost (attenuation can be required).

Disadvantages

- This option will replenish up to 6% of the 21% of catchment lost.
- Some treatment will be required although this will be minimal as it will be capturing surface water runoff from a local road with relatively little traffic flows.

M42 J6 Improvement Emerging Solution



1. Proposed gravity-fed solution should provides an **increase in volume of runoff** to the wet meadow when compared to 'direct' catchment.
2. An increase is proposed to compensate for other minor flow contributions from the less well connected total catchment area that is lost (i.e. surface water runoff and percolating groundwater) which are difficult to estimate.
3. The implementation of the solution and condition of the SSSI will be monitored post-development.

M42 J6 Improvement

Discussion on Biodiversity Offsetting

M42 J6 Improvement

Any other business